

Tribe Net V3

Research List

Introduction

This is a provisional list of topics that have and will be considered and reviewed on a case-by-case basis. Some of the listed topics might be modified depending on what happens with programming, play and general administration. Should the running of a topic become too labour intensive a revision will be in order.

Until the advent of TN 2020, most research processing is manual and over and above the standard processing - so in the interim the possibility of a rich range of research is contingent upon player co-operation re supplying figures, effects, equivalent numbers of workers etc. If this is not for you there are many topics that require little input from players, and you should look towards these instead.

In most cases where Research [Prerequisites](#) are required they have to be met within the same Tribe, and must be attained before the relevant research is commenced..

Notes

Tribe Net is not restricted to a particular historical or cultural period (for example, from the outset you have Stone Axes alongside Iron Swords) though the aim is to reflect actual developments. The research is meant to represent vertical chronological developments in historical civilizations. However, if one were to look for an end point it would be found in the sort of technology that supports Siege Cannons. Combat related research will not progress into hand held gunpowder weapons, field Cannon, oil powered vehicles etc; ultimately the sword and shield will remain the focus of combat. While research nods in the direction of history it also adds to player interest and some items are constructed in the light of this. Thus any line drawn with respect to what is and what isn't appropriate development, what should be research and what should be standard, is going to be arbitrary to some extent and a fact of Tribe Net life.

There are currently 891 research topics in the database. Not all have been coded at this time. Some are legacy topics from the previous iteration. April 17th, 2018.

Research Topic Revision Change:

Date Added	Changes
------------	---------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Additions	Revisions: (NGE = No Game Effect)
Oct 11, 2022	<p><u>Global – Elite Troop Design:</u> Standardization rules added to Global Research Rules section.</p> <p><u>Global – Basic Research Requirements:</u> Reiterated basic skill 10 research requirement as per Mandate.</p> <p><u>Armiger:</u> Added to Slavery</p> <p><u>Military Dogs:</u> Revised Name of Guard/War Dog research. Updated restrictions and stats.</p> <p><u>Squire:</u> Added to Horsemanship</p> <p><u>Toxophilite:</u> Added to Archery</p>	<p><u>Archery 11:</u> Corrected Summary. NGE</p> <p><u>Army:</u> Updated bonuses, added new bonus</p> <p><u>Baking 11:</u> Corrected specialist type, NGE</p> <p><u>Blasting Powder:</u> Corrected typo, NGE</p> <p><u>Branded Alcohol:</u> Clarified Fair Slot usage.</p> <p><u>Carnivale:</u> Updated typos, NGE</p> <p><u>Colleges:</u> Added Weapons skill to a college.</p> <p><u>Combat 11:</u> Removed duplicate old entry. NGE</p> <p><u>Conscription:</u> Revised verbiage for calculation</p> <p><u>Design and Fashion:</u> Changed to Design, NGE</p> <p><u>Design and Fashion 11:</u> Changed to Design 11, NGE</p> <p><u>Excavation 11:</u> Corrected specialist type, NGE</p> <p><u>Extra Movement 4:</u> Updated description for clarity. NGE</p> <p><u>Felucca Mk I, Mk II:</u> Added Sail/Row skill modifiers. Clarified Animal capacity.</p> <p><u>Felucca Mk III:</u> Revised Cloth requirement, added rowing crew size. Added Sail/Row skill modifiers. Clarify animal capacity.</p> <p><u>Felucca Mk IV:</u> Revised Cloth requirement, added rowing crew size. Added Sail/Row skill modifiers. Clarified Animal capacity.</p> <p><u>Fighting Seamen:</u> Revised bonus</p> <p><u>Flax:</u> Added Scythe use for harvesting</p> <p><u>Fleet:</u> Removed MOTC effect, added Defensive AF</p> <p><u>Guard/War Dogs:</u> Revised to clarify training</p> <p><u>Herb Plot:</u> Added climate effect note, added plowing requirement clarification.</p> <p><u>Home Guard:</u> Updated bonuses, added new bonus</p> <p><u>Hospital:</u> Revised Healing skill requirement.</p> <p><u>Improved Charcoal Making:</u> Revised example and clarified stacking.</p> <p><u>Knights:</u> Revised requirements and full Description section.</p> <p><u>Longbowman:</u> Revised requirements and full Description section.</p> <p><u>Mamluk:</u> Revised requirements and full Description section.</p> <p><u>Market Place:</u> Added Building information.</p> <p><u>Marksmen:</u> Revised bonus</p> <p><u>Naval Coordinate:</u> Removed MOTC effect</p> <p><u>Naval Veteran Class 1:</u> Revised bonus</p> <p><u>OIA:</u> Updated question information</p> <p><u>Sailing 11:</u> Added Fishing/Hunting allowance</p>

		<p><u>Scholar:</u> Added clarification about skill transfer.</p> <p><u>Slave Crews:</u> Revised bonus completely.</p> <p><u>Slave Crews II:</u> Revised bonus completely.</p> <p><u>Terracotta Army:</u> Revised Recipe skills</p> <p><u>TLDIS:</u> Removed multiple use</p> <p><u>Trawler:</u> Removed errant coma</p> <p><u>Trawling Net:</u> Revised Bonus</p> <p><u>Veterans Class 1:</u> Revised Bonus</p> <p><u>Yoeman Archers:</u> Revised Bonus</p>
03/12/22	<p><u>Global Research Rules:</u> Added a new section called Global Research Rules after Revision Change table and before the Table of Contents.</p> <p><u>Skill Levels >11:</u> Added to Global Research Rules.</p> <p><u>9 Logs / Person:</u> Added to Forestry</p> <p><u>10 Logs / Person:</u> Added to Forestry</p> <p><u>10 Stones / Person:</u> Added to Quarrying</p> <p><u>Advanced Smiths:</u> Added to Administration</p> <p><u>Agriculture 11:</u> Added to Agriculture</p> <p><u>Agriculture IV,V,VI:</u> Added to Agriculture</p> <p><u>Alliance Castras:</u> Added to Administration</p> <p><u>Apiology 11:</u> Added to Apiology</p> <p><u>Apiology IV,V,VI:</u> Added to Apiology</p> <p><u>Apothecary 11:</u> Added to Apothecary</p> <p><u>Archaeology 11:</u> Added to Archaeology</p> <p><u>Architecture 11:</u> Added to Architecture</p> <p><u>Armour 11:</u> Added to Armour</p> <p><u>Art 11:</u> Added to Art</p> <p><u>Astrolabe:</u> Added to Astronomy</p> <p><u>Astronomy 11:</u> Added to Astronomy</p> <p><u>Baking 11:</u> Added to Baking</p> <p><u>Banking 11:</u> Added to Banking</p> <p><u>Battlefield Tactics:</u> Added to Tactics</p> <p><u>Blacksmith Apron:</u> Added to Leatherwork</p> <p><u>Bodkin Arrows:</u> Added to Fletching. Note, this is the first Fletching topic.</p> <p><u>Bridge:</u> Added to Engineering</p> <p><u>Bureaucracy 11:</u> Added to Bureaucracy</p> <p><u>Bureaucracy IV,V,VI:</u> Added to Bureaucracy</p> <p><u>Bush Lore 11:</u> Added to Bush Lore</p> <p><u>Captaincy 11:</u> Added to Captaincy</p> <p><u>Cleanliness:</u> Added to Sanitation and Healing</p>	<p>Introduction and Notes: GM Revised</p> <p><u>Agriculture:</u> Removed call out to advanced topics and separate them.</p> <p><u>Apiology I,II,III:</u> Removed call out to advanced topics and separate them.</p> <p><u>BioWar:</u> Moved location inside skill group, NGE</p> <p><u>Blasting Powder:</u> Revised to refer to Units</p> <p><u>Bodyguards:</u> Revised bonuses</p> <p><u>Brothel:</u> Updated requirements</p> <p><u>Bunks:</u> Updated summary, NGE</p> <p><u>Bureaucracy I,II,III:</u> Removed call out to advanced topics and separated them.</p> <p><u>Castle:</u> Revised Pre-Reqs</p> <p><u>Coke:</u> Updated description format and added reference to Refineries.</p> <p><u>Colleges:</u> Substantially revised bonus, Removed Scroll usage</p> <p><u>Exotic Seekers I,II,III:</u> Updated format links, NGE</p> <p><u>Experienced Seekers:</u> Updated format links, NGE</p> <p><u>Extra Element:</u> Revised bonuses</p> <p><u>Fast Response Security I:</u> Added to Security</p> <p><u>Fast Response Security II:</u> Added to Security</p> <p><u>Fast Response Suppressors:</u> Added to Security</p> <p><u>Felucca Class I/II:</u> Added Crew size</p> <p><u>Geology:</u> Removed call out to advanced topics and separate them.</p> <p><u>Increased Output 10% / 50%:</u> Revised description format. NGE</p> <p><u>Junior Officer:</u> Revised description format. NGE</p> <p><u>The Lighted Dome of Iron and Steel:</u> Added Wonders reference.</p> <p><u>Major Find:</u> Updated description and expanded/clarified bonuses</p> <p><u>Medicine:</u> Revised bonuses</p> <p><u>Mercenary Training:</u> Revised class information</p> <p><u>Military Band:</u> Updated verbiage for clarity. NGE.</p>

<p><u>Combat Discipline</u>: Added to Generalship</p> <p><u>Cooking 11</u>: Added to Cooking</p> <p><u>Courier 11</u>: Added to Courier</p> <p><u>Crown Molding</u>: Added to Pottery</p> <p><u>Design and Fashion 11</u>: Added to Design and Fashion</p> <p><u>Diplomacy 11</u>: Added to Diplomacy</p> <p><u>Distilling 11</u>: Added to Distilling</p> <p><u>Economics 11</u>: Added to Economics</p> <p><u>Engineering 11</u>: Added to Geology</p> <p><u>Enhanced Herb Yield</u>: Added to Herbing</p> <p><u>Excavation 11</u>: Added to Excavation</p> <p><u>Expert Trackers</u>: Added to Hunting</p> <p><u>Farming 11</u>: Added to Farming</p> <p><u>Felucca Class III</u>: Added to Shipbuilding</p> <p><u>Felucca Class IV</u>: Added to Shipbuilding</p> <p><u>Fletching 11</u>: Added to Fletching</p> <p><u>Forestry 11</u>: Added to Forestry</p> <p><u>Fortified Bridge</u>: Added to Engineering</p> <p><u>Frigate</u>: Added to Shipbuilding</p> <p><u>Frontier Lands</u>: Added to Diplomacy</p> <p><u>Frontier Lands</u>: Added to Politics</p> <p><u>Furniture 11</u>: Added to Furniture</p> <p><u>Garrison 11</u>: Added to Garrison</p> <p><u>Geology IV,V,VI</u>: Added to Geology</p> <p><u>Glasswork 11</u>: Added to Glasswork</p> <p><u>Great Library</u>: Added to Literacy</p> <p><u>Greater Smiths</u>: Added to Administration</p> <p><u>Healing 11</u>: Added to Healing</p> <p><u>Heavy Weapons 11</u>: Added to Heavy Weapons</p> <p><u>Herbing 11</u>: Added to Herbing</p> <p><u>Hookah</u>: Added to Apothecary</p> <p><u>Hookah</u>: Added to Woodwork</p> <p><u>Horsemanship 11</u>: Added to Horsemanship</p> <p><u>Hunting 11</u>: Added to Hunting</p> <p><u>Improved Herb Planting</u>: Added to Herbing</p> <p><u>Improved Smiths</u>: Added to Administration</p> <p><u>Improved Teachers I,II,III</u>: Added to Research.</p> <p><u>Increased Output 100%</u>: Added to Refining</p> <p><u>Increased Output Milling 10%</u>: Added to</p>	<p><u>Naval Junior Officer</u>: Revised description format, NGE</p> <p><u>Press Gang</u>: Revised description format. NGE</p> <p><u>Road House</u>: Clarity revision. NGE</p> <p><u>Scroll</u>: Corrected requirements.</p> <p><u>Scouting</u>: Fixed Alphabetical order, NGE</p> <p><u>Second Site</u>: Revised to refer to Courier/Garrison</p> <p><u>Sensai</u>: Corrected requirements.</p> <p><u>Sewers</u>: Updated Summary and note about Auto Orders. NGE</p> <p><u>Siege Cannon</u>: Elaborated on benefits.</p> <p><u>Thumb Screw</u>: Elaborated on benefits.</p> <p><u>Tomb Robbers</u>: Revised reference to Tribe vs unit</p> <p><u>War College</u>: Elaborated on Leadership benefits</p> <p><u>Whaler</u>: Updated entire entry in Whaling.</p>
---	--

	<p>Milling</p> <p><u>Increased Output Milling 50%:</u> Added to Milling</p> <p><u>Increased Output Milling 100%:</u> Added to Milling</p> <p><u>Intelligence 11:</u> Added to Intelligence</p> <p><u>Leadership 11:</u> Added to Leadership</p> <p><u>Limestone:</u> Added to Quarrying</p> <p><u>Maintain Boats 11:</u> Added to Maintain Boats</p> <p><u>Major Find:</u> Added to Excavation</p> <p><u>Metalwork 11:</u> Added to Metalwork</p> <p><u>Milling 11:</u> Added to Milling</p> <p><u>Molding:</u> Added to Pottery</p> <p><u>Music 11:</u> Added to Music</p> <p><u>Naval Second in Command:</u> Added to Captaincy</p> <p><u>OIA Defence:</u> Added to Spying</p> <p><u>Opium Den:</u> Added to Apothecary</p> <p><u>Opium Den:</u> Added to Economics</p> <p><u>Paraffin Wax:</u> Added to Refining</p> <p><u>Political Route:</u> Added to Diplomacy</p> <p><u>Political Route:</u> Added to Politics</p> <p><u>Politics 11:</u> Added to Politics</p> <p><u>Portland Cement:</u> Added to Refining</p> <p><u>Pottery 12:</u> Added to Pottery</p> <p><u>Quarrying 11:</u> Added to Quarrying</p> <p><u>Raincatching:</u> Added to sailing.</p> <p><u>Ranger 11:</u> Added to Ranger</p> <p><u>Ranger I,II, III:</u> Added to Scouting</p> <p><u>Ranger IV,V,VI:</u> Added to Ranger</p> <p><u>Refined Sand:</u> Added to refining</p> <p><u>Refining 11:</u> Added to Refining</p> <p><u>Research 11:</u> Added to Research</p> <p><u>Rowing 11:</u> Added to Rowing</p> <p><u>Salves:</u> Added to Apothecary</p> <p><u>Sanitation 11:</u> Added to Sanitation</p> <p><u>Scouting 11:</u> Added to Scouting</p> <p><u>Second in Command:</u> Added to Leadership</p> <p><u>Security Patrols:</u> Added to Security</p> <p><u>Sewing 11:</u> Added to Sewing</p> <p><u>Shipbreaking II, III:</u> Added to Shipbuilding</p> <p><u>Shipbuilding 11:</u> Added to Shipbuilding</p> <p><u>Siegecraft 11:</u> Added to Siegecraft</p>	
--	---	--

	<p> Skinning 11: Added to Skinning Slave Draft: Added to Slavery Slavery 11: Added to Slavery Smith Hammer: Added to Metalwork Smiths: Added to Administration Smoking Pipes: Added to Apothecary Smoking Pipes: Added to Woodwork Solstice: Added to Astronomy Spiked Moat: Added to Engineering Spy Catchers: Added to Spying Stained Glass Window: Added to Glasswork Stoneworking 11: Added to Stoneworking Submissions: Added to Global Rules Summer Pants: Added to Weaving Summer Shirt: Added to Weaving Tactics 11: Added to Tactics Torture 11: Added to Torture Trackers: Added to Hunting Triball 11: Added to Triball Triball Franchise: Added to Triball Veteran Trackers: Added to Hunting Waxworks 11: Added to Waxworks Waxy Seal: Added to Maintain Boats Weapons 11: Added to Weapons Weaving 11: Added to Weaving Whaler: Added to Shipbuilding Whaling 11: Added to Whaling Winter Jacket: Added to Furrier Winter Pants: Added to Furrier Winter Shirt: Added to Furrier Wonders: Added to Global Rules Woodwork 11: Added to Woodwork </p>	
08/07/21	<p> Branded Coin: Added to Banking Bunk: Added to Engiture Combined Arms: Added to Generalship Earthworks: Added to Siegecraft Field Glasses: Added to Glasswork Kidnap: Added to Spying Landscaped Gardens: Added to Architecture Medals: Added to Design and Fashion Rawhide Cast: Added to Tanning Scroll: Added to Literacy Secret Path: Added to Intelligence Sensai Dan 2: Added to Literacy </p>	<p> Bronze Statue: Revised build requirement. Brothel: Updated bonus Bunks: Updated bonus Carnivale: Fixed typo “Same” Crenellations: Added build requirements. Inter Spring Arts Festival Arts: Added Adm req Inter Spring Arts Festival Dance: Added Adm req Inter Spring Arts Festival Music: Added Adm req Kite Shield: This has been removed. Knights: Revised DL Mamluk: Added note about player tracking Palace: Added global announcement Pastries: Added restriction for yearly bonus. </p>

	<p><u>Sensai Dan 3:</u> Added to Literacy <u>Shipbreaking:</u> Added to Shipbuilding <u>Shipwright 11:</u> Added to Shipwright <u>Tanning 11:</u> Added to Tanning <u>Varminting Crops:</u> Added to Hunting <u>Varminting Pastures:</u> Added to Hunting <u>Varminting Villages:</u> Added to Hunting</p>	<p><u>Plantation:</u> Added Fire Control bonus <u>Powerful Breed:</u> This has been removed. <u>Schutzhund:</u> This has been removed. <u>Spy Data II:</u> This has been removed. <u>Whaler:</u> Revised build recipe, bonus and description <u>Wholesale Trading:</u> Fixed typo “Same”</p>
3/19/21	<p><u>Armoured Howdah:</u> Added to Woodwork <u>Buckler:</u> Added to Armour <u>Battlefield Intelligence:</u> Added to Intelligence <u>Bunks:</u> Added to Woodwork <u>Cavalry Saddle:</u> Added to Leatherwork <u>Chain Dog Barding:</u> Added to Armour <u>Command Tent:</u> Added to Sewing <u>Expert Diggers:</u> Added to Engineering <u><Guild> Hall:</u> Added to Economics <u>Heavy Fluted Plate:</u> Added to Armour <u>Heavy Full Plate:</u> Added to Armour <u>Howdah:</u> Added to Woodwork <u>International Cultural Organization:</u> Added to Administration <u>Kite Shield:</u> Added to Armour <u>Longbow:</u> Added to Fletching <u>Longbowman:</u> Added to Archery <u>Mamluk:</u> Replaced Janissary in Slavery <u>Pass:</u> Added to Engineering <u>Powerful Breed Dogs:</u> Added to Herding <u>Schutzhund:</u> Added to Herding <u>Scout Veterans:</u> Added to Scouting <u>Staff of Life:</u> Added to Apiarism</p>	<p><u>Jannisary:</u> Changed name to Mamluk <u>Negotiator:</u> Added transfer clarification <u>OIA:</u> Updated question information <u>Smart Herding:</u> Added clarification of Crooks. <u>War Dog:</u> Added clarification of purpose</p>
1/5/20	<p><u>Colleges:</u> Added to Research <u>Disciplined Marines:</u> Added to Mariner <u>Fighting Seamen:</u> Added to Mariner <u>Fleet:</u> Added to Mariner <u>Island Fortress:</u> Added to Engineering <u>Island Fortress:</u> Added to Stonework <u>Junior Officer:</u> Added to Captaincy <u>Mariner 11:</u> Added to Mariner <u>Mariner 12:</u> Added to Mariner <u>Medicine 1:</u> Added to Healing <u>Medicine 2:</u> Added to Healing <u>Naval Coordination:</u> Added to Mariner <u>Naval Veterans Class I:</u> Added to Mariner <u>Recruitment:</u> Added to Captaincy</p>	<p><u>Import Mission:</u> Updated Quantities and Payout <u>Steel:</u> Removed Gold requirement for Swords</p>

	<p><u>Resilience 1,2,3:</u> Added to Captaincy</p> <p><u>Rousing Speech:</u> Added to Captaincy</p> <p><u>Trusted Maps:</u> Added to Captaincy</p>	
10/05/20	<p><u>Administration 11:</u> Added to Administration</p> <p><u>Apiarism 11:</u> Added to Apiarism</p> <p><u>Archery 11:</u> Added to Archery</p> <p><u>Combat 12:</u> Added to Combat</p> <p><u>Furrier 11:</u> Added to Furrier</p> <p><u>Inter Spring Arts Festival Arts:</u> Added to Art</p> <p><u>Inter Spring Arts Festival Dance:</u> Added to Dance</p> <p><u>Inter Spring Arts Festival Music:</u> Added to Music</p>	<p><u>Administration:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Alchemy:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Apiarism:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Apothecary:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Archaeology:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Architecture:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Archery:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Armour:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. Included ArmourValues. NGE</p> <p><u>Astronomy:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. Included ArmourValues. NGE</p> <p><u>Art:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Bagpipes:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Baking:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Banking:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Banquet:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Banqueting Hall:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Blasting Powder:</u> Updated reference to Powder vs Jar in description. NGE</p> <p><u>Brickmaking:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Capital:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Captaincy:</u> Updated topics to have standardized format. NGE</p> <p><u>Castle:</u> Updated DL to match Database</p> <p><u>Circus Troupe:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Colosseum:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p>

		<p><u>Corps Diplomatique:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Corps Diplomatique:</u> Added note about Depot/GT</p> <p><u>Daimyo:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Epic Tapestry:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains. Updated Recipe.</p> <p><u>Exhibition:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Exotic Weaving:</u> Updated selling and added clarification.</p> <p><u>Federal Community of Clans:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Felucca 2:</u> Reduced DL to match Database.</p> <p><u>Golden Age:</u> Updated DL to match Database</p> <p><u>Great Work:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Haiku:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Heraldry:</u> Added clarification regarding ransom payment.</p> <p><u>Holy Artefact:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Improved Stable Builders:</u> Updated description to reference Stables.</p> <p><u>Magnificent Exhibition:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Military Band:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Mission:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Mongol Hunt:</u> Updated code note from 40 to 20, NGE.</p> <p><u>Music in the Field:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Palace Renovation Gardens:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Pastry:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Resilience:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Roman Crane:</u> Updated DL to match Database</p> <p><u>Sea Borne Trade:</u> Updated DL to match Database. Updated name callouts to be correct.</p> <p><u>Siege Cannon:</u> Updated database to match Doc.</p> <p><u>Site Survey II:</u> Differentiated General/Military</p>
--	--	--

		<p>Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Spring Arts Festival:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Terracotta Army:</u> Updated DL to match Database</p> <p><u>The Lighted Dome of Iron and Steel:</u> Differentiated General/Military Morale gains.</p> <p><u>Tomb Robbers:</u> Added clarification notes and updated description.</p> <p><u>Trade Route:</u> Added note about Depot/GT</p> <p><u>Trebuchet:</u> Reduced DL to match Database</p>
<u>For historical changes, click here:</u>		

Acknowledgements

There are many players past and present who have contributed proposals and modifications to this document. Your contributions are appreciated.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Global Research Rules

Name	Basic Research Requirements
Description	<p>As per the Mandate, all Research Topics are grouped under skills (Agent, Administration 11 are both under the Administration Skill) in this Research Document.</p> <p>In order to start any research, the Tribe that is attempting the research must have that Skill at level 10 or higher. For instance, to start Agent research, which is under Administration skill grouping in this document, the Tribe must have Adm 10 or higher to attempt to research Agent.</p> <p>Though not individually listed under every single research topic, this skill requirement is for each and every single research topic in the Research Document.</p>

Name	Skill Levels Greater than 11														
Description	<p>All skills have access to research topics that allow the skill to be raised higher than 11. Each research topic is a DL 5 topic that will raise the specific skill by +1. You must raise the skills sequentially, 12 then 13 then 14 then 15, etc.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Name</td><td>Skill 12,13,14...</td></tr> <tr> <td>DL</td><td>5,5,5....</td></tr> <tr> <td>Pre-Req</td><td> Skill 12: Skill 11 Skill 13: Skill 12 Skill 14: Skill 13 </td></tr> <tr> <td>Recipe</td><td>N/A</td></tr> <tr> <td>Leads To:</td><td> Skill 12: Skill 13 Skill 13: Skill 14 Skill 14: Skill 15 ... </td></tr> <tr> <td>Description</td><td> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Skill +1 (example from Architecture 11 to Architecture 12....) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p> </td></tr> <tr> <td>Summary</td><td><i>Skill Level Increase – Skill</i></td></tr> </table>	Name	Skill 12,13,14...	DL	5,5,5....	Pre-Req	Skill 12: Skill 11 Skill 13: Skill 12 Skill 14: Skill 13	Recipe	N/A	Leads To:	Skill 12: Skill 13 Skill 13: Skill 14 Skill 14: Skill 15 ...	Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Skill +1 (example from Architecture 11 to Architecture 12....) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>	Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Skill</i>
Name	Skill 12,13,14...														
DL	5,5,5....														
Pre-Req	Skill 12: Skill 11 Skill 13: Skill 12 Skill 14: Skill 13														
Recipe	N/A														
Leads To:	Skill 12: Skill 13 Skill 13: Skill 14 Skill 14: Skill 15 ...														
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Skill +1 (example from Architecture 11 to Architecture 12....) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>														
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Skill</i>														

Name	Submissions
-------------	--------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>Players may submit one research topic per game year and if you run short of topics in an area there will be some that are GM generated to fill the breach. In part this is to slow the burgeoning number of topics, to relieve GM pressure and to help plateau the growth of “big” topics by the leading Clans.</p> <p>If a Tribe happens to complete all topics within a particular skill area there is no guarantee that more research will immediately be available in that area. In many cases though a default topic will be available, for example, Hunt11, Mining 11, Com13 etc. There exists a possibility that additional “default” topics will be available.</p>
--------------------	---

Name	Elite Troops
Description	<p>Elite Troops are being standardized. The following rules apply to the design of new Elite Troop Types.</p> <p>All Elite Troop Types will have the following common requirements / restrictions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Difficulty Level: 8 2. Research Requirements: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Heraldry: All Elite Troops will require Heraldry (Art research) in the Clan. b. Sub-Topic: All Elite Troops will require a Difficulty Level 4 research topic in the same Skill as the Elite Troop. The benefit will be +0.10 to Army Factor – Offensive or Defensive and a bonus of +0.05 to Army Factor – Defensive or Offensive as appropriate. 3. Skill Requirements: All Elite Troops will require Leadership 10 to research. 4. Training Cost: The Commodity Equivalent to 1 Gold must be paid to train a population type into an Elite Troop. 5. Annual Cost: The Commodity Equivalent to 1 Gold must be paid on the 1st month of each Year of the Elite Troop will revert back into its basic Population Type. 6. Troop Types: All Elite Troops may only be trained from Warriors. 7. Fielding Limit: All Elite Troops are limited to fielding 1/3rd of that Troop Type in a single battle. This is separate from Warriors. <p>Bonuses / Benefits of an Elite Troop: Designing a new Elite Troop type means to spend Elite Troop Points on Combat Effectiveness – Offensive and Combat Effectiveness – Defensive for each phase of Combat (Ambush, Ranged, Melee) that applies when the Elite Troop Type is assigned to the appropriate Combat Assignment (Ranged, Infantry, Heavy, Cavalry).</p>

	<p>Restriction: The highest Combat Effectiveness – Offensive bonus is +1.40 and the best Combat Effectiveness – Defensive bonus is -0.60.</p> <p>Points: When designing a new Elite Troop type, the Player has 28 Points to spend on upgrading the Elite Troop Type. An Elite Troop type may have offensive and defensive bonuses to zero, one or more Phases and Combat Assignments.</p> <p>Increase Combat Effectiveness – Offensive in a single Phase by +0.05.</p> <p>(Example: Knights gain a Combat Effectiveness – Offensive of 2.40 in Melee Phases when assigned as Cavalry. By spending 28 points to increase the CEO by +1.40 (28 x 0.05).</p> <p>Increase Combat Effectiveness – Defensive in a single Phase by -0.0215.</p> <p>(Example: Wardens gain a Combat Effectiveness – Defensive of 0.40 in Melee Phases when assigned as Infantry by spending 28 points to increase the CED by -0.60 (28 x 0.025).</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p>Knights: 28 points in Combat Effectiveness – Offensive (+1.40) in Melee Phase when assigned as Cavalry.</p> <p>Mamluk: 28 points in Combat Effectiveness – Offensive (+1.40) in Melee Phase when assigned as Infantry.</p> <p>Longbowman: 28 points in Combat Effectiveness – Offensive (+1.40) in Ranged Phase when assigned as Ranged.</p> <p>Warden: 28 points in Combat Effectiveness – Defensive (-0.60) in Melee Phase when assigned as Infantry.</p> <p>Shield Bearer: 14 points in Combat Effectiveness – Defensive (-0.30) in Melee Phase when assigned as Infantry and 14 points in Combat Effectiveness – Defensive (-0.301') in Ranged phase when assigned as Infantry.</p> <p>Ranger: 10 points in Combat Effectiveness – Offensive (+0.50) in Ranged Phase when assigned as Ranged, 10 points in Combat Effectiveness – Offensive (+0.50) in Melee phase when assigned as Ranged and 8 points in Combat Effectiveness – Defensive (-0.172) in Melee phase when assigned as Ranged.</p>
--	--

Name	Wonders
Description	Wonders are magnificent and difficult to build constructions that are known the world over. Wonders are rarer than other buildings and to show a unique direction that a

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Clan has decided to take.

There are two types of Wonders, Minor and Major. Examples of real world Minor wonders are places like Petra, the Library at Alexandria and the Sphinx. Minor wonders are works of art that required masters of construction to build. Major wonders would be the Great Pyramid of Giza, the Hanging Gardens of Babylon, the Mausoleum of Halicarnassus. Obviously, there will be debate over which constructions belong to which category (assuming that such a twofold categorization is appropriate in the first place). But for these truly magnificent constructions and complicated logistics projects that epitomized the power of that civilization, the twofold categories will suit TN purposes.

All Wonders:

8. Upon Construction:

- a. Morale Gain:** Construction of a Wonder provides the constructing Tribe a one-time increase of 0.05 General Morale, in addition to whatever the specific Wonder provides.
- b. Notification:** Notification in TribeNews and Clan News of the construction of a new Wonder including tribe Number, tribe Name and wonder name. Tribe / Clan News keeps an ongoing list of each Wonder and owning Clan as well as an annotation as to which was the first wonder and when each was built.

2. Annually:

- a. Morale Gain:** +0.025 General Morale to one Tribe owning the Wonder.
- b. Upkeep:** 50 Gold per year to maintain the infrastructure related to the wonder in addition to whatever requirements a specific wonder has.

Minor:

- 1) Difficulty Level:** All Minor wonders are DL 7.
- 2) Maximum in a City:** A single City may only have 1 Minor Wonder per Government Level. All wonders built in a City must be unique inside that city.
- 3) The First of Each Specific Wonder :** The first time each specific Minor Wonder is constructed, it will provide one Tribe of the constructing Clan an additional +0.025 General Morale. Subsequent (re)construction of this Minor Wonder by anyone does not gain this one-time bonus. Even if the first of a specific Minor Wonder is destroyed, this bonus is no longer available for that specific Minor Wonder.
- 4) Destruction:** Destruction of a Minor Wonder by your own Clan results in a loss of 0.02 General Morale to the Tribe in the Clan that built/owns the wonder. If destroyed by another Clan the loss to Morale is 0.05. Destruction of a Minor Wonder will be announced in the Tribe/Clan News and documented there.

Major

- | | |
|--|---|
| | <ol style="list-style-type: none">1) Difficulty Level: All Major wonders are DL 8 or higher. Major Wonders with higher DLs (and subsequent build costs) provide greater benefits.2) Maximum in a City: A single City may only have 1 Major Wonder per <u>5</u> Government Levels, rounded up. (GL 1-5: 1, GL 6-10: 2, GL 11-15: 3, etc).3) The First of each Specific Major Wonder: The First of each specific Major Wonder constructed in the world provides one Tribe of the constructing Clan an additional +0.05 General Morale. Subsequent (re)construction of this Major Wonder does not gain this one time bonus.4) Destruction: Destruction of a Major Wonder by your own Clan results in a loss of 0.04 General Morale to the Tribe in the Clan that built/owns the wonder. If destroyed by another Clan the loss to Morale is 0.10. Destruction of a Minor Wonder will be announced in the Tribe/Clan News and documented there. |
|--|---|

Table of Contents

Global Research Rules	11
Skill 12,13,14... ..	11
Submissions.....	12
Wonders.....	13
Administration	32
Administration 11	32
Advanced Smiths	32
Agent	33
Alliance Castras	34
Bureaucracy 1, 2, 3.....	34
Extra Element.....	35
Extra Movement 4.....	36
Extra Movement 6.....	36
Greater Smiths.....	37
Improved Smiths	38
International Cultural Organization	39
Smiths.....	40
Agriculture	42
Agriculture 11	42
Agriculture IV, Agriculture V, Agriculture VI.....	42
Alchemy	44
Alchemy 11	44
Blasting Jar.....	44
Blasting Powder	45
Apiarism.....	47
Apiaries with Reusable Frames.....	47
Apiarism 11	47
Apiology I, Apiology II, Apiology III... ..	48
Breed New Queens.....	48
Pastry.....	49
Propolis	50
Staff of Life	50
Apiology	52
Apiology 11	52
Apiology IV, Apiology V, Apiology VI... ..	52
Apothecary	54
Apothecary 11	54
Hashish.....	54
Hookah	55
Opium Den.....	56
Salves	57
Smoking Pipes.....	57
Archaeology.....	59
Archaeology 11	59

Exhibition.....	59
Exhibition Curators	61
Magnificent Exhibition	62
Relic	63
Relic 2	64
Relic 3	64
Second Site.....	65
Second Site Relic 1, 2, 3	66
Tomb Robbers	66
Architecture.....	68
Architecture 11	68
Landscaped Gardens	68
Archery	70
Archery 11	70
Longbowman.....	70
Marksmen.....	71
Toxophilite	72
Yoeman Archers	72
Armour.....	74
Armour 11	74
Bascinet	74
Buckler	75
Chain Barding	76
Chain Dog Barding	77
Full Plate	77
Fluted Plate.....	78
Greaves.....	79
Heavy Full Plate.....	80
Heavy Fluted Plate	81
Plate Barding	82
Astronomy.....	84
Astral Navigation 1, Astral Navigation 2, Astral Navigation 3.....	84
Astrolabe	84
Astronomy 11	85
Solstice	85
Art	87
Art 11.....	87
Great Work	87
Heraldry.....	88
Spring Arts Festival Art.....	90
Inter Spring Arts Festival Art	91
Bronze Statue	91
Marble Statue	92
Baking.....	93
Baking 11	93
.....	94
Cupcakes	94

Fine Bread	94
Waybread.....	95
Yeast	96
Banking.....	97
Banking 11	97
Branded Coin	97
Local Money Changer.....	98
Minting / Coin	99
NPC Exchange	100
Brickmaking.....	102
Advanced Brickmaking	102
Brickmaking 11	102
Brickmolds	103
Greater Brickmaking	103
Improved Brickmaking	104
The Lighted Dome of Iron and Stone	104
Bureaucracy	107
Bureaucracy 11	107
Bureaucracy 4,5,6.....	107
Bush Lore.....	109
Bush Lore 11	109
Bush Lore IV, V, VI.....	109
Captaincy	111
Admiralty	111
Captaincy 11.....	111
Naval Junior Officer.....	112
Naval Second in Command (NSIC).....	112
Recruitment 1, Recruitment 2, Recruitment 3,	113
Resilience I, Resilience II, Resilience III.....	113
Rousing Speech.....	114
Trusted Maps.....	114
Naval College.....	115
Combat.....	116
Assault Troops.....	116
Army	116
Close Order Infantry	117
Combat 11	117
Combat 12	117
Conscription	118
Home Guard.....	118
Training	119
Veterans Class I	119
Cooking.....	121
Banquet	121
Cooking 11	121
Great Work	121
Stew.....	122

Courier	123
Barterer.....	123
Courier 11	123
Negotiator.....	123
Large Orders.....	124
Dance	125
Circus Troupe	125
Dance 11	125
Great Work	126
Spring Arts Festival.....	126
Inter Spring Arts Festival Dance	126
Design	128
Design 11.....	128
Medals	128
Diplomacy.....	130
Alliance MOTC.....	130
Corps Diplomatique	131
Diplomacy 11	131
Expanded Horizons, Expanded Horizons II.....	132
Extra Tribe.....	132
Fair 3	133
Frontier Lands I, II, III.	133
Political Route.....	135
Distilling	137
Absinthe	137
Branded Ale (Wine, Brandy, etc)	137
Distillers' Guild	137
Distilling 11	139
Gin.....	139
Port Wine.....	140
Road House	140
Tavern.....	141
Economics.....	142
Bargemens Guild.....	142
Board of Trade.....	144
Brothel.....	146
Carnival.....	146
Economics 11	147
Entrepot.....	147
Expanded Horizons, Expanded Horizons II.....	148
Goods Tribe Economic Zone	149
<Guild> Hall	149
Hire Security	150
Market Place.....	150
Merchant Navy Guild.....	151
Opium Den	153
Sea Borne Trade	154

Second Caravan.....	155
Supply	155
Trade Camps	155
Trade Element – Increased Movement.....	156
Trade Routes	156
Traders Guild 20.....	160
Traders Guild 25.....	163
Trusted Maps.....	163
Toll Gate.....	164
Wholesale Trading	164
Engineering.....	166
Barbican	166
Bridge.....	166
Canals.....	167
Colosseum	168
Crenellations	169
Demolitionists I, II, III	169
Destroy Roads	170
Drawbridge.....	170
Dungeon	171
Engineering 11	171
Expert Diggers	172
Fords.....	172
Fences.....	173
Fen Drainage	173
Fortified Bridge.....	174
Gate House	176
Great Canal.....	176
Improved Fence Builders	177
Improved Stable Builders.....	177
Keep	179
Mining Ladder	180
Outpost	181
Pass.....	181
Roads.....	182
Roman Crane	185
Sappers / Sappers II.....	186
Scaffolding	186
Scout Post.....	187
Sewers	187
Siegecraft.....	188
Spiked Moat	189
Stables	189
Stone Wall 25'	190
Stone Wall 30'.....	190
Superior Canals	191
Trellis	191

Watchtower.....	192
Wire Fences.....	192
Excavation.....	194
Excavation 11	194
Expert Dig	194
Holy Artefact.....	194
Tomb Robbers	196
Farming.....	197
Farming 11	197
Agriculture I, Agriculture II, Agriculture III.	197
Flax.....	198
Herb Plot	198
Inactive Workers.....	199
Juniper	200
Plantation.....	200
Trellis	201
Fire Control.....	203
Excubitoriums	203
Fire Brigade.....	203
Fire Control 11	204
Inactive Fire Watchers.....	204
Roman Fire Pump	205
Fishing.....	206
Fishing 11	206
Trawler	206
Trawling Net	207
Fletching	208
Bodkin Arrows	208
Fletching 11	208
Longbow	209
Forestry	210
5 Logs / Person.....	210
6 Logs / Person.....	210
7 Logs / Person.....	210
8 Logs / Person.....	210
9 Logs / Person.....	211
10 Logs / Person.....	211
Burner Improvements.....	211
Forestry 11.....	212
Log Driving.....	212
Managed Plantations	212
Improved Charcoal Making	213
Saw	213
Sawmill	214
Scraper.....	214
Furniture.....	216
Bunk	216

Furniture 11	216
Furrier	218
Advanced Trap	218
Furrier 11	218
Improved Trap	218
Winter Furs	219
Winter Jacket	219
Winter Pants	220
Winter Shirt	221
Garrison	223
Excubitoriums	223
Garrison 11	223
Geology	225
Geology 11	225
Geology IV, Geology V, Geology VI	225
Glasswork	227
Glasswork 11	227
Generalship	229
Combat Discipline	229
Combined Arms	230
Circumvallation	230
Field Marshall	231
Generalship 11	231
Generalship 12	232
Healing	233
Barber Surgeons	233
Battlefield Medicine	233
Battlefield Medics	234
Camp Medics	235
Cleanliness	235
Healing 11	236
Hospital	236
Medicine 1, Medicine 2	237
Salves	237
Seek Herbs	238
Heavy Weapons	239
Breaching Walls	239
Heavy Weapons 11	239
Slave Crews	239
Slave Crews II	240
Herbing	241
Enhanced Herb Yield	241
Herbing 11	241
Improved Herb Planting	241
Herding	243
Angora Goats	243
Animal Training	243

Dairy Cattle	244
Expert Breeding	244
Fences.....	245
Military Dogs	245
Herding 11	247
Herding 12.....	247
Horse Herders.....	247
Hunting Dogs	248
Herding Dogs	248
Improved Fence Builders	249
Improved Stable Builders.....	249
Mounted Herders.....	250
Smart Herding	250
Stables	251
Veterinarian Medicine	252
Herding Process	252
Horsemanship	254
Close Formation (Close Order Cavalry)	254
Equestrianism.....	254
Horsemanship 11	254
Knights	255
Squire	256
Hunting	257
Expert Trackers	257
Hunting 11	257
Hunting Dogs	258
Mongol Hunt	258
Mongol Hunt 2	258
Trackers.....	259
Trappers.....	259
Varminting Crops	259
Varminting Village	260
Varminting Pasture	261
Veteran Trackers.....	261
Intelligence.....	263
Battlefield Intelligence	263
Field Intelligence.....	263
Hire Mercenary Guard	264
Intelligence 11	264
Native Operative	265
Organized Intelligence Analysis (OIA).....	266
Secret Path I, II, III, IV....	267
Leadership.....	269
Alliance MOTC.....	269
Battle Groups	270
Federal Community of Clans	270
Generalship	272

Junior Officer	272
Leadership 11	273
Recruitment	273
Resilience I, Resilience II, Resilience III.....	273
Rousing Speech	274
Second in Command (SIC)	275
Siege Marshall.....	275
Trusted Maps	276
Leatherwork	277
Blacksmith Apron.....	277
Cavalry Saddle	277
Harvest Bag	278
Leatherwork 11	279
Whip.....	279
Literacy	280
Ghost Writer	280
The Great Library.....	280
Haiku	282
Literacy 11.....	282
Mercenary Training.....	283
Scroll	284
Sensai (Master).....	284
Sensai Dan 1	286
Sensai Dan 2.....	286
Sensai Dan 3.....	286
Maintain Boats	288
Amphibious Warfare I.....	288
Amphibious Warfare II.....	288
Maintain Boats 11	288
Shipboard Animal Maintenance.....	289
Waxy Seal.....	289
Mariner.....	291
Disciplined Marines	291
Fighting Seamen.....	291
Fleet.....	291
Mariner 11	292
Mariner 12	292
Naval Coordination	293
Naval Veterans Class I.....	293
Professional Sailor	294
Metalwork	295
Advanced Trap	295
Anvil.....	295
Blade Shears.....	295
Bronze Statue	296
Chisel.....	296
Improved Trap	297

Knife.....	297
Kegs.....	297
Machete.....	298
Metalwork 11	298
Mining Ladder	298
Saw.....	299
Seam Wedges	299
Scraper (Metal).....	300
Smith Hammer	300
Tongs.....	301
Water Tank	301
Wire Mill.....	302
Milking.....	303
Milling.....	304
Increased Output Milling 10%, 50%, 100%	304
Milling 11	304
Oilmill.....	305
Sawmill	306
Windmill.....	306
Mining.....	308
Appropriate Mining Tool	308
Geology I, Geology II, Geology III... ..	308
Hammer Mill.....	309
Mining 11	309
Mining Ladder	310
Ore Cart.....	310
Salt Panning (See Salting).....	311
Seam Wedges	311
Mobilisation	312
Local Guard I, II, III, IV, V	312
Local Guard Training I, II, III	312
Mobilisation 11	313
Music.....	314
Bagpipes.....	314
Great Work	314
Military Band	314
Music 11	315
Music in the Field.....	315
Spring Arts Festival Music.....	316
Inter Spring Arts Festival Music	317
Navigation.....	318
Astral Navigation 1, Astral Navigation 2, Astral Navigation 3.....	318
Heart of Oak	318
Navigation 11	318
Politics.....	320
Banqueting Hall	320
Boat People	320

Capital	320
Castle (Details may be modified).....	322
Daimyo	323
Doomsday Book.....	324
Emigration.....	324
Feudal Security.....	325
Fortress.....	326
Frontier Lands I, II, III.	326
Government Level 1 (to 5 and beyond)	328
Great Wall.....	328
Ho Chi Minh Trail.....	330
Import Mission.....	330
Local Trade Routes	331
Logistics 1	332
Marshals	333
Militia Training	333
Mission.....	333
Palace (may be modified).....	334
Palace Renovation Gardens.....	334
Political Route.....	335
Politics 11	337
Posse.....	338
Sheriffs	338
Treaty	338
Pottery	340
Advanced Pottery	340
China	340
Crown Molding	340
Molding.....	341
Pottery 11	341
Pottery 12	342
Terracotta Army.....	342
Quarrying	344
6 Stones / Person	344
7 Stones / Person	344
8 Stones / Person	344
9 Stones / Person	344
10 Stones / Person	345
Extra Quarrying Tools.....	345
Limestone.....	346
Masons	347
Master Masons	347
Quarrying 11	347
Quarry Blocks	348
Rangers	350
Ranger 11	350
Ranger IV, V, VI.....	350

Refining.....	352
Coke	352
Hammer Mill	352
Increased Output	353
Paraffin Wax.....	354
Portland Cement.....	355
Refined Sand	355
Refining 11	356
Saltpetre Refining.....	356
Steel.....	357
Research.....	358
Colleges.....	358
Golden Age.....	360
Head Librarian	361
Improved Teachers I, II, III	362
Librarian.....	363
Research 11	363
Research Team	364
Researcher	365
Scholar.....	365
War College.....	366
Rowing.....	367
Rowing 11	367
Two Hex Ferry	367
Sailing	368
Expert Sailors	368
Fast Fleets.....	368
Heart of Oak.....	368
Raincatching.....	369
Sailing 11.....	370
Two Hex Ferry	370
Salting	371
Salting 11.....	371
Salt Panning	371
Sanitation	372
BioWar	372
Camp Sanitation.....	372
Cleanliness	373
Sanitation 11.....	373
Sewers	374
Siege Sanitation.....	375
Scouting	376
Expanded Scouting.....	376
Extra Movement 1	376
Extra Movement 2.....	376
Ranger 1, 2, 3....	377
Scout Post.....	377

Scout Veterans	378
Scouting 11	378
Site Survey I	379
Site Survey II	379
Seamanship	381
Heart of Oak	381
Seamanship 11	381
Seeking	382
Bush Lore 1, 2, 3	382
Elephants	382
Exotic Seekers	383
Exotic Seekers II, III	383
Experienced Seekers	384
Seek Herbs	384
Seek Population	384
Seeking 11	384
Security	386
Bodyguards	386
Fast Response Security I	386
Fast Response Security II	387
Fast Response Suppressors	387
Security 11	387
Security Patrol	388
Sewing	390
Brocade	390
Command Tent	390
Medicine Tent	391
Sewing 11	391
Shipbuilding	393
Barge Poles	393
Felucca Class I, Felucca Class II	393
Felucca Class III, Felucca Class IV	394
Frigate	395
Shipbreaking I, II, III	395
Shipbuilding 11	396
Trawler	397
Whaler	397
Shipwright	399
Drydock	399
Increased Productivity I	399
Increased Productivity II	399
Increased Productivity III	400
Shipwright 11	400
Siegecraft	401
Earthworks	401
Fill Moat-Ditch	401
Siegecraft 11	402

Sweep the Walls	403
Siege Equipment	404
Catapult	404
Siege Equipment 11	404
Trebuchet	405
Siege Cannon	405
Skinning	407
Skinning 11	407
Slaughter House	407
Slavery	408
Armiger	408
Mamluk	408
Slavery 11	409
Overwork	410
Press Gang	410
Slave Draft	410
Spying	412
Avoid Security	412
Cross Training	412
Identify Home City	413
Identify Militia	413
Infiltration	413
Kidnap	414
OIA Defence (Organized Intelligence Analysis in Defence)	415
Spy Catchers	415
Spying 11	416
Spy Data I	416
Stonework	418
Chisel	418
Marble Statue	419
Scraper (Stone)	420
Sewers	420
Stone Fords	421
Stoneworking 11	421
Tactics	423
Ambush	423
Battlefield Tactics	424
Tactical Systems	425
Tactics 11	425
Wagon Laager	426
War Games	426
Tanning	428
Rawhide Cast	428
Tanning 11	428
Torture	430
Dungeon	430
Thumb Screws	430

Torture 11	430
Treachery 1, 2, 3,.....	431
The Rack	432
Triball	433
Inactive Players	433
Large Teams	433
Off Season	433
Triball Arena	434
Triball 11	434
Triball Club	434
Triball Coaches	435
Triball Franchise	435
Triball Guild	436
Triball Specialists	437
Waxworks.....	438
Fake Royal Seal.....	438
Waxworks 11	439
Weapons	440
Crossbow.....	440
Katana	440
Repeating Arbalest	440
Scimitar	441
Ulfbehrt Sword.....	441
Weapons 11	441
Weaving	443
Basket.....	443
Cheesecloth	443
Epic Tapestry	443
Exotic Weaving	444
Loom	445
Summer Pants.....	445
Summer Shirt	446
Weaving 11	447
Whaling.....	449
Whaling 11	449
Whaler	449
Woodwork.....	451
Armoured Howdah.....	451
Barge Poles.....	451
Bunk	452
Hand Plane	452
Hookah	453
Howdah	454
Mash Paddle	454
Mining Ladder	455
Roman Crane (Also under Engineering).....	455
Scaffolding	456

Smoking Pipes.....	456
Trellis	457
Wain	458
Wheelbarrow	458
Woodwork 11	458

Administration

Name	Administration 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Administration +1 (example from Adm 10 to Adm 11) • Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Administration based specialists <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There are little to no administration based tasks that would require Specialists.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Administration, Specialists</i>

Name	Advanced Smiths
DL	7
Pre-Req	Improved Smiths (Administration research) Armour 10 (Group A skill) Metalwork 10 (Group A skill) Weapons 10 (Group A skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Greater Smiths (Administration research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Productivity Boost (Armour, Metalwork, Weaponsmith): Every Worker performing a Armour, Metalwork or Weapons activity counts as 2.00 Workers (+1.00 Effective Workers). • Stacks: Stacks with all other Armour, Metalwork or Weapons implements / buildings. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anvil Required: Bonus from Advanced Smiths is only effective if also using an Anvil. If no Anvil is used by that worker, then no bonus is provided by this research.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Superseded: This research bonus is superseded by that of Greater Smiths (Administration research) • Supersedes: This research bonus supersedes the bonus of the Improved Smiths research. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: Add extra Workers to make up the difference. • TN 2020: No action needed, automatically calculated. • Example: 1,000 workers in a unit with Smiths would count as 2,000 workers on Armour, Metalwork or Weapons activities.
Summary	<i>Productivity Boost – Metalworking, Armour, Weaponsmithing</i>

Name	Agent
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>The Tribe that possesses this research gains access to Agents, one man Trade Village merchants who buy and sell to their hearts content.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Skill – Agent (Group B): Each level of Agent skill allows the Tribe to place a 1 person unit in a Trade Village. • Agent: Agents buy and sell at the Trade Village on the Tribe’s behalf. Goods are bought and sold normally at the Trade Village. Goods bought and sold at the Trade Village must be picked up and delivered by other units as the Agent may not move on its own. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Immobile: Agents may not move on their own. They must FOLLOW other units to get to where they will be stations. • Activities: Agents may not perform any activities and may not scout. • Food: Agents still consume food (Provs) and must be supplied with the food or they will starve to death. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Trade Villages are listed on the TribeNet website.

Summary	<i>New unit type for Trade Town interaction</i>
----------------	---

Name	Alliance Castras
DL	4
Pre-Req	Corps Diplomatique between Clan and at least 1 other Clan, or being part of a Nation
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alliance Fortifications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Units in a Clan that has one or more Tribes with Alliance Castras may build Fortifications, and only fortifications, in the same hex as a Village or Settlement belonging to another Allied Clan. ○ Allied Clan units may build Fortifications, and only fortifications, in the same hex as a Village or Settlement belonging to a unit in a Clan that has one or more Tribes with the Alliance Castras research topic. ○ Fortifications built by non-owning clan(s) exist simply to provide shelter to units of their own clan if, and when, the hex is attacked. ○ Each Clan in the hex defends its own fortifications separately. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Either of the Clans involved must have Alliance Castras. • The two Clans must either be linked via Corps Diplomatique or Nation. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Only Fortifications: This research only covers building Fortifications. No other building type may be built using these rules. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Example: Clans 678, 777 and 789 are in the same hex when this hex is attacked by Clan 999. Three separate battles are available. 999 vs 678, 999 vs 777 and 999 vs 789. Only the fortifications belonging to that involved Clan may be used. • Other rules may allow units from different Clans to fight together.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost – Fortifications allowed for different clans in the same hex.</i>

Name	Bureaucracy 1, 2, 3....
DL	1,2,3
Pre-Req	Bureaucracy I: N/A Bureaucracy II: Bureaucracy 1 (Administration research) Bureaucracy III: Bureaucracy II (Administration research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Bureaucracy I: Bureaucracy II (Administration research) Bureaucracy II: Bureaucracy III (Administration research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Bureaucracy III: Bureaucracy IV (Bureaucracy research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Bureaucracy I: +1 Level to Administration (ex. Adm 10 to Adm 11) ○ Bureaucracy II: +3 Level to Administration (ex. Adm 11 to Adm 14) ○ Bureaucracy III: +5 Level to Administration (ex. Adm 14 to Adm 19) • New Skill – Bureaucracy (Group C): Once Bureaucracy 1 research topic has been completed, the Tribe may learn a new skill called Bureaucracy. It is a Group C skill. Bureaucracy skill is purely a skill to access Bureaucracy research topics Bureaucracy 4 and beyond. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bureaucracy 4,5,6... research topics: Once Bureaucracy Skill Level 10 is reached, the Tribe may research Bureaucracy 4 and higher. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<u>Skill Level Increase - Administration</u>

Name	Extra Element
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Independent Element: This research topic allows the Tribe an extra Element beyond that allowed by Administration skill levels. This is a normal Element in all regards with the exception that it gains the ability to have its own 8 scout groups independent of the Tribe's normal allocation. • Bonus Scout Groups: This Element gains an additional 8 Scout Groups that does not count against the Tribe's limit of 8 Scout Groups (in effect, this tribe has a total of 16 scout groups, but 8 must come from this extra element). <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Immobile: This bonus element may not move except that it may move to its permanent location. Once in position, it may not move further. • Restricted Activities: May perform Activities as per Element but is limited to 2 Activities per turn in addition to Hunting, Herding and the three defensive suite activities (Defence, Suppression, Security). Note: Metalwork / Traps and Metalwork / Shovels counts as two activities. • Cost: \$0.70 / Turn

	Restrictions: N/A Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Multiple Completions: This research topic may be taken up to three (3) times per Tribe.
Summary	<i>Extra Element with independent Scout Groups.</i>

Name	Extra Movement 4
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Extra Movement 4 (Administration research)
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tribe and Elements: +4 MV Requirements: N/A Restrictions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Once you have gained Extra Movement 4 in a unit, this unit has this movement. When using To Limit movement orders, it will attempt to use these extra 4 MV. If your intent is to move less than the full modified MV value, you should specify the hexes you would like to move to (N, NE, SE, etc) and not use To Limit movement or else you may overshoot your desired destination. • Does not apply to Fleets, Garrisons or Couriers. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (This has now been coded to automatically add in to the primary tribe. In movement, it picks up the primary tribes modifier and applies it to all sub groups)
Summary	<i>Bonus Movement to Tribe and Elements</i>

Name	Extra Movement 6
DL	4
Pre-Req	Extra Movement 4 (Administration research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tribe and Elements: +2 MV (+6 total with EM4) Requirements:

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> You can not opt in Orders to not use EM once it is in place – should you not want to move the full MV you should specify only the hexes you do want to move. Does not apply to Fleets, Garrisons or Couriers. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (This has now been coded to automatically add in to the primary tribe. In movement, it picks up the primary tribes modifier and applies it to all sub groups)
Summary	<i>Bonus Movement to Tribe and Elements</i>

Name	Greater Smiths
DL	7
Pre-Req	<u>Advanced Smiths (Administration research)</u> Armour 11 (Armour research) Metalwork 11 (Metalwork research) Weapons 11 (Weapons research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Productivity Boost (Armour, Metalwork, Weaponsmith): Every Worker performing a Armour, Metalwork or Weapons activity counts as 2.50 Workers (+1.50 Effective Workers). Stacks: Stacks with all other Armour, Metalwork or Weapons implements / buildings. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anvil Required: Bonus from Greater Smiths is only effective if also using an Anvil. If no Anvil is used by that worker, then no bonus is provided by this research. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Supersedes: This research bonus supersedes the bonus of the Advanced Smiths research. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TN Classic: Add extra Workers to make up the difference. TN 2020: No action needed, automatically calculated. Example: 1,000 workers in a unit with Smiths would count as 2,500 workers on Armour, Metalwork or Weapons activities.

Summary	<i>Productivity Boost – Metalworking, Armour, Weaponsmithing</i>
Name	Improved Smiths
DL	7
Pre-Req	<u>Smiths (Administration research)</u> Armour 8 (Group A skill) Metalwork 8 (Group A skill) Weapons 8 (Group A skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	<u>Advanced Smiths (Administration research)</u>
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Productivity Boost (Armour, Metalwork, Weaponsmith): Every Worker performing a Armour, Metalwork or Weapons activity counts as 1.50 Workers (+0.50 Effective Workers). • Stacks: Stacks with all other Armour, Metalwork or Weapons implements / buildings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Stacking with Specialists is additive and not multiplicative. A Specialist with Improved Smiths would operate as 1 (Normal Worker) + 1 (Specialist) + 0.50 (Improved Smiths) for a total of 2.5 Effective Workers. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anvil Required: Bonus from Improved Smiths is only effective if also using an Anvil. If no Anvil is used by that worker, then no bonus is provided by this research. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Superseded: This research bonus is superseded by that of Advanced Smiths (Administration research) • Supersedes: This research bonus supersedes the bonus of the Smiths research. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: Add extra Workers to make up the difference. • TN 2020: No action needed, automatically calculated. • Example: 1,000 workers in a unit with Smiths would count as 1,500 workers on Armour, Metalwork or Weapons activities.
Summary	<i>Productivity Boost – Metalworking, Armour, Weaponsmithing</i>

Name	International Cultural Organization
DL	8

Pre-Req	Board of Trade (Economics research)
Recipe	<p>1 Committee Headquarters: People 5k, Eng 8, Stone 25k, Silver: 100k, Gold 100</p> <p>1 Embassy: People 1k, Eng 6, Stone 10k, Silver 50k, Gold 100</p>
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Upon completion, the Clan may form an International Cultural Organization (ICO) in a village of at least 6k population (W/A/I). <i>Each ICO village must have a name.</i> The Maximum number of Clans that may join an ICO is limited by the Host Clan's Diplomacy skill. A Clan may only be Host Clan for a single ICO. A Clan may only gain bonuses from 2 ICOs, but may be a member of more.</p> <p>Benefits: The ICO gives the Clan a single benefit, a 5% increase in Local Support benefits per <u>other</u> Clan that joins the ICO. This affects Population gained, Population hireable, Gold gained, etc.</p> <p>To join the ICO, a Clan must meet the following conditions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Have a Treaty (Pol Research) OR diplomatic relations via Corps Diplomatique (Dip Research) OR be in a Nation with the host Clan. 2) Build an Embassy at the ICO village site. <p>Clans that join the ICO gain the following benefits:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Local Support bonus of 2.5% per <u>other</u> Clan in the ICO. <p>Annual Cost:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Each member of the ICO must consume 1 Lot of each desired commodity per other clan in the ICO. Failure to consume this yearly removes participation in the ICO for the year. This is sent as a Transfer to usage (1263) <p>Annual Bonus - Non-Members</p> <p>1) As part of the Cultural exchange the dues the ICO pay annually gets dispersed among non-members, all non-member Clans may gain 1 'Lot' of a single Desired Commodity annually. This bonus will be announced with the Month 12 Tribe News for players to transfer to their Clan on month 1.</p> <p>Note: This only applies to Clans which have a Clan number higher than the Clan Number of the research holder. Example Clan 489 would give this benefit to non-members of Clans 490 or higher. Clans 488 and lower receive nothing (with the exception that if a player returns to the game and starts a new clan at an older clan number but not taking over a pre-existing clan). Each non-member Clan is responsible for using the auto-transfer section of their orders to transfer the desired commodity from Usage..</p> <p>Embassy: Upon completing the embassy, the Clan must maintain a Unit at the Embassy hex consisting of at least Inactives 10, Actives 30, Warriors 30. They may not perform normal village activities. This unit is a Garrison that does not require the Garrison skill to support (Bonus garrison). While the Embassy maintains its manning, the Clan gains the</p>

	<p>benefits described above. Embassies may hold a maximum of 250 population. Embassies may have their own fortifications built (this will be noted on the player's report in the comment / info section).</p> <p>Population in the Embassy may perform no other activities beyond Administering the Embassy (10 Inactives and 30 Actives required), Defending / Security of the Embassy (30 Warriors minimum). Additional population beyond these 70, to a maximum of 250, may be present but are limited in their activities. They may not perform any Group A skills but may participate in Spying, Security and other thematic roles for an Embassy.</p> <p>Additional Fortifications may be built by the Embassy. This will be kept as a Note on the Report.</p> <p>Defense: Should the ICO village come under attack, the Host Clan and any Clan's units in Embassies may form a Meeting of the Clan (full rules apply, including skill check losses for all Tribes involved) for defensive purposes only even without Corps Diplomatique relations to every other Clan. This Defensive MoTC may not attack (must declare Defend) and may not be used to break DEVA. This bonus only applies inside the ICO Host Clan's village.</p>
Summary	<i>New Organization – Local Support Boost to Members and Desired Commodities to others</i>

Name	Smiths
DL	7
Pre-Req	Anvil (Metalwork research) Armour 6 (Group A skill) Metalwork 6 (Group A skill) Weapons 6 (Group A skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Improved Smiths (Administration research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Productivity Boost (Armour, Metalwork, Weaponsmith): Every Worker performing a Armour, Metalwork or Weapons activity counts as 1.25 Workers (+0.25 Effective Workers). • Stacks: Stacks with all other Armour, Metalwork or Weapons implements / buildings. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anvil Required: Bonus from Smiths is only effective if also using an Anvil. If no Anvil is used by that worker, then no bonus is provided by this research. <p>Restrictions:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Superseded: This research bonus is superseded by that of Improved Smiths (Administration research) <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: Add extra Workers to make up the difference. • TN 2020: No action needed, automatically calculated. • Example: <i>1,000 workers in a unit with Smiths would count as 1,250 workers on Armour, Metalwork or Weapons activities.</i>
Summary	<i>Productivity Boost – Metalworking, Armour, Weaponsmithing</i>

Agriculture

Name	Agriculture 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	Agriculture I (Farming research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Agriculture +1 (example from Agriculture 10 to Agriculture 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Agriculture specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Agriculture Specialists: There are no benefits to having Agriculture specialists at this time. • There is currently no benefit for Agriculture skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Agriculture</i>

Name	Agriculture IV, Agriculture V, Agriculture VI
DL	4,5,6,...
Pre-Req	Agriculture IV: Agriculture 10 (Group C skill), Agriculture III (Farming research) Agriculture V: Agriculture IV (Farming research) Agriculture VI: Agriculture V (Agriculture research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Agriculture IV: Agriculture III (Farming research) Agriculture V: Agriculture IV (Agriculture research) Agriculture IV: Agriculture V (Agriculture research)
Description	<p>The effect of gaining an Agriculture topic is to add levels to your Farm Skill.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Agriculture 4: +5 Level to Farming (ex. Farm 20 to Farm 25) ○ Agriculture 5: +5 Level to Farming (ex. Farm 25 to Farm 30) ○ Agriculture 6: +5 Level to Farming (ex. Farm 30 to Farm 35)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Additional Skill Level Bonus: Every research topic of Agriculture 7 or higher adds an additional +5 Farming levels. <p>Requirements:N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Books may be written. There is no current limit to the levels of Agriculture that can be researched.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Farming</i>

Alchemy

Name	Alchemy 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Alchemy +1 (example from Alc 10 to Alc 11) • Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Alchemy based specialists <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Alchemy, Specialists</i>

Name	Blasting Jar
DL	5
Pre-Req	Access to Saltpetre
Recipe	1 Blasting Jar: People2, Jar 1, Sulphur 4, Saltpetre 10
Leads To:	Blasting Powder (Alchemy research) Siege Cannon (Siege Equipment research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Destructive Engineering: During destructive Engineering Research projects such as Canals, removing Fords, etc, each person with a Blasting Jar does the work of 10 people. For example, to convert a Ford into a Canal normally requires 1000 Workers with tools (either Picks, Shovels, or Mattocks or combination), 20 Wagons, 10 Cattle/Horses. However, 100 workers with 100 Blasting Jars (and with 100 tools), 20 Wagons, 10 Cattle/Horses will do the same job. Blasting Jars are sent to usage once used. • Siege Artillery: Siege equipment may require Blasting Jars or better. Blasting Jars are considered the base ammo requirement. Other ammo may provide enhanced abilities. <p>Requirements:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weapons Skill Level 1: Wpn 1 is required to make Blasting Jars. Creation of Blasting Jars is a Weapons activity. • Quarrying Skill Level 10: Qry 10 is required to make Blasting Jars. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “A Tribe that wants to learn Blasting Jar needs access to Saltpetre but does not need the research itself”. • Sulphur may be obtained from mining at Volcanoes. All Volcanoes have Sulphur. If your personal Volcano does not, contact the GM. • Saltpetre may be obtained from research in Refining or Farming • Weight: 10 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Boost to Digging / Canal Building and Siege Cannon effectiveness</i>

Name	Blasting Powder
DL	6
Pre-Req	Blasting Jar (Alchemy research)
Recipe	1 Blasting Powder: People 1, Alc 10, Blasting Jar 1, Saltpetre 20
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Beyond making preset Blasting Jars, the Tribe and its units with this research may create Blasting Powder instead. Blasting Powder is a more shelf stable but also more versatile version of Blasting Jars.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Destructive Engineering: During destructive Engineering Research projects such as Canals, removing Fords, etc, each person with a Blasting Jar does the work of 20 people. For example, to convert a Ford into a Canal normally requires 1000 Workers with tools (either Picks, Shovels, or Mattocks or combination), 20 Wagons, 10 Cattle/Horses. However, 100 workers with 100 Blasting Jars (and with 100 tools), 20 Wagons, 10 Cattle/Horses will do the same job. Blasting Jars are sent to usage once used. • Siege Artillery: Defender defensive factor bonus is reduced by 25 base instead of 20% as per Blasting Jars. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weapons Skill Level 1: Wpn 1 is required to make Blasting Powder. Creation of Blasting Powder is a Weapons activity. • Quarrying Skill Level 10: Qry 10 is required to make Blasting Powder.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Effectiveness Numbers: Regular Blasting Jar has an AM cost of approximately 5.81 and provides +9 AM for a total of 3.19 AM boost. Blasting Powder requires an additional 3 AM for a total of 8.81 AM cost and provides 19 AM for a total boost of 10.19 AM • Weight: 10 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Upgrade to Blasting Jar</i>

Apiarism

Name	Apiaries with Reusable Frames
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Eng6, Mtl3, Wd6 + Apiary Recipe
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Apiaries built with reusable wooden frames use the same materials as regular apiaries. However the superior design involves reusable frames so the bees do not have to rebuild the structural elements (cones) of the hive after every harvest.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Seeking: Doubles the number of Hives received from Seeking in Spring 01. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Construction: Requires the Apiaries with Reusable Frames to be constructed <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Seeking Boost - Double Hives</i>

Name	Apiarism II
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Apiology I (Apiarism research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Skill Level Bonus:<ul style="list-style-type: none">◦ Apiarism +1 (example from Api 10 to Api 11)• Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Apiarism based specialists <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Apiarism, Specialists</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Apiology I, Apiology II, Apiology III...
DL	1, 2, 3
Pre-Req	Apiarism 11 (Apiarism research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Apiology I: Apiology II Apiology 2: Apiology III Apiology 3: Apiology IV (Apiology research) Apiology 1: Apiology 11 (Apiology research)
Description	<p>The effect of gaining an Apiology topic is to add levels to your Api Skill.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Apiology 1: +1 Level to Apiarism (ex. Api 11 to Api 12) ○ Apiology 2: +3 Level to Apiarism (ex. Api 12 to Api 15) ○ Apiology 3: +5 Level to Apiarism (ex. Api 15 to Api 20) • New Skill – Apiology (Group C): Once Apiology 1 research topic has been completed, the Tribe may learn a new skill called Apiology. It is a Group C skill. Apiology skill is purely a skill to access Apiology research topics Apiology 4 and beyond. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Books may be written.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Apiarism</i>

Name	Breed New Queens
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yearly Increase: Once per year, on Spring month 1, Bee swarms produce 24 new Hives in the Tribe with this research topic. <p>Requirements: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Restrictions: N/A Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coded to automatically add Hives with no manual activity.
Summary	<i>Yearly increase of Hives (+24)</i>

Name	Pastry
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	<p>Allows FOUR different types of Pastries to be made, each with its own recipe:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A) Baklava & Coffee - 2 people, BAK 4, 10 honey, 20 flour and 1 Coffee B) Baklava & Tea – 2 people, BAK 4, 10 honey, 20 flour and 1 Tea C) Napoleon & Coffee - 2 people, BAK 4, 10 sugar, 20 flour and 1 Coffee D) Napoleon & Tea - 2 people, BAK 4, 10 sugar, 20 flour and 1 Tea
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Pastries cover a wide variety of desserts made with honey/sugar and flour. Making luxury foodstuffs such as desserts available to a tribe, should slightly increase its morale. The Pastry research allows the Tribe to create and serve pastry to other Tribes, thereby gaining and giving General Morale.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Serving Pastry: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The Tribe serving the pastry gains +0.04 General Morale. ○ The Tribe being served the pastry gains +0.02 General Morale. ○ Players should indicate to the GM in Comments which Tribes are receiving Morale increases. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pastry Quantities: The recipes given are what is required to serve 100 people. If the population (W/A/I) of the specified Tribe is 5,000 then 50 Baklava & Tea would be required consuming Honey 500, Flour 1,000 and Tea 50. • Baking Knowledge: The Unit that is creating the Pastry must have Baking 4. • Usage: Pastry needs to be transferred to unit 1263 (Usage) in AutoOrders. • Location: The unit serving the pastry and the Tribe being served must be located in the same Hex. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number of Guests per Year <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Pastry may be served to any given Clan no more than once per Year. ○ Pastry is served to one specified Tribe within a clan. ○ Any number of other Clans may be served in a given year.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A tribe may only gain the morale bonus from serving or being served Pastries once a year. ● Tribe Being Served: Only Tribes may be served Pastries. Elements, Fleets, Garrisons, Agents, Couriers and any other non-Tribe Unit may not be served Pastry. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Tracking: Players are required to keep their own records of which units have been served Pastry and when. It is recommended that this be kept as a running track in the notes/comments tab for easy review as needed.
Summary	<i>New Item - Pastries - Boosts Morale to Self / Others</i>

Name	Propolis
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Propolis is a reddish waxy resin used by Bees to repair cells and is commonly used as a healing agent.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Collecting: The Tribe with this research may collect Propolis from Hives. ● Healing: Propolis may be used as a Healing agent. It is twice as powerful as Herbs when used for healing. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Collecting: Only Tribes (not Elements, etc) may collect this. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Coded to allow use in Combat ● Coded to be collected ● Weight: 1lb
Summary	<i>New Item - Propolis - Used to heal, double Herb effectiveness</i>

Name	Staff of Life
DL	6

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	10 Staff of Life: People 1, Grain 20, Herbs 10, Honey 20 20 Staff of Life: People 1, Flour 40, Herbs 20, Honey 40
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Staff of Life is a nutrient rich bread that strengthens the body and the immune system, aiding healing.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Healing: Staff of Life may be used as a Healing agent. It is four times as powerful as Herbs when used for healing. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maximum Healing Items: 1 Healing Item may be given per Wounded combatant. • A Wounded Warrior may not be given any of the other healing items such as, but not limited to, Herbs, Propolis, Salves, etc, unless a research topic specifically states it may be combined. • Staff of Life will not affect Battlefield Medicine, only end of Turn healing. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 1lb
Summary	<i>New Item – Staff of Life - Used to heal, 4x Herb effectiveness</i>

Apiology

Name	Apiology 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	Apiology I (Apiarism research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Apiology +1 (example from Apiology 10 to Apiology 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Agriculture specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Apiology Specialists: There are no benefits to having Apiology specialists at this time. • There is currently no benefit from raising Apiology to greater than 10. It solely exists to provide access to Apiology IV research and beyond.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Apiology</i>

Name	Apiology IV, Apiology V, Apiology VI...
DL	4,5,6,...
Pre-Req	Apiology IV: Apiology 10 (Group C skill), Apiology III (Apiarism research) Apiology V: Apiology IV (Apiarism research) Apiology VI: Apiology V (Apiarism research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Apiology IV: Apiology III Apiology V: Apiology IV
Description	<p>The effect of gaining an Apiology topic is to add levels to your Api Skill.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Apiology 4: +6 Level to Apiarism (ex. Api 20 to Api 26) ○ Apiology 5: +6 Level to Apiarism (ex. Api 26 to Api 32)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Apiology 6: +6 Level to Apiarism (ex. Api 32 to Api 38) ◆ Additional Skill Level Bonus: Every research topic of Apiology 7 or higher adds an additional +6 Apiarism levels. <p>Requirements:N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Books may be written. ◆ There is no current limit to the levels of Apiology that can be researched.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Apiarism</i>

Apothecary

Name	Apothecary 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Apothecary +1 (example from Apothecary 10 to Apothecary 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Apothecary specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Apothecary Specialists: There are little to no benefits to be gained from Apothecary Specialists at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Apothecary, Specialists</i>

Name	Hashish
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>“Hashish, or hash, is a drug made from the resin of the cannabis plant. It is consumed by inhaling from a small” pipe. - <i>Wikipedia</i></p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yearly Harvesting: A crop will produce Hashish 1000 in Spring month 03 of each year but not on any other month. • Trading: Hashish may be traded at any of the major cities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ For example, Shanghai will trade Opium 100 for Hashish 1000. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cultivating: 10 People per month must be allocated to plant/maintain/cultivate the crop for at least six months before the first production and constantly throughout the year there on out. <p>Restrictions:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oversupply: If a constant supply is maintained, the rewards will be increased (Contact GM), however do not be surprised if the city in question seeks help in eradicating this problem. • Terrain: Hashish may not be cultivated in the following Terrains: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Any Snow ○ Any Water ○ Desert ○ Arid • Limited Acreage: A Tribe is limited to a total of Hashish 1000 in Spring month 03. • One Plot: A Tribe is limited to a single Plot of Hashish. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>New Crop - Hashish, tradeable to International Cities</i>

Name	Hookah
DL	6
Pre-Req	Smoking Pipes (Apothecary research) OR Smoking Pipes (Woodwork research)
Recipe	1 Hookah: People 1, Glasswork 8, Bottle 1, Leather 4, Tar 1
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting Recipe: This research allows the Tribe to craft Hookahs as a Woodworking activity. • Tobacco Smoking: Hookahs allow a Tribe to smoke 67% less Tobacco when using Smoke Tobacco. 5k would become 1,650 Tobacco using 50 Hookahs and 15k would become 4,950 Tobacco using 150 Hookahs. • Hashish Smoking: Hookahs allow a Tribe to smoke 34% less Hashish when using Smoke Hashish. Instead of Smoking 100 Hashish using 100 Pipes, the Tribe would Smoke 66 Hashish using 100 Hookahs. The bonus is based off of the standard amount of Hashish not the reduced amount. • Opium Smoking: Tribes with Hookah research, and not other Tribes/Clans, may use Hookahs to smoke Opium. This enables the ability to “Smoke Opium”. Smoking Opium requires a Fair Slot separate from Smoking Tobacco and Smoking Hashish. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Smoking Opium: This requires 1 Hookah per Opium smoked. Smoking Opium allows the Tribe to gain Slaves as if Opium were a Desired Commodity. Normal Fair limits, multipliers, etc apply. <p>Requirements: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Restrictions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hookah Use: A Tribe may only use the required number of Hookahs to gain the bonus. Any additional pipes are not used. Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>General Morale Increase, Commodity Use, Reduces use of Tobacco and Hashish.</i>

Name	Opium Den
DL	4
Pre-Req	Smoking Pipes (Apothecary research) Or Smoking Pipes (Woodworking research)
Recipe	1 Opium Den: People 200, Stone 1k, Cloth:500, Silk:100
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting Recipe: This research allows the Tribe to build an Opium Den as an Engineering Activity. • Hashish Smoking: When smoking Hashish, any Tribe in the Clan also gains Gold equal to one Half (1/2) the number of Pipes/Hookahs that were utilized, rounded up. • Opium Smoking: When smoking Opium, any Tribe in the Clan also gains Gold equal to 75% of the Opium smoked, rounded up. • Frankincense Incense: The use of 1 Frankincense per 10 Hookah/Pipe/Opium increases the Gold gain by 1/3rd, rounded up. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hashish Smoking Example: A Tribe smokes Hashish using 50 Pipes (or Hookahs). In addition to the +0.01 General Morale, the Tribe also gains $50 / 2 = 25$ Gold • Opium Smoking Example: A tribe smokes Opium. The Tribe has a Fair multiplier of 3 (City + TP) and an Opium Den. It may spent 16 Opium to gain 16 lots of Slaves normally and with the Fair multiplier, this increases to 48 Opium to gain 48 lots of Slaves provided the Tribe have 48 Hookahs. In addition to the 288 Slaves, the Tribe would also gain $48 * 0.75 = 36$ Gold. • Frankincense Example: In the above Opium example, if the Tribe also spent 5 Frankincense, the amount of gold gained would increase by a third. This would increase the 36 Gold to 48 Gold. Notes:

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 Opium Den is sufficient for any number of Clans / Tribes to use in a City. • Opium Dens may be built for other Clans / Tribes and used by other Clans / Tribes.
Summary	<i>New Building – Opium Den, Gain Gold while your people find eternal bliss</i>

Name	Salves
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	1 Herb and 2 Silver can be made into 1 Salve (Healing activity) 1 Salve is equal to 2 Herbs during Healing in combat. 1 person can make 10 Herbs into 10 Salves. Weight as Herbs.
Summary	<i>New Item - Salves, Counts as 2 Salves</i>

Name	Smoking Pipes
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Pipe: 1 Person, Wd 8, Log 1
Leads To:	Hookah (Apothecary research) Opium Den (Apothecary research) Opium Den (Economics research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting Recipe: This research allows the Tribe to craft Pipes as a Woodworking activity. • Pipe Bonus: 1 Pipe replaces 1 Parchment and reduces Tobacco use from 100 per Parchment to 50 per Pipe. (2.5k + 50 Pipes and 7.5k + 150 pipes). • Hashish: Tribes with Pipe research, and not other Tribes/Clans, may use Pipes to smoke Hashish. This enables the ability to “Smoke Hashish”. Smoking Hashish requires a Fair Slot separate from Smoking Tobacco. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Smoking Hashish: This requires 100 Hashish and 100 Pipes. Smoking Hashish provides a General Morale increase of +0.01. If 250 Hashish and 250 Pipes are used, then the General Morale increase is +0.02 instead of 0.01. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hashish: Only 1 Tribe may smoke hashish per fair. • Pipe Use: A Tribe may only use the required number of Pipes to gain the bonus.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Any additional pipes are not used.</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>New Item – Smoking Pipes, Reduced Tobacco use, Smoke Hashish for Happiness</i>

Archaeology

Major Updated NOTE (Should/When this affects you, please let the GM know):

- 1) Player Artefact Sites no longer give an item with the name “Artefact”
- 2) When an Artefact site is created, the Clan Chief gives the Artefact Site a name “Mesopotamian” or “Blue Sky” or some other name that signifies what they’re calling the people the artefact site once belonged to.
- 3) When excavating, the item that the excavator receives is now called “Artefact <Name from #2>” and “Relic <Name from #2>”. For example, “Artefact Mesopotamian” or “Relic Blue Sky”.
- 4) NPC Relic sites that provide “Relics” now provide a Relic with a name unique to that site.
- 5) These now named Artefacts/Relics are all identical and meet the requirements for all topics/uses that require a standard Artefact / Relic.

Name	Archaeology 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Archaeology +1 (example from Arch 10 to Arch 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Archaeology specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Archaeology, Specialists</i>

Name	Exhibition
DL	5
Pre-Req	Museum Art 6 Literacy 6
Recipe	1 Exhibition: People 27, Eng 6, Log 50, Iron 10, Stone 5
Leads To:	Exhibition Curators (Archaeology research) Magnificent Exhibition (Archaeology research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

On completion of the research an Archaeology tribe gains the ability to install a single Exhibition in their Museum. To do this, a unit from the tribe with Exhibition must build the Exhibition building (Joint project rules apply). Once the Exhibition building is built, the Clan may now populate the Exhibition with Artefacts.

Benefits:

- 1) Annual Display:** Immediately upon reaching 5 unique Artefacts, and then annually on the anniversary of the founding of the Home City that contains the Exhibition, the Exhibition provides a bonus to the Tribe operating the Museum.
 - a. Annual Morale Increase:** During the Annual Display, the Tribe that operates the museum gains a **General** Morale increase based upon the number of Unique Artefacts it holds at that time in inventory (or via Goods Tribe relationship).
 - i.** 5-9 Unique Artefacts: 0.010 **General** Morale increase
 - ii.** 10-14 Unique Artefacts: 0.015 **General** Morale increase
 - iii.** 15-19 Unique Artefacts: 0.020 **General** Morale increase
 - iv.** 20-24 Unique Artefacts: 0.025 **General** Morale increase
 - v.** 25+ Unique Artefacts: 0.030 **General** Morale increase
 - b. Annual Population Gain:** During the Annual Display, the Tribe that operates the Museum gains a number of Actives that join the Tribe from the surrounding countryside.
 - i.** 5-9 Unique Artefacts: 5 Actives per Artefact
 - ii.** 10-14 Unique Artefacts: 5 Actives per Artefact
 - iii.** 15-19 Unique Artefacts: 10 Actives per Artefact
 - iv.** 20-24 Unique Artefacts: 10 Actives per Artefact
 - v.** 25+ Unique Artefacts: 15 Actives per Artefact
 - c. Annual Auxiliary Gain:** During the Annual Display, the Tribe that operates the Museum gains a number of Auxiliaries that join the Home City from the surrounding country side. These Auxiliaries join whichever unit, if any, that already has Auxiliaries from Local Support. If no unit currently has Auxiliaries, they can join any unit at the Home City. These are standard Auxiliaries per the Local Support rules.
 - i.** 5-9 Unique Artefacts: 0 Auxiliaries per Artefact
 - ii.** 10-14 Unique Artefacts: 5 Auxiliaries per Artefact
 - iii.** 15-19 Unique Artefacts: 5 Auxiliaries per Artefact
 - iv.** 20-24 Unique Artefacts: 10 Auxiliaries per Artefact
 - v.** 25+ Unique Artefacts: 10 Auxiliaries per Artefact

Requirements:

- 1) The Site must have a Museum with an Exhibition built
- 2) The Exhibition may only be built in a Home City.

Restrictions:

- 1) An Exhibition may only hold a single Artefact from each site. For example, “Artefact Blue Sky” and “Artefact Mesopotamian” would count as two separate Artefacts but if two “Artefact Blue Sky”s were held, it would only count as 1

	<p>Artefact.</p> <p>2) An Exhibition must contain at least 5 unique Artefacts before any benefits are gained.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Building for Others: The Exhibition may not be built for other Clans. A Tribe must hold the research to operate an Exhibition. • Record Keeping: Players are responsible for keeping records of the Annual Display and informing the GM when the anniversary benefits should be applied.
Summary	<i>Collect Unique Artefacts, Yearly gain of Morale, Actives and Auxiliaries</i>

Name	Exhibition Curators
DL	5
Pre-Req	Museum Exhibition (Archaeology research) Literacy 8 (Group B skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
	<p>On completion of the research, the Archaeology Tribe that operates the Exhibition and Museum may deploy additional resources to increase the popularity and effectiveness of their Exhibition.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Annual Display: The Exhibition Curators provide additional bonuses during the Annual Display. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Annual Population Gain: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. 5+ Unique Artefacts: +5 Actives per Artefact b. Annual Auxiliaries Gain: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. 5+ Unique Artefacts: +10 Auxiliaries per Artefact c. Admission Fees: The Auxiliaries that join the Clan from Exhibition and Exhibition Curators also provide a donation to the operation of the Museum and its Exhibition. The Player will gain Silver based on the number of Locals, or if the Player has Minting research completed, they may gain Coin instead. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. Silver Gain: Each of the Auxiliaries gained during the Annual Display provides 200 Silver. ii. Coin Gain (Alternate if Minting Research): Each of the Auxiliaries gained during the Annual Display provides 2 Coin. <p>Requirements:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Curators: The Tribe that operates the Exhibition/Museum must deploy 1 Active to

	<p>act as Curator per unique Artefact held by the Exhibition (in the inventory of the Archaeology tribe) every month throughout the year.</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Example 1: If the Tribe has 10 Unique Artefacts in the Exhibition, then it would normally gain 5 Actives / Unique Artefact * 10 Unique Artefacts = 50 Actives during the Annual Display and would gain 5 Auxiliaries / Unique Artefact * 10 Unique Artefacts = 50 Auxiliaries during the Annual Display. With Exhibition Curators, it would also an additional +5 Actives / Unique Artefact => +50 Actives, and +10 Auxiliaries / Unique Artefact => +100 Auxiliaries for a total of 100 Actives and 150 Auxiliaries. To gain this, it is spending 10 AM / month for a total of 120 AM per year. • Example 2: 25 Unique artefacts. Normally, 25 * 15 Actives gained = 375 Actives. With Exhibition Curators, this adds another 25 * 5 = 125 Actives for a total of 500 Actives gained. Additionally, 25 * 10 Auxiliaries gained = 250 Auxiliaries. With Exhibition Curators, this adds another 25 * 10 = 250 Auxiliaries for a total of 500 Auxiliaries gained. To gain all this, the Tribe is utilizing 25 AM per month for a total of 300 AM per year as Exhibition Curators.
Summary	<i>Boosts Exhibition bonus</i>

Name	Magnificent Exhibition
DL	5
Pre-Req	Museum Exhibition (Archaeology research) Exhibition Curators (Archaeology research) Art 8
Recipe	1 Magnificent Exhibition (Building): People 27, Eng 6, Log 50, Iron 10, Stone 5 1 Enhanced Magnificent Exhibition (Building): Any 5 of the following: Pearls 5, Kaolin 5, Brocade 2, Ivory 10, Relic 1, Holy Artefact 1, Camels 2, Falcons 2, Branded Alcohol 1 Barrel, Epic Tapestry 1
Leads To:	N/A
	<p>On completion of the research an Archaeology tribe may build a Magnificent Exhibition adjoining the normal Exhibition. Once built and all materials are sent to usage, the Annual Display gains increased benefits.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Annual Display: The Magnificent Exhibition provides additional bonuses during the Annual Display. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Annual Population Gain: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> i. 5+ Unique Artefacts: +5 Actives per Artefact b. Annual Auxiliaries Gain:

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. 5+ Unique Artefacts: +10 Auxiliaries per Artefact c. Admission Fees: The Auxiliaries that join the Clan during the Annual Display also provide a donation to the operation of the Museum and its Exhibition. The Player will gain Silver based on the number of Locals, or if the Player has Minting research completed, they may gain Coin instead. Additionally, the Player has the option to gain Gold instead. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. Silver Gain: Each of the Auxiliaries gained during the Annual Display provides 250 Silver (instead of the 200 from Exhibition Curators). ii. Coin Gain (Alternate if Minting Research): Each of the Auxiliaries gained during the Annual Display provides 3 Coin (instead of the 2 coin from Exhibition Curators) iii. Gold Gain (Alternate Choice): Each of the Auxiliaries gained during the Annual Display provides 0.5 Gold. <p>2) Enhanced Magnificent Exhibition: If the Tribe builds the additional Enhanced Magnificent Exhibition, the gains the following benefit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Annual Morale Increase: During the Annual Display, the Tribe that operates the museum gains a General Morale increase based upon the number of Unique Artefacts it holds at that time in inventory (or via Goods Tribe relationship). This replaces the General Morale increase from a standard Exhibition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. 5-9 Unique Artefacts: 0.015 General Morale increase ii. 10-14 Unique Artefacts: 0.020 General Morale increase iii. 15-19 Unique Artefacts: 0.025 General Morale increase iv. 20-24 Unique Artefacts: 0.030 General Morale increase v. 25+ Unique Artefacts: 0.035 General Morale increase b. Holy Artefact: The Holy Artefact is now part of the Enhanced Magnificent Exhibition, but its abilities are still active. It still provides its 0.05 Morale to any one Tribe in the Clan. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Boosts Exhibition Bonus, Gain Silver, Coin or Gold</i>

Name	Relic
DL	2
Pre-Req	Tomb Robbers (Archaeology research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Relic 2 (Archaeology research)
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Immediately upon completion of Research Topic: Gain 1 Relic in the unit

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>excavating artefacts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Yearly, on Month 1: Gain 1 Relic in the unit excavating artefacts. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Works in “Artefact” site hex only. Requires workers to be assigned to Excavation as normal to gain Artefacts. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Player is responsible for transferring the Relic on the indicated month.
Summary	<i>Yearly gain of Relic</i>

Name	Relic 2
DL	3
Pre-Req	Relic (Archaeology research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Relic 3 (Archaeology research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately upon completion of Research Topic: Gain a second Relic in the unit excavating artefacts. Yearly, on Month 1: Gain a second Relic in the unit excavating artefacts. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Works in “Artefact” site hex only. Requires workers to be assigned to Excavation as normal to gain Artefacts. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Player is responsible for transferring the Relic on the indicated month.
Summary	<i>Year gain of second relic</i>

Name	Relic 3
DL	4
Pre-Req	Relic 2 (Archaeology research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately upon completion of Research Topic: Gain a third Relic in the unit excavating artefacts. Yearly, on Month 1: Gain a third Relic in the unit excavating artefacts. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Works in “Artefact” site hex only. Requires workers to be assigned to Excavation as normal to gain Artefacts. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Player is responsible for transferring the Relic on the indicated month. Relic 3 is the maximum that can be researched for the main “Artefact” hex.
Summary	<i>Year gain of third relic</i>

Name	Second Site
DL	5
Pre-Req	Excavation 8 (Group A Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Second Site Relic (Archaeology research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Second Ruin Site: Immediately upon completion of Research Topic, the GM will provide the rough location of a second Ruin site within 30 hexes of the Tribe’s location. Second Archeology Garrison: The Tribe may spawn a second Archeology Garrison independent of Garrison levels. This new Archeology Garrison follows all the same rules as a normal Archeology Garrison. Second Archeology Courier: The Tribe may spawn a second Archeology Courier independent of Courier levels. This new Archeology Courier follows all the same rules as a normal Archeology Courier. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only 1 Archeology Unit may excavate from a single Ruin site. To have two Archeology units excavating, they must be at different Sites. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ruin Site Location: The new Ruin site may be located on Water (Ocean or Lake) in addition to other fairly inhospitable places like Mountains and Swamps.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Gain second Ruin site and Archeology Garrison and Archeology Courier</i>
Name	Second Site Relic 1, 2, 3
DL	6, 6, 6
Pre-Req	Relic 3 (Archaeology research) Second Site (Archaeology research)
Recipe	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately upon completion of Research Topic: Gain a Relic in the unit excavating artefacts. Additional Levels of Second Site Relic grant an additional Relic upon completion. Yearly, on Month 1: Gain a Relic in the unit excavating artefacts. Additional Levels of Second Site Relic grant an additional Relic yearly (Second Site Relic 3 would give a total of 3 Relics, one for each level of the research). <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Works in <i>second</i> “Artefact” Ruin site hex only. Requires workers to be assigned to Excavation as normal to gain Artefacts. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Player is responsible for transferring the Relic on the indicated month. Second Site Relic 3 is the maximum that can be researched for the second “Artefact” Ruin hex.
Summary	<i>Gain Relics from second Ruin site</i>

Name	Tomb Robbers
DL	7
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Relic (Archaeology research)
Description	<p>Works in the “Artefact” hex and is done by those already assigned to Excavation. Chance of discerning location of important tombs or other buildings while searching/studying ruins – and unusual/rare or valuable items may be found inside. Gold, Diamonds, Frankincense would probably be the most obvious finds in small amounts.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately: Upon completing Tomb Robbers, the Archeology Unit excavating the site gains three different rare resources of an unknown quantity such as Gold, Diamonds or Frankincense out of six available resources.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yearly: On Month 1 of each year, the Archeology Unit excavating the site gains three different rare resources of an unknown quantity. • Robbing: You may use units from an Archeology Tribe to rob other Archeology sites belonging to other Clans. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Works only in the original “Artefact” Ruin site hex. • Requires workers to be assigned to Excavation as normal to gain Artefacts. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Ruin Site that has been Robbed within the 3 year period will not yield these spoils to a second robber within the time period. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Player is responsible for coordinating with the GM to receive these spoils. • Tomb Robber gives you incentive to go around robbing ruin sites across the world, Indiana Jones.
Summary	<i>Steal from the dead and gain Commodities</i>

Architecture

Name	Architecture 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Architecture +1 (example from Architecture 10 to Architecture 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Architecture specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having specialists in this skill at this time. • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Architecture, Specialists</i>

Name	Landscaped Gardens
DL	4
Pre-Req	Design & Fashion 6 (Group ? skill)
Recipe	1 Landscaped Garden: Architecture 10, DesFas 6, Eng 3, People 400, Bark 10k, Stone 2k, Sand 2k
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Immigration: Immediately upon completion and on Month 1 of each year, a village with one or more Landscaped Gardens gains new population from the locals. Each unit in the village gain 1% of its Actives as new population split equally between Actives and Inactives. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Other Clans: May not be built for villages held by other Clans and Clans that take control of a village that has a Landscaped Garden do not gain benefits from it

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>unless on or more Tribes in the Clan has the research.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Villages gain the bonus regardless of if they contain a unit from the tribe with the research. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • More than one Landscaped Gardens has no effect. • Only 1 Landscaped Gardens is required for all units in the village to gain the bonus.
Summary	<i>New Building – Landscaped Gardens, provides population gain each year.</i>

Archery

Name	Archery 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Archery +1 (example from Arc 10 to Arc 11) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no specialists allowed for Archery skill.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Archery</i>

Name	Longbowman
DL	8
Pre-Req	Heraldry in One Tribe in Clan (Art research) Toxophilite (Archery research) Leadership 10 (Group B skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat Effectiveness: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Combat Effectiveness – Offensive: Longbowman assigned to the Ranged Combat Assignment have a Combat Effectiveness of x2.4 instead of x1.0 that a normal Warrior has. Combat Effectiveness - Offensive modifies the amount of Potential Casualties generated during a phase of Combat. Longbowman only gain this Combat Effectiveness bonus during the Melee phases and only when assigned as Ranged. ○ Combat Effectiveness – Defensive: Longbowman have the standard Combat Effectiveness – Defensive of 1.00. It gains no benefits to resisting Potential Casualties. Combat Effectiveness – Defensive modifies the amount of Potential Casualties applied to this troop type during a phase of Combat. <p>Requirements:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Training: 50 Tea must be paid to convert 1 Warrior into 1 Longbowman. This may be done on any month of the year. For each Longbowman trained, a Warrior will be removed and a Longbowman added. • Annual Payment: 50 Tea must be paid per year in month 1 per Longbowman in a Unit. This is sent to 1263 via Transfer. If funds are not available, the Longbowman status will lapse for those who are short. Only 2/3rds of Elite Troops that are not paid return to being Warriors. The other 1/3rd of unpaid Elite Troops are lost completely. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activities: Warriors are converted to Longbowman and once converted may do nothing else but be a Longbowman and perform military based activities (such as Defence, Scouting, Security, Pacification, etc). • Fielding in Combat: Only 1/3rd of a unit's Longbowman may be fielded in each Combat. This is separate from the 1/3rd limit of Warriors. • Weapon Required: Longbowman <u>must</u> be equipped with a Longbow (or upgraded Longbow) to gain any benefit of the research. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>New Population Type - Longbowman, each Longbowman is expensive but kills a lot of people.</i>

Name	Marksmen
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Marksmen: Up to 15% of the Units's warriors may be assigned as Marksmen. • Skill Bonus: Marksmen gain +6 to Archery skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applies to no more than 15% of the Units's warriors split out among the Tribe's units for combats each turn. • Marksmen count towards the 1/3rd Warrior Limit in combat. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat Entry Spreadsheet — Combat Module 1.0: Players are responsible for

	<p>providing the prorated Archery skill value in the CES when turning in combat orders.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat Entry Spreadsheet – Combat Module 2.0: Players are responsible for assigning a combat group with Troop Type: Marksmen and CombatAssignment:Ranged in the CES when turning in combat Orders. NOTE: CM 2.0 is not yet released, this is a place holder note only.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - 15% of Tribe Warriors get Bonus to Archery skill</i>

Name	Toxophilite
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Longbowman (Archery research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Army Factor: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Ranged troops (any troop type assigned to Ranged) from Units from a Tribe that has Toxophilite research completed gains an Army Factor – Offensive Modifier of +0.1. ○ This stacks with Home Guard / Army as appropriate. Army Factor increases the Potential Casualties caused by those troops. +0.1 is equivalent to 5% more damage caused. • Army Factor – Defense: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Ranged troops (any troop type assigned to Ranged) from Units from a Tribe that has Toxophilite research completed gains an Army Factor - Defense modifier of -0.05. ○ Army Factor - Defense is a modifier that is used to decrease Potential Casualties received. Squire basically reduces incoming Potential Casualties to the Tribe's Ranged troops by 5%. <p>Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Bonus: +0.10 Army Factor and -0.05 Army Factor Defense for all Troop Types assigned to Ranged combat assignment.</i>

Name	Yoeman Archers
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>5% of a Tribe's Actives can be used in combat as Archers.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yoeman Archers: Up to 15% of the Units's Actives may be assigned as Yoeman Archers. Yoeman Archers function as normal archers in all ways. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yoeman Archers do not count towards the 1/3rd Warrior Limit in combat. They are in addition to the Warriors assigned. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat Entry Spreadsheet – Combat Module 1.0: Players are responsible for entering additional Warriors equal to the number of Actives utilized as as Yoeman Archers in the CES. • Combat Entry Spreadsheet – Combat Module 2.0: Players are responsible for assigning a combat group with Troop Type: Actives and Combat Assignment: Ranged in the CES when turning in combat Orders. NOTE: CM 2.0 is not yet released, this is a place holder note only.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Some Actives in Tribe may be used as Archers</i>

Armour

Name	Armour 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Armour +1 (example from Arm 10 to Arm 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Armour specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Armour, Specialists</i>

Name	Bascinet
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Bascinet: 2 People, 4 Iron, 25 Coal
Leads To:	Heavy Fluted Plate (Armour research) Heavy Full Plate (Armour research)
Description	<p>Heavy Helm.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Bascinet. • ArmourValue: Provides enhanced Armour Value over Helms. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Iron Bascinet <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 7 ▪ vsBronze: 14 ▪ vsIron: 12 ▪ vsPellet: 12 ▪ vsQuarrel: 7 ▪ vsShaft: 7 ▪ vsSteel: 10 ▪ vsStone: 16 ○ Steel Bascinet <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 8

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsBronze: 18 ▪ vsIron: 16 ▪ vsPellet: 13 ▪ vsQuarrel: 8 ▪ vsShaft: 9 ▪ vsSteel: 14 ▪ vsStone: 20 <p>○</p> <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not compatible with Full Plate • Not compatible with Fluted Plate <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Weight: 4lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Bascinet - Better than Helmet</i>

Name	Buckler
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Buckler: 2 People, 4 Iron, 20 Coal, 1 Leather 1 Steel Buckler: 2 People, 4 Steel, 20 Coal, 1 Leather
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Small Shield for Ranged troops</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Buckler. ◆ Ranged: Allows Ranged troops to use a Buckler as a shield and still operate normally. ◆ ArmourValue: Provides reduced Armour Value over Shields. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Iron Buckler <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 8 ▪ vsBronze: 3 ▪ vsIron: 2 ▪ vsPellet: 13 ▪ vsQuarrel: 8 ▪ vsShaft: 5 ▪ vsSteel: 1 ▪ vsStone: 4 ○ Steel Buckler

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 9 ▪ vsBronze: 4 ▪ vsIron: 3 ▪ vsPellet: 15 ▪ vsQuarrel: 9 ▪ vsShaft: 6 ▪ vsSteel: 2 ▪ vsStone: 5 <p>○</p> <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not compatible with Full Plate • Not compatible with Fluted Plate <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 4lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Buckler – Ranged troop shield</i>

Name	Chain Barding
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	3 People, 18 Iron, 30 Coal
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Medium metal horse armour</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Chain Barding. • Horse Death Mitigation: Horse deaths in combat are reduced by 50%. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A single horse may only wear one type of Barding. • A unit with horses may include multiple types of Barding. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 35lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Chain Barding - Saves your horses</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Chain Dog Barding
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	2 People, 12 Iron, 60 Coal
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Medium metal War Dog armour</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Chain Dog Barding. • Guard / War Dogs wearing Chain Dog Barding count as wearing “Chain” armour in combat. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Only Guard/War Dogs in a unit with Schutzhund I or better research or may wear Chain Dog Barding. • A single dog may only wear one type of Barding. • A unit with dogs may include multiple types of Dog Barding. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 5lbs • Combat 1.0 Module (Current): No effect at this time. • Combat 2.0 Module (To be implemented): Effects as above.
Summary	<i>New Item - Chain Barding - Saves your horses</i>

Name	Full Plate
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Full Plate: People 6, Arm 9, Iron 30, Coal 80
Leads To:	<u>Heavy Full Plate (Armour research)</u>
Description	<p>Full Plate, enhanced full body protection for Cavalry</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Full Plate • Suppressors: Suppressors may wear Full Plate. • ArmourValue: Provides enhanced Armour Value over standard armour. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Iron Full Plate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 45

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsBronze: 65 ▪ vsIron: 55 ▪ vsPellet: 60 ▪ vsQuarrel: 45 ▪ vsShaft: 40 ▪ vsSteel: 45 ▪ vsStone: 75 ○ Steel Full Plate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow:50 ▪ vsBronze: 75 ▪ vsIron: 65 ▪ vsPellet: 65 ▪ vsQuarrel: 50 ▪ vsShaft: 45 ▪ vsSteel: 55 ▪ vsStone: 85 <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mounted: Full Plate may only be worn by horse mounted Cavalry • Only compatible with Shields, no other Armour Type. Full Plate, replaces body armour (Head, torso, over torso, legs) but may use any form of shield. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 40lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Full Plate, full body coverage, increased protection in combat for Cavalry</i>

Name	Fluted Plate
DL	9
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Fluted Plate: People 6, Arm 9, Iron 30, Coal 80
Leads To:	<u>Heavy Fluted Plate (Armour research)</u>
Description	<p>Fluted Plate, enhanced full body protection for Infantry</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Fluted Plate • ArmourValue: Provides enhanced Armour Value over standard armour. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Iron Fluted Plate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 45 ▪ vsBronze: 65 ▪ vsIron: 55

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsPellet: 60 ▪ vsQuarrel: 45 ▪ vsShaft: 40 ▪ vsSteel: 45 ▪ vsStone: 75 ○ Steel Fluted Plate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow:50 ▪ vsBronze: 75 ▪ vsIron: 65 ▪ vsPellet: 65 ▪ vsQuarrel: 50 ▪ vsShaft: 45 ▪ vsSteel: 55 ▪ vsStone: 85 <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infantry: Fluted Plate may only be worn by Infantry. Fluted plate may not be work by Cavalry, Ranged or Siege/Heavy Weapons troops. • Only compatible with Shields, no other Armour Type. Full Plate, replaces body armour (Head, torso, over torso, legs) but may use any form of shield. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 40lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Fluted Plate, full body coverage, increased protection in combat for Infantry</i>

Name	Greaves
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Greaves: People 2, Iron 4, Coal 25
Leads To:	Heavy Fluted Plate (Armour research) Heavy Full Plate (Armour research)
Description	<p>Metal Leg Armour</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Greaves. • ArmourValue: Provides enhanced Armour Value over Trews. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Iron Greaves <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 7 ▪ vsBronze: 14 ▪ vsIron: 12

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsPellet: 12 ▪ vsQuarrel: 7 ▪ vsShaft: 7 ▪ vsSteel: 10 ▪ vsStone: 16 ○ Steel Greaves <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 8 ▪ vsBronze: 18 ▪ vsIron: 16 ▪ vsPellet: 13 ▪ vsQuarrel: 8 ▪ vsShaft: 9 ▪ vsSteel: 14 ▪ vsStone: 20 ○ <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not compatible with Full Plate • Not compatible with Fluted Plate <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 10lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Greaves, leg coverage, increased protection over Trews</i>

Name	Heavy Full Plate
DL	8
Pre-Req	Bascinet (Armour research) Greaves (Armour research) Full Plate (Armour research)
Recipe	1 Heavy Full Plate: People 50, Arm 10, Mtl 6, Full Plate 1, Greaves 1, Bascinet 1, Iron 20, Coal 100, Gold 5 1 Heavy Steel Full Plate: People 50, Arm 10, Mtl 6, Steel Full Plate 1, Steel Greaves 1, Steel Bascinet 1, Steel 20, Coal 100, Gold 10
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Heavy Full Plate, enhanced full body protection for Cavalry Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Heavy Full Plate • Suppressors: Suppressors may NOT wear Heavy Full Plate. • ArmourValue: Provides enhanced Armour Value over Full Plate

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Iron Heavy Full Plate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 49 ▪ vsBronze: 72 ▪ vsIron: 61 ▪ vsPellet: 63 ▪ vsQuarrel: 49 ▪ vsShaft: 43 ▪ vsSteel: 51 ▪ vsStone: 82 ○ Steel Heavy Full Plate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 55 ▪ vsBronze: 83 ▪ vsIron: 73 ▪ vsPellet: 68 ▪ vsQuarrel: 55 ▪ vsShaft: 48 ▪ vsSteel: 62 ▪ vsStone: 94 <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mounted: Heavy Full Plate may only be worn by horse mounted Cavalry • Only compatible with Shields, no other Armour Type. Heavy Full Plate, replaces body armour (Head, torso, over torso, legs) but may use any form of shield. • Maximum AV: Armour has a maximum combined AV of 96%. Even a knight in heavy full plate with a massive shield is vulnerable. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 45lbs
Summary	<i>New Item – Heavy Full Plate, full body coverage, Increased cavalry protection.</i>

Name	Heavy Fluted Plate
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>Bascinet (Armour research)</u> <u>Greaves (Armour research)</u> <u>Fluted Plate (Armour research)</u>
Recipe	1 Heavy Fluted Plate: People 50, Arm 10, Mtl 6, Fluted Plate 1, Greaves 1, Bascinet 1, Iron 20, Coal 100, Gold 5 1 Heavy Steel Fluted Plate: People 50, Arm 10, Mtl 6, Steel Fluted Plate 1, Steel Greaves 1, Steel Bascinet 1, Steel 20, Coal 100, Gold 10
Leads To:	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>Heavy Fluted Plate, enhanced full body protection for Infantry</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Heavy Fluted Plate • ArmourValue: Provides enhanced Armour Value over Fluted Plate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Iron Heavy Fluted Plate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 49 ▪ vsBronze: 72 ▪ vsIron: 61 ▪ vsPellet: 63 ▪ vsQuarrel: 49 ▪ vsShaft: 43 ▪ vsSteel: 51 ▪ vsStone: 82 ○ Steel Heavy Fluted Plate <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ vsArrow: 55 ▪ vsBronze: 83 ▪ vsIron: 73 ▪ vsPellet: 68 ▪ vsQuarrel: 55 ▪ vsShaft: 48 ▪ vsSteel: 62 ▪ vsStone: 94 <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infantry: Heavy Fluted Plate may only be worn by Infantry. Fluted plate may not be work by Cavalry, Ranged or Siege/Heavy Weapons troops. • Only compatible with Shields, no other Armour Type. Heavy Full Plate, replaces body armour (Head, torso, over torso, legs) but may use any form of shield. • Maximum AV: Armour has a maximum combined AV of 96%. Even a knight in heavy full plate with a massive shield is vulnerable. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 45lbs
Summary	<i>New Item – Heavy Fluted Plate, full body coverage, Increased Infantry protection.</i>

Name	Plate Barding
DL	7
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Plate Barding: People 4, Arm 8 Iron 20, Coal 40

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Heavy metal horse armour</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Chain Barding. • Horse Death Mitigation: Horse deaths in combat are reduced by 75%. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A single horse may only wear one type of Barding. • A unit with horses may include multiple types of Barding. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 35lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Plate Barding, Save your horses, better than Chain</i>

Astronomy

Name	Astral Navigation 1 , Astral Navigation 2 , Astral Navigation 3
DL	Astral Navigation 1 – 2 Astral Navigation 2 – 3 Astral Navigation 3 – 4
Pre-Req	Astral Navigation 1 – N/A Astral Navigation 2 – Astral Navigation 1 (Astronomy/Navigation research) Astral Navigation 3 – Astral Navigation 2 (Astronomy/Navigation research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Astral Navigation 1 – Astral Navigation 2 (Astronomy/Navigation research) Astral Navigation 2 – Astral Navigation 3 (Astronomy/Navigation research) Astral Navigation 3 – N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Boost: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Astral Navigation 1: +2 to Navigation Skill ○ Astral Navigation 2: +4 more to Navigation Skill (total of +6) ○ Astral Navigation 3: +6 more to Navigation Skill (total of +12) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: This does not allow Specialists. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Astral Navigation 3 is the limit.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Navigation</i>

Name	Astrolabe
DL	4
Pre-Req	Design and Fashion 3 (Group C skill) Metalworking 6 (Group A skill)
Recipe	1 Astrolabe: Mtl 6, D&F 3, People 2, Gold 1, Brass 2, Iron 1, Coal 12
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Boost, Temporary (Navigation): A Fleet equipped with one or more Astrolabes gains +3 to Navigation Skill for purposes of all calculations. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Knowledge: A unit may only gain this bonus if it also has the Astrolabe

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>research topic completed. Just having the Astrolabe by itself gives no benefit.</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 0.5 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item: Bonus to Navigation skill</i>

Name	Astronomy 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Astronomy +1 (example from Astronomy 10 to Astronomy 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Astronomy specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Astronomy Specialists: There are no benefits to having Astronomy specialists at this time. • There is currently no benefit for Astronomy skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Astronomy, Specialists</i>

Name	Solstice
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Stone Circle (One Use): People 1000, Candle 500
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ceremonial Celebration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Celebration Time: Each Midwinter and Midsummer months, the Tribe may allocate people to a celebration of the triumph of prediction. The locals are fascinated by this wonderful event and are attracted to join the tribe.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Inactive Gain: For every 10 participants in the celebration, 1 Inactive joins the Tribe. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Stone Circle: A Stone Circle at the Tribe's location must exist to gain any benefit from this research topic. ● Warrior / Active Participation: The Tribe with the research, and not any other unit, must spend the output of at least 10 workers and no more than 10% of the Tribe's total Warrior/Active population to participate in the celebration. ● Celebration Provisions: 1 Provision per participating worker must be consumed during the celebration. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ TN Classic: Players will need to send the Provs to usage and notify the GM of the gain. ○ TN2020: This will be automatically coded as part of the Celebration activity. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● TN Classic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Stone Circle: Construction of the Stone Circle will require that goods be sent to usage and that the new buildings be automatically added by the GM. ○ Celebration: Workers must not be assigned to other tasks during this period and provs shall be sent to usage. ● TN2020: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Stone Circle: Construction of the Stone Circle is an Engineering activity. ○ Celebration: Activation of the celebration is its own activity.
Summary	<i>Celebration of the Solstice and Equinox to garner people to your Clan.</i>

Art

Name	Art 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Art +1 (example from Art 10 to Art 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Art specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Art, Specialists</i>

Name	<u>Great Work</u>
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>The creation of a Great Work allows the Tribe to sacrifice Cultural Skill levels in return for immigrants or General Morale.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Great Work Creation: Immediately upon completion of Great Work topic, and yearly on Month 1, the Tribe with this research may create a Great Work. This is done by sacrificing Cultural Skill point levels to gain the following benefits. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ General Morale: Every point of Cultural Skill level sacrificed gains the Tribe an increase of +0.01 to General Morale, up to a maximum of +0.04 General Morale. ○ Immigration: Every point of Cultural Skill level sacrificed gains the Tribe Hirelings and / or Mercenaries. There is no limit to the number of points that may be applied to gaining Immigrants. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Hirelings: Every sacrificed cultural skill level point applied to Immigration for Hirelings gains the Tribe (not a unit) 30

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Hirelings.

- **Mercenaries:** Every sacrificed cultural skill level point applied to Immigration for Mercenaries gains the Tribe (not a unit) 15 Mercenaries.

Requirements:

- **Cultural Skill Point Sacrifice:** When creating a Great Work, the Tribe may sacrifice any number of skill levels from its Cultural Skills (up to the maximum points based on population and other restrictions below).

Restrictions:

- **Great Works per Year:** The Tribe with this research may only create a Great Works once per year, on month 1.
- **Maximum Great Work Topics:** Only one Tribe within a Clan may possess the Great Work Research.
- **Cultural Skill Point Sacrifice:**
 - **Maximum Points:** The number of cultural skill points that this one Tribe may sacrifice for the completion of each Great Work is limited to 1 Skill Level for every 100 total population (WAI only).
 - **Specific Skill:** The Cultural Skill which was used to research Great Work may not be sacrificed such that its final Skill Level is reduced to less than 10.

Notes:

- **Example:** For example, tribe 0775 knows the Great Work research and has Cook=10, Dance=6 and Art=4. Tribe 0775 performs a Great Work on turn 6-810 and sacrifices 2 skill points from its Dance and Art skills, reducing its cultural skills to Cook=10, Dance=4 and Art=2. Tribe 0775 could thus gain 60 Hirelings, 30 Mercenaries and .04 in **General** morale and is prohibited from performing another Great Work until sometime in Year 811. The tribe performing the Great Work is free to reduce its cultural skills in whatever manner it deems best, other than retaining 10 in the cultural skill used to develop Great Work. For example, a tribe with Dance=8 could present a Great Work that reduces Dance to ZERO and leave all other cultural skills unchanged.

Summary	<i>Sacrifice Cultural skill levels for Morale</i>
----------------	---

Name	Heraldry
DL	6
Pre-Req	Art8, Scroll
Recipe	Coat of Arms: 20 People, Mtl 5, Brass 20, Gold 2, Silver 200, Log 2 Standard: 20 People, Mtl 2, Shaft 1, Cotton 100, Silver 100
Leads To:	Knights (Horsemanship research) Longbowman (Archery research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<u>Mamluk (Slavery research)</u>
Description	<p>Heraldry allows a properly outfitted Tribe, or its units, to ransom back lost people if the unit is present at the battle.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Standard: Allows the Tribe (and its units) to craft a Standard via Metalwork activity. ○ Coat of Arms: Allows the Tribe (and its units) to craft a Coat of Arms via Metalwork activity. • Ransom: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Ransom is available to the entire Clan, not just the Tribe with the research. ○ When a Unit in this Clan loses a combat, the winning side must offer a ransom for the Slaves it has captured. ○ Up to 30% of the slaves taken, rounded up to the nearest slave, must be offered up in exchange for a ransom using the following exchange rates: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 5 Slaves for 1 Gold ▪ 1 Slave for 1 Jade ▪ 1 Slave for 200 Silver ○ Returned People: Slaves are returned to the Clan that lost them as 1/3rd of each class, starting with Warriors, then Actives, then Inactives if the total number is not divisible by 3. If 5 slaves are returned, then 2 to Warriors, 2 to Actives, 1 to Inactive. ○ Payment: Ransom may be paid by any unit in the Tribe, regardless of distance. It is removed from the Unit and provided to the enemy unit that is holding the Slaves. Ransom must be paid at the time of battle. • Combat: The Tribe, and its units, that holds Heraldry research, gains +2 to Leadership skill during Combat. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Unit of the Tribe with the research must be present at the site of the Battle to offer Ransom payment. The unit does not need to have participated in the battle itself. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Payment: Ransom must be paid at the time of battle. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Completion: Upon completion of the Research, the Scroll is destroyed/lost and is sent to Usage (1263) via transfer.. • Weights: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Coat of Arms: 5 lb ○ Standard: 5 lb

Summary	<i>New Item - Standard, forces ransoms from enemies to get your people back</i>

Name	Spring Arts Festival Art
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Amplitheatre: Eng8, Stones 10k, Cloth 1k, Silver 5k
Leads To:	Inter Spring Arts Festival (Art research)
Description	<p>Once a year during a Spring month, this Tribe hosts a Festival dedicated to Art, Dance or Music (depending on which skill the research was completed under) called a Spring Arts Festival Arts (SAFA), Spring Arts Festival Dance (SAFD) or Spring Arts Festival Music (SAFM) respectively. These artists spent the month plying their trade for the general well being of their Tribe.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • General Morale Boost: Once per year, the Tribe with this research gains +0.02 General Morale if it has adequate Artist Participation for the month (See Requirements below). • Trifecta Bonus: If a Tribe has Spring Arts Festival research completed for Art, Music and Dance, further research may become available. Contact the GM if you reach this point. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Artist Participation: At least 500 Warriors/Actives, any combination of the two, must spend a month participating in the Spring Arts Festival – Art while doing no other work in order to gain the bonus. • Spring Time: The Spring Arts Festival must be held during the Spring. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Books: Books may not be written for this topic. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Amphitheatre: Any Tribe, even those from another Clan, may build an Amphitheatre regardless of research. • At Adm10 you can research Inter Spring Arts Festival, DL8 so that Tribes from other Clans (only) may participate. This will require an Amphitheatre. 10,000 Stones , 1000 Cloth, 5000 Silver, Eng8. Tribes from other Clans will require an audience of at least 1000 W/A and will not be permitted to Hunt in the hex.
Summary	<i>Yearly activity to boost morale</i>

Name	Inter Spring Arts Festival Art
------	--

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	8
Pre-Req	Spring Arts Festival Art (Art research) Administration 10 (Group B skill)
Recipe	1 Amphitheatre: People 2k, Eng 8, Stone 10k, Cloth 1k, Silver 5k
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>An upgrade to the Spring Arts Festival Art so that its available to more people.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Visitors: Tribes from other Clans may participate in your Spring Arts Festival Art. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On Location: To participate, the Tribes from other Clans must have a unit with WA (doesn't count Inactives) population in the hex with your Tribe and the Amphitheatre. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No Hunting: Units from other Clans participating in your Inter Spring Arts Festival Art may not hunt during the Fair turn. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •
Summary	<i>New Building – Amphitheatre, expands Festival to other Clans.</i>

Name	Bronze Statue
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	20 People, Mtl 8, Art 6, Bronze 1k, Coal 200, Silver 200
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>A new Trade good.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: The units, and Tribe, of this Tribe may craft Bronze Statues as an Art or Metalwork activity. • Fair: Bronze Statues sell at Fair and possibly Trade Towns. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Metalwork: Metalwork skill level in this Tribe must be 6 or higher. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 1000 lb
Summary	<i>New Item - Bronze Statue, sell it at fair and select Trade Towns</i>

Name	Marble Statue
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	12 People, Stn 6, Art 6, Marble 200
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>A new Trade good and more.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: The units, and Tribe, of this Tribe may craft Marble Statues as an Art or Stonework activity. • Fair: Marble Statues sell at Fair and possibly Trade Towns. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stonework: Stonework skill level in this Tribe must be 6 or higher. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Marble: Upon completing this research, contact the GM. A Marble mine hex will be placed near your Home Village / Home City / village of choice. • Improvements: Marble Statues will serve as improvements to Palaces, etc. <p>Weight: 500 lb</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Marble Statue, useful for filling out Palaces, get new Mine</i>

Baking

Name	Baking 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Skill Level Bonus:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ Baking +1 (example from Baking 10 to Baking 11)• Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Baking specialists. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Baking, Specialists</i>

Name	Cupcakes
DL	2
Pre-Req	Bakery (Standard Building)
Recipe	60 Cupcakes: People 1, Baking 10, Flour 24, Sugar 2
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>A new way to make friends with the controlled population of your new State.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: The units, and Tribe, of this Tribe may craft Cupcakes as a Baking activity. • Pacification: Pacifiers equipped with Cupcakes have a greater pacification effect than normal. A Pacifier that is equipped with 12 Cupcakes that are sent to usage counts as an additional base Pacifier. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Pacifier: With 12 Cupcakes, counts as 2 Pacifiers ○ Sheriff: With 12 Cupcakes, counts as 4 Pacifiers ○ Marshall: With 12 Cupcakes, counts as 10 Pacifiers. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consumption: Every Pacifier (or better) that uses the Cupcakes to gain their effect must send those Cupcakes to usage (1263) through the transfer spreadsheet/tab. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 0 lbs (Yes, 0)
Summary	<i>New Item - Cupcakes, increases effectiveness of Pacifiers</i>

Name	Fine Bread
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>A new way of making bread fit for the upper class.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Improved Bread Production: Increases Bread production by 50% with the corresponding increase in the consumption of flour / grain. <p>Requirements:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consumption: Flour / Grain consumption increases proportionately with the Bread Production increase. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coded: You should still monitor your figures when using Fine Bread as well as Yeast. • Activity: Fine Bread is a distinction in the AutoOrder spreadsheet.
Summary	<i>Increases Bread Production per Person</i>

Name	Waybread
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	6 Waybread: People 1, Grain 20 15 Waybread: People 1, Flour 40
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>The main advantage of Waybread over normal bread is that Waybread is more compact and thus can be transported easier. A unit of waybread, equivalent to 1 month of provs, weighs only 5 lbs vs the 10 lbs of normal provisions.</p> <p>Waybread is only eaten after milk, fish, bread and normal provisions are exhausted, though it is eaten before cheese.</p> <p>Weight: 5 lbs</p> <p>Is Coded.</p> <p>Waybread refers to a more nutrient dense bread that is much more complicated to bake, even if it doesn't take longer. Only master bakers obtain the knowledge to bake Waybread.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Waybread may be created through the Baking / Waybread activity and may be baked from either Grain or Flour. • Food Value: 1 Waybread is equivalent to 1 Prov. • Condensed Nutrients: The main advantage of Waybread is in its ability to transport more easily due to its reduced weight. Normal Provisions weight 10lbs while a provision worth of waybread only weighs 5lbs. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coded: Waybread is eaten automatically when needed. Waybread is eaten in

	<p>the following order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Milk ○ Fish ○ Bread ○ Provs ○ Waybread ○ Cheese <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Activity: Waybread is available in the Baking activity in the AutoOrder spreadsheet. ◆ Weight: 5 lbs.
Summary	<i>New Item - Waybread, Food that is lighter than Provs</i>

Name	Yeast
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>A new way of making bread fit for the culinary minded.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Improved Bread Production: Increases Bread production by 50% when using flour with the corresponding increase in the consumption of flour. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Consumption: Flour consumption increases proportionately with the Bread Production increase. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Coded: You should still monitor your figures when using Fine Bread as well as Yeast. ◆ Specialists: Yeasts boost to output is calculated after Specialists. ◆ Activity: Yeast is a distinction in the AutoOrder spreadsheet.
Summary	<i>Increases Bread Production per Person</i>

Banking

Name	Banking 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Banking +1 (example from Bank 10 to Bank 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Banking specialists. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ May be used for minting <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Banking, Specialists</i>

Name	Branded Coin
DL	2
Pre-Req	<u>Minting</u> (Banking research) Commonwealth Territory (Standard rules, Established)
Recipe	As per Standard Coins
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>The Clan issues a coin that has Clan branding (imprint of a cultural icon) on it. With the agreement of Local Elders, the Clan announces that all Locals in the Commonwealth must now pay tribute each year using this coin. As a consequence, all Locals want to work for the Clan to gain coin so they can pay their tribute. The tribute is of no concern to the administration of the topic; it is for background purposes only.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Local Hiring: All Local hiring under Local Support rules is increased by 25%. • Auxilliary Recruitment: All Auxilliary recruitment under Local Support rules is increased by 25%. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Required Payment: Payment for Locals within the Commonwealth is changed from Silver to Coin. The base rate becomes 2 coin per month per

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Local.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Guards: Payment for Guards within the Commonwealth is changed from Silver to Coin. The base rate becomes 2 coin per month per Guard. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coinage Elsewhere: Branded Coin has no special value beyond the Commonwealth and is used like any other coin. Future research may change this. • Reversion: The Clan reserves the right to revert back to a Silver standard at any time. If it does, all effects are lost and General Morale in every unit is reduced by 0.01. Branded Coin may again be used again once year after reversion.
Summary	<i>New Item: Branded Coin, Bonus to Local Support rules</i>

Name	Local Money Changer
DL	2
Pre-Req	NPC Exchange (Banking research) NPC Exchange building
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Each Fair, an enterprising Local Group visits your NPC Exchange. They offer you a private exchange deal on any commodity as well as Coin, Silver and Gold that you may have.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Exchange: A unit with this research and located at an NPC Exchange, may convert one type of commodity into another type of commodity with a slight loss of efficiency (See NPC Payout). • The Gain: The Unit selects a single Commodity per Exchange to gain. • The Cost: The Unit selects a single Commodity per Exchange to pay. • The Conversion: The Unit exchanges the cost commodity and gains an appropriate amount of Gain commodity based upon the conversion rate set by the Commodity sheet in relation to Hireling purchasing. A spreadsheet is available to make this easier. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maximum Exchanges per Fair: You may make a number of Exchanges equal to your Clan's Fair multiplier.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maximum Amount per Exchange: The maximum quantity of any single commodity gained is equal to the amount that the clan can pay for Hirelings at the fair in that commodity. • NPC Payout: The Local Group takes 10% of the exchange. This means the unit only receives 90% of the commodity for which the exchange is being made. • Unique: You may only make one exchange per Commodity in a single fair (you could not therefore gain Gold three times). <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fair Slot: These trades do not use up a Fair slot. • Spreadsheet: There is a Local Money Changer spreadsheet available on the TribeNet website to make the conversion easier. • Example: Clan 999 has a Fair Multiplier of 3 due to having a Trading Post and a Home City. They have gained Local Money Changer research topic and it is Fair month. Clan 999 may make 3 transactions (due to the Fair multiplier of 3) during this fair in addition to their normal purchases/sales. It is currently year 815. For the first exchange, Clan 999 has a lot of Gold and desires Olives. Based on the year, the maximum number of Hirelings that may be gained in Fair with a multiplier of 3 is 510 hirelings. Every hireling costs 1 Olive (based upon a batch of 10 hirelings costing 10 Olives) so the maximum amount of Olives that may be exchanged for is 510. Clan 999 wants to spend Gold. It would require 51 Gold (1 Gold for 10 Hirelings) to gain 510 Hirelings thus the conversion ratio between Gold and Olives is 1 Gold : 10 Olives. Clan 999 sends 51 Gold to usage and gains Olives 510.
Summary	<i>Convert Commodities to other Commodities</i>

Name	Minting / Coin
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	15 Nickel: 1 Person, Ref1, Nickel Ore 20, Coal 6, 15 Coins: 1 Person, Copper 25, Nickel 5, Coal 5
Leads To:	NPC Exchange (Banking research)
Description	<p>Your clan begins to get more civilized and has now gained the ability to mint coins for payment instead of handing over bags of silver.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Your Tribe and its units gain the ability to craft Coins using a Minting activity. • Crafting: Nickel may always be crafted without this research topic.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coins: Coins are utilized by many Special Hexes and may have other uses with further or past research. <p>Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 0
Summary	<i>New Item - Coins, can be used at some special hexes and for some topics</i>

Name	NPC Exchange
DL	DL6
Pre-Req	Banking 10 (Skill) Home City in clan Minting/Coin (Banking research) Administrative buildings
Recipe	1 NPC Exchange: People 820, Eng5, 4000 Stones, 200 Iron (Normal Install rates)
Description	<p>The NPC Exchange represents an economic link between a Home City and an NPC International City such as Beijung, Tokyo, Babylonia, etc.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Per Fair: During Fair months, but independent from the Fair, Trade Guilds and any other interaction or transaction between the NPC International City and the Clan, the NPC Exchange allows for automated trade between the NPC International City and the Home City. • NPC Exchange Conversion: When activated, the NPC Exchange allows the Home City to convert Coin into other Commodities using the appropriate exchange rate (See Below). Only Commodities associated with the NPC International City that the NPC Exchange building has been built in may be the target of this conversion (See Restrictions below). There is a maximum amount of each commodity that may be gained via an NPC Exchange building each Fair (See Restrictions below). • The Currency: The only currency that can be used over the link is Coin. For purposes of the NPC Exchange, 1 Coin is considered 1 Olive. • Exchange Rate: NPC Exchange uses the Desired Commodity table in the Mandate for converting between Coin and other Desired Commodities. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NPC Exchange (Building): An NPC Exchange building must be built at location in the NPC International City. Without an NPC Exchange at the NPC International City, no NPC Exchanges may be made. • Mint (Building): A Mint must be built at the Home City. Without a Mint at the Home City, no NPC Exchanges may be made. The Mint in this case acts

as a representation of the Clan's commitment to administering a stable financial infrastructure and to gain the confidence of traders the world over. This is in addition to, but separate from, its role in making coins.

- Only 1 Mint is required for NPC Exchange research topic regardless of the number of NPC Exchanges built in NPC International Cities.

Restrictions:

- **Exchangeable Commodities:** Only Commodities offered as a trade mission at NPC International Cities with NPC Exchange Buildings belonging to the Clan may be the target of the conversion.
- **NPC Exchange Maximum Amount:** An NPC Exchange building in an NPC International City to gain a maximum amount of the appropriate commodities equal to the amount of commodities that NPC International City offers.
 - **Example:** Beijung offers a trade mission from Beijung to Whulan in the amount of Tea 18,750 and Opium 375. Thus, the NPC Exchange built at Beijung allows up to Tea 18,750 and Opium 375 to be gained with Coin.
- **NPC Exchange (Building) Limits:** A Clan needs only have a single NPC Exchange building in an NPC International City. Any extra NPC Exchange Buildings the Clan builds in the same NPC International City provides no further bonus or abilities.

Notes:

- **Example:** Clan 001 Home City has a Mint. It builds an NPC Exchange building in Beijung. Beijung offers Trade Mission of Tea 18,750 and Opium 375. Clan 001 may use Coin to purchase up to 18,750 tea and 375 opium at the rate of 10 Coin per 1 Opium (thus a max of 3,750 coin for 375 Opium) and 10 Coin per 50 Tea (thus a max of 3,750 coin for 18,750 tea).
- **Multiple NPC Exchanges:** Only a single research topic (NPC Exchange) is required and any number of NPC Exchanges may be built in different NPC International Cities.
- **NPC International Cities:** An NPC International City may host any number of NPC Exchanges from different Clans.

Summary	<i>Convert Coins to Commodities</i>
----------------	--

Brickmaking

Name	Advanced Brickmaking
DL	4
Pre-Req	Improved Brickmaking (Brickmaking research)
Recipe	Stone 60: 1 Person, Clay 1200, Fodder 600, Coal 240, Silver 60
Leads To:	Greater Brickmaking (Brickmaking research)
Description	<p>A tribe with this research knowledge has a better understanding of firing bricks.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brickmaking Production Bonus: A Tribe and its elements with this research topic gains a 100% bonus towards the production of Brick. Each person assigned produces 240 Bricks using 20 Clay, 10 Fodder, 4 Coal and 1 Silver per 4 Bricks for a total of 240 Bricks (60 stone) made using 1200 Clay, 600 Fodder, 240 Coal and 60 Silver <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Order Entry: Orders are shown as Brickmaking / Stone / Advanced
Summary	<i>Increase Stone production per person via Brickmaking</i>

Name	Brickmaking 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Lighted Dome of Iron and Stone (Brickmaking research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Brickmaking +1 (example from Brk 10 to Brk 11) • Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Brickmaking based specialists <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Brickmaking, allows specialists</i>
Name	Brickmolds
DL	5
Pre-Req	Improved Brickmaking (Brickmaking research)
Recipe	1 Brickmold: People 1, Wd 4, Logs 1, Iron 1, Coal 5
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting of a Brickmold via Woodwork activity. • Brickmaking Bonus: A worker with a Brickmold counts as 2 Workers (+1 AM) when performing a Brickmaking activity. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Limit per Worker: Only 1 Brickmold can be used per worker. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Other Clans/Tribes: Other Clans / Tribes may use a Brickmold without research. • Weight: 60 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Brickmolds, +1 AM per person for Brickmaking</i>

Name	Greater Brickmaking
DL	4
Pre-Req	Advanced Brickmaking (Brickmaking research) Improved Brickmaking (Brickmaking research)
Recipe	Stone 75: 1 Person, Clay 20, Fodder 10, Coal 4, Silver 75 Bricks 300: 1 Person, Clay 20, Fodder 10, Coal 4, Silver 75
Leads To:	Lighted Dome of Iron and Stone (Brickmaking research)
Description	<p>A tribe with this research knowledge has a greater understanding of firing bricks.</p> <p>Bonus:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brickmaking Production Bonus: A Tribe and its elements with this research topic gains a 150% bonus towards the production of Brick. Each person assigned produces 300 Bricks using 20 Clay, 10 Fodder, 4 Coal and 1 Silver per 4 Bricks for a total of 300 Bricks (60 stone) made using 1200 Clay, 600 Fodder, 240 Coal and 60 Silver <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: Order Entry: Orders are shown as Brickmaking / Stone / Greater</p>
Summary	<i>Increase Stone production per person via Brickmaking, Greater</i>

Name	Improved Brickmaking
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Stone 45: 1 Person, Clay 20, Fodder 10, Coal 4
Description	<p>A tribe with this research knowledge has an improved understanding of firing bricks.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Brickmaking Production Bonus: A Tribe and its elements with this research topic gains a 50% bonus towards the production of Brick. Each person assigned produces 180 Bricks using 20 Clay, 10 Fodder and 4 Coal per 4 Bricks for a total of 240 Bricks (60 stone) made using 1200 Clay, 600 Fodder and 240 Coal. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: Order Entry: Orders are shown as Brickmaking / Stone / Improved</p>
Summary	<i>Increase Stone production per person via Brickmaking, minor</i>

Name	The Lighted Dome of Iron and Stone
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>Brickmaking 11 (Brickmaking research)</u> <u>Greater Brickmaking (Brickmaking research)</u> Engineering 10 (Group C skill) Metalwork 10 (Group A skill)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	1 Lighted Dome of Iron and Stone (LDIS 1): People 150k, Eng 10, Mtl 10, Brick 10, Art 10, Stone 6, Bricks 1.6M, Stone 500k, Iron 100k, Coal 500k, Logs 20k, Gold 1k, Silver 100k, Relic 1, Scroll 4
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>A Tribe with this research gains the ability to create a wondrous Engineering marvel called the Lighted Dome of Iron and Stone. The LDIS is a massive tower and building construct that raises hundreds of feet in the air. It is made of a structure of stone and iron with brick and iron facades and is gilded in silver and gold. At the top is a light that burns throughout the day and night, its light viewable for miles though not of an intensity to be used as a good lighthouse. The complex that surrounds the LDIS acts as a refuge for those who need solitude throughout the year, broken only by the annual celebration. These intellectuals who are harbored inside the LDIS are trained by the Tribe in the history and construction of the LDIS and slowly learn about its secrets.</p> <p>Upon Completion:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Clan Morale Bonus: Once constructed, the LDIS provides each Tribe of the owning Clan that has a unit in the city a one time boost of +0.05 General Morale (maximum 1.50 morale). * Other Clans: Tribes from other Clans that have a Unit in the hex also benefit from the wondrous construction. At the cost of 100 Gold, the Tribe may send 100 actives to live and work in the complex (100 Actives are permanently removed). In return, they gain +1 Skill Level to one of the following skills (Maximum Level 8): Engineering, Brickmaking, Stonework, Metalwork, Art. * Local Support: The LDIS counts as 2 Hamlets that do not need Longhouse Support provided that the Clan already has control of 4 Hamlets. <p>Annual Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Clan Morale Bonus: Additionally, each year that the LDIS is operating, on the anniversary of the founding of the City where the LDIS is built, each Tribe from the owning Clan that has a unit present in the City gains an additional 0.02 General Morale (maximum 2.00 morale). * Clan Knowledge Bonus: Each year that the LDIS is operating, on the anniversary of the founding of the City where the LDIS is built, each Tribe from the owning Clan that has a unit present in the City gains a +1 to one Skill (Maximum skill level 8) or a +1 to one Research topic Difficulty level (that is already at DL 0 or higher). To gain this bonus, each Unit must send 100 Actives to live and work at the LDIS complex permanently. * Other Clans: Tribes from other Clans that have a Unit in the hex also benefit from the wondrous construction. At the cost of 100 Gold, the Tribe may send 100 actives to live and work in the complex. In return, they gain a +1 to one Skill (Maximum skill level 8) or a +1 to one Research

topic Difficulty level (that is already at DL 0 or higher). To gain this bonus, each Unit must send 100 Actives to live and work at the LDIS complex permanently.

Restrictions and Requirements:

* **Annual Upkeep:** 500 AM (on anniversary of founding of City), 30k Bricks, 10k silver, Logs 4k

* **Location:** Must be built in a City of Government Level 2 or higher.

* **Loss of Structure:** If the structure is no longer held by the Clan, each Tribe in the Clan loses 0.1 General Morale. If it regains control of the structure, it regains only 0.05 General Morale. If the structure is destroyed, it cannot be regained and a new structure must be built from scratch. A new LDIS may not be built while a conquered LDIS is still held by a conquering force.

* **Looting of Structure:** If a Unit captures the City that contains the LDIS, it may loot the structure and gain Silver 50k, Relic 1 and Slaves 500. Otherwise, holding the Structure for a year gains the conquering clan the Annual Clan Knowledge Bonus without the need to lose 100 Actives. This can be gained each year.

Books may not be written

LDIS may not be built for other Clans.

~~A Clan may only gain the benefit of one LDIS a year. If they gain a bonus from their own LDIS, they may not gain a bonus at another Clan's LDIS.~~

Notes:

- **Responsibilities:** It is the responsibility of the Clan Chief that builds this topic to gather the skill increases from visitors and to inform the GM of the required updates to minimize the interaction of the GM with multiple players.

Wonder: The Lighted Dome of Iron and Steel counts as a Major Wonder. See Wonder rules in the Global Rules section.

Summary	<i>Mega-Project, communal bonuses for visitors</i>
----------------	--

Bureaucracy

Name	Bureaucracy 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Bureaucracy +1 (example from Bur 10 to Bur 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Bureaucracy specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bureaucracy Specialists: There are no benefits to having Bureaucracy specialists at this time. • There is currently no benefit for Bureaucracy skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Bureaucracy, Specialists</i>

Name	Bureaucracy 4,5,6....
DL	4,5,6....
Pre-Req	Bureaucracy 4: Bureaucracy Skill Level 10 (Group C skill), Bureaucracy 3 (Administration research) Bureaucracy 5: Bureaucracy 4 (Bureaucracy research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Bureaucracy 4: Bureaucracy 5 (Bureaucracy research) Bureaucracy 5: Bureaucracy 6 (Bureaucracy research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Bureaucracy 4: +6 Level to Administration (ex. Adm 19 to Adm 25) ○ Bureaucracy 5: +6 Level to Administration (ex. Adm 25 to Adm 31) ○ Bureaucracy 6: +6 Level to Administration (ex. Adm 31 to Adm 37) ○ • Additional Skill Level Bonus: Every research topic of Bureaucracy 7 or higher adds an additional +6 Administration levels.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Administration</i>

Bush Lore

Name	Bush Lore 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Bush Lore +1 (example from Bush 10 to Bush 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Bush Lore specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bush Lore Specialists: There are no benefits to having Architecture specialists at this time. • There is currently no benefit for Bush Lore skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Bush Lore, Specialists</i>

Name	Bush Lore IV, V, VI
DL	4,5,6....
Pre-Req	Bush Lore 4: Bush Lore Skill Level 10 (Group C skill), Bush Lore 3 (Seeking research) Bush Lore 5: Bush Lore 4 (Bush Lore research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Bush Lore 4: Bush Lore 5 (Bush Lore research) Bush Lore 5: Bush Lore 6 (Bush Lore research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Bush Lore 4: +6 Level to Seeking (ex. Seek 19 to Seek 25) ○ Bush Lore 5: +6 Level to Seeking (ex. Seek 25 to Seek 31) ○ Bush Lore 6: +6 Level to Seeking (ex. Seek 31 to Seek 37) ○ • Additional Skill Level Bonus: Every research topic of Bush Lore 7 or higher adds an additional +6 Seeking levels.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Seeking</i>

Captaincy

Name	Admiralty
DL	7
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Naval College (Captaincy research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Skill - Admiralty: The Tribe gains access to a new skill, Admiralty (Group B). • Skill Enhancement – Captaincy: Instead of Captaincy replacing Leadership, Captaincy + Admiralty + 2 replaces Leadership for all Naval Combat formulas. • Alliance: Warriors, of a different Tribe / Clan, carried aboard a Fleet commanded by an Admiral, are under the Admiral's command. They thus use the Admiral's captaincy/admiralty ratings rather than their own if they are involved in naval combat. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Naval College may only service the Tribe with the research. Other Tribes will need their own research. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat Entry Sheet – Combat v1.0: When filling out the Combat Entry Spreadsheet, ensure that you mark Admiralty as a Research topic AND manually update your skills as appropriate. • Combat Entry Sheet – Combat v2.0: When filling out the Combat Entry Spreadsheet, ensure that you mark Admiralty as a Research topic. The code will automatically calculate your modified skills. Do not update them manually.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Applies Admiralty (New Skill) to Captaincy for Naval Battles</i>

Name	Captaincy 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Captaincy +1 (example from Cap 10 to Cap 11) Requirements: N/A Restrictions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no Captaincy specialists allowed. Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Captaincy</i>

Name	Naval Junior Officer
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Naval Second in Command (NSIC) (Captaincy research)</u>
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Captaincy Modifier: Adds +1 to the Captaincy Modifier for determining Potential Casualties (PC) in Naval Combat. • Captaincy Skill: Adds +2 to Captaincy Skill for all other uses of Captaincy in Naval combat (example Routing) Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Captaincy Modifier to Damage calculators and reduces Rout</i>

Name	Naval Second in Command (NSIC)
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Naval Junior Officer (Captaincy research)</u> <u>Admiralty (Captaincy research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Captaincy Modifier: Adds +1 to the Captaincy Modifier for determining Potential

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Casualties (PC) in Naval Combat.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Captaincy Skill: Adds +2 to Captaincy Skill for all other uses of Captaincy in Naval combat (example Routing) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Captaincy Modifier to Damage calculators and reduces Rout</i>

Name	Recruitment 1, Recruitment 2, Recruitment 3,
DL	1, 2, 3, etc....
Pre-Req	<p>Recruitment 1: N/A</p> <p>Recruitment 2: Recruitment 1 (Captaincy or Leadership research)</p> <p>Recruitment 3: Recruitment 2 (Captaincy or Leadership research)</p> <p>....</p>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Allows an additional 500 Mercenaries per research attained to your Mercenary limits.
Summary	<i>Merc Limits increased by 500.</i>

Name	Resilience I, Resilience II, Resilience III
DL	5,7,9
Pre-Req	<p>Resilience I: N/A</p> <p>Resilience II: Resilience I (Leadership or Captaincy research)</p> <p>Resilience III: Resilience II (Leadership or Captaincy research)</p>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Unit with the Resilience research completed is capable of holding out against the enemy under even the worst outcome of combat. These Units are exceptionally hard to rout, but it comes with consequences:</p> <p>Benefits: During the beginning of a battle, a Unit may declare that it is utilizing Resilience by including it on their Combat Entry Sheet. This can be done either by an attacking or defending unit. During all Combat this turn, the Unit gains the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Temporary Military Morale Increase of 0.02 for purposes of combat this turn. 2) When determining if a Unit routes, the random die roll is made once normally. If

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>it indicated a Rout, the dice are rerolled and checked against for each level of Resilience. If one of the die rolls comes up as a Does not Rout, the unit will not rout. The unit will only rout if all the results show a Rout.</p> <p>a. Example: A Unit has a 55% chance of not routing. It has Resilience I. A random number is generated between 1 and 100. The results are 89. Typically, the 89 would indicate a rout (It is greater than 55), however, the Unit declared Resilience I at the start of Combat. It rerolls the random number and gets a 47. Because the 47 is below the point of Routing, the unit will not Rout this combat.</p> <p>Restrictions and Penalties:</p> <p>1) A Tribe may only utilize Resilience in a Unit once in a calendar year (Month 1-12) regardless of the number of Tribe elements.</p> <p>2) If a unit would have Routed but a reroll from Resilience saves them, the Tribe loses 0.02 General Morale per level of Resilience research.</p> <p>3) War Fatigue: Additionally, if the Unit would have Routed but a reroll from Resilience saves them, the Tribe may not initiate combat and may only declare defense in combat orders for that calendar year.</p> <p>4) War Fatigue: Regardless of if Resilience was used, as long as Resilience was declared, the Tribe that the Unit belongs to must sacrifice 1 'Lot' of a desired Commodity on the next turn or suffer an additional 0.02 General Morale loss per level of Resilience.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - If you rout, you have a chance not to rout but its pricey</i>

Name	Rousing Speech
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	A combat force that has a unit with Rousing Speech has a -5% modifier to the chance of Routing.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - 5% less chance to run away due to a bad combat.</i>

Name	Trusted Maps
DL	3
Pre-Req	<u>Alliance MotC (Diplomacy research)</u> Or <u>Alliance MotC (Leadership research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	To Benefit from this research, a Clan must: 1) Have completed Alliance MotC Research.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>2) Must have a declared alliance in which at least one member has the Sea Borne Trade Routes research.</p> <p>3) Must have established Diplomatic Relations with the clan that completed Sea Borne Trade Routes research.</p> <p>Any fleet in the Tribe holding this research has their MV increased by 50% when using Sea Borne Trade Routes. If combined with other research, this bonus is additive, not cumulative.</p> <p>Note: A Fleet may only gain movement bonuses from three research topics simultaneously. Examples include, but are not limited to, Board of Trade, Fast Fleet, Trusted Maps, etc.</p>
Summary	<i>Increases fleet movement speed when using Sea Borne Trade Routes</i>

Name	Naval College
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>Admiralty (Captaincy research)</u> Gold (10 Gold / Year)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>A Naval Academy represents a deliberate and systematic study of naval warfare and the training of a tribe's naval leadership in how best to conduct naval warfare. The prerequisite of Admiralty ensures that the tribe has possesses permanent naval leaders that can then benefit from the training provided by a "Naval Academy".</p> <p>A tribe with this research knowledge has an improved understanding of firing bricks.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Enhancement: For purposes of Naval Combat only, the following skill enhancements are used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Captaincy: Captaincy + Admiralty ○ Mariner: Mariner + (Admiralty / 2) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Naval College may only service the Tribe with the research. Other Tribes will need their own research. <p>Notes:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat Entry Sheet – Combat v1.0: When filling out the Combat Entry Spreadsheet, ensure that you mark Naval College as a Research topic AND manually update your skills as appropriate. • Combat Entry Sheet – Combat v2.0: When filling out the Combat Entry Spreadsheet, ensure that you mark Naval College as a Research topic. The code will automatically calculate your modified skills. Do not update them manually. • This research is valueless unless <u>the Tribe</u> has already developed Admiralty.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Applies Admiralty to other skills in Naval Combat</i>

Combat

Name	Assault Troops
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Specialized in Attacking fortifications – effectively add +2 to Combat Skill, and +2 AA (Assault Attack Terrain Prof).
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Combat Skill and Terrain Proficiency (Limited)</i>

Name	Army
DL	5
Pre-Req	Home Guard (Combat research)
Recipe	1 Barracks, 100 Person, Eng 4, Logs 200
Leads To:	Conscription (Combat research)
Description	<p>Army Factor:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Units from Tribes with Army research topic completed gains an Army Factor increase of +0.20 (which coupled with Home Guard is an effective +0.40) • Army Factor is a modifier that is used to increase Potential Casualty generation. Army basically increases outgoing Potential Casualties by another 20% on top of Home Guard. • <p>Army Factor – Defense:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Units from Tribes with Army research topic completed gains an Army Factor Defense decrease of +0.10. • Army Factor Defense is a modifier that is used to decrease Potential Casualties received. Home Guard basically decreases incoming Potential Casualties by 10%.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	A Barracks (200 logs, Eng4 - Logs are installed at 2/person. Can only be built once Army research is completed) is required to house each 50 warriors in the Tribe with the research (and its Elements). If the Army in full is not supported by Barracks then the Army bonus does not apply in combat. See Army Factor (1.4) in Spreadsheet.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Army Factor to 1.4. (+40% Damage), Defense to 0.80 (-20% incoming Damage)</i>

Name	Close Order Infantry
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Close Order Infantry provides a bonus in attack and defense and against missiles.</p> <p>Adds +4 to Combat skill.</p> <p>Increases the effectiveness of Shields by 25% against Ranged attacks (8% goes to 10%, 18% goes to 22.5%)</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Combat Skill and effectiveness of Shields</i>

Name	Combat 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Combat 12 (Combat research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Combat +1 (example from Com 10 to Com 11) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no Combat specialists. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Combat</i>

Name	Combat 12
-------------	------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	5
Pre-Req	Combat 11 (Combat research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Combat +1 (example from Com 10 to Com 11) Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Combat</i>

Name	Conscription
DL	5
Pre-Req	Army (Combat research) Diplomacy 4 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Description	15% of Actives from unit(s) in combat with this Research may participate as Warriors. They may be assigned as additional Warriors. 10% of Actives from the Tribe(s) with the research may participate in combat as Warriors. Restrictions: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. These Actives participating as Warriors may only be used during defensive combats, eg. When your unit has been attacked. They may not be part of a Locating War Party.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Allows limited Actives to fight as Warriors.</i>

Name	Home Guard
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Army (Combat research) Training (Combat research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>Army Factor:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Units from Tribes with Home Guard research topic completed gains an Army Factor increase of +0.20. Army Factor is a modifier that is used to increase Potential Casualty generation. Home Guard basically increases outgoing Potential Casualties by 20%. <p>Army Factor – Defense:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Units from Tribes with Home Guard research topic completed gains an Army Factor Defense decrease of +0.10. Army Factor Defense is a modifier that is used to decrease Potential Casualties received. Home Guard basically decreases incoming Potential Casualties by 10%.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Army Factor to 1.20 (+20% Damage), Defense to 0.90 (-10% incoming damage).</i>

Name	Training
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Home Guard (Combat research)</u> Sergeant / Captain (*)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>2. 50% of the <u>Home Guard</u> (that is, 5% of the Tribe's warriors) may be sent in an Element for training in the Field for terrain proficiency (which flows on to the whole Tribe). They must be assigned to Defence only in the hex in which they gain the TP – though they may do other Activities on the way. They are able to fight if attacked but may not attack in the turn of training. This may be done twice (in total for the Clan) per Calendar Year. Training lasts for 3 months. Players should include, for example, “Training GH 1/3” in Orders.</p> <p>3. Six months of Training will increase the base level of Militia from 0 (in Combat and Leadership) to 1 (in Combat and Leadership). The presence of a Sergeant allows increases up to Lvl5, a Captain is required to Lvl10, and a Colonel to Lvl15.</p> <p>(see also Militia Training)</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Long term training for Terrain Proficiency increase</i>

Name	Veterans Class I
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Army (Combat research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>The Veterans Class I topic allows 15% of a Tribe's Unit's (with the research) Inactives to fight using ONLY missile weapons and/or heavy weapons. These Inactives will not fight in Melee combat but are still valid targets for casualties during Melee phases. To qualify as Veterans Class I, 15% of the Tribe's Inactives AND AN EQUAL NUMBER OF normal WARRIORS must train (as an activity and do nothing else) three months every year and each training month must fall in a different season (for example, cannot do all the training in the winter). Players are responsible for keeping records of this.</p> <p>Inactives include older warriors who are experienced, but too old to stand in the line of battle. However, they are still capable of wielding missile weapons or serving heavy weapons, especially if they keep “in training”. They may be deployed only in a defensive mode – eg when your unit has been attacked. They may not be part of a Locating War Party.</p> <p>Proposed by Steve Simmons</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Allows limited Inactives to fight as Archers</i>

Cooking

Name	Banquet
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Banquet (Once per Year): Cattle 20, Barrel of Grog 20 per 1000 participants
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Once per year, the participating Tribe receives a General Morale increase of 0.02. This uses 20 Cattle and 20 Barrels of Grog per 1,000 participants (the whole Tribe is deemed to participate but this is outside of normal activities and defense).</p> <p>The Host Tribe may invite one guest Tribe from either inside or outside the Clan. The guest is subject to the Morale increase. Cattle and drink must be shown as a Transfer to usage.</p>
Summary	<i>Yearly expenditure of animal and alcohol for Morale increase.</i>

Name	Cooking 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Cooking +1 (example from Cook 10 to Cook 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Cooking specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Cooking, Specialists</i>

Name	<u>Great Work</u>
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>See Art Research</u>
Recipe	<u>See Art Research</u>
Leads To:	<u>See Art Research</u>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	See Art Research
Summary	<i>Sacrifice Cultural Skill Levels for Morale increase</i>

Name	Stew
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	40 Stew (Provisions): 1 Cook, 5 Goats
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Cooking Activity</p> <p>1 Person (Cooking) produces 40 Stew (provisions) using 5 Goats.</p> <p>Requires Cookhouse (requirements as per Meeting House). 1 Cookhouse services 10 cooks.</p> <p>Cannot have more than one Cook per 100 population in the <u>Clan</u> when cooking Stew. The player is obliged to note figures.</p>
Summary	<i>More efficient generation of food. Also see Baking...</i>

Courier

Name	Barterer
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Negotiator (Courier research)
Description	<p>Courier Units from this Tribe gain an extra 5% payout when making a Trade Mission Delivery (Importer/Exporter, International City, etc).</p> <p><i>Example: If a Trade Mission has a payout of 20%, the Courier Unit would get 25% payout instead.</i></p>
Summary	<i>Increases reward for Import/Export and International City Trade Missions by 5%.</i>

Name	Courier 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Courier +1 (example from Cour 10 to Cour 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Courier specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Courier Specialists: There are no benefits to having Courier specialists at this time. • TN Classic: There is currently no benefit for Bush Lore skill to be greater than 10. • TN 2020: A Clan will be allowed to have additional couriers based upon the level of the Courier skill without artificial code limits.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Courier, Specialists</i>

Name	Negotiator
DL	4

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	Barter (Courier research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>The bonus to Courier unit payouts for Trade Mission deliveries is increased from +5% payout to +10% payout.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> If a Trade Mission has a payout of 20%, the Courier Unit would get 30% payout instead. Players need to make their own adjustments when transferring commodities from 3263.</p>
Summary	<i>Increases reward for Import/Export and International City Trade Missions by 5%.</i>

Name	Large Orders
DL	7
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Courier Units from this Tribe gain the Clan's max Fair Multiplier when buying/selling at Trading Towns (such as Conrad's Crossing, Shanghai, Creecross). These are locations with a Buy/Sell spreadsheet.</p> <p>This Fair Multiplier includes sources such as Castle, Wholesale Trade and City modifiers but not Fair 3 (this is not an actual multiplier) or special hex modifiers.</p> <p>This has no effect on Trade Missions, Traders (X for Y), etc.</p> <p><i>Example:</i> A Courier Unit with Large Orders in a Clan that has a City with Trading Post has a Fair Modifier of x3. If the Trading Town they are at sells Brass with a QTY of 100, the Courier unit could purchase QTY 300 at normal prices.</p>
Summary	<i>Applies Clan's Fair Multiplier when Buy/Selling at Trading Towns.</i>

Dance

Name	Circus Troupe
DL	4
Pre-Req	Animal Training (Herding research) Dance 11 (Dance research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Completion of the Circus Troupe research allows the formation of a specialized Trade Element called a Circus Troupe. This specialized Trade Element follows all standard Trade Element rules.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Per Clan: For each Clan, once per year, the Circus Troupe may perform a Circus for that clan. • Target Clan Benefit: A Clan which receives a Circus gains +0.05 General Morale Bonus to a single Tribe that is present at the site of the Circus. • Circus Troupe Benefit: Performing a circus at a Player Clan requires the target clan to pay 500 silver to the Circus. • NPC Cities: Performing a circus at an NPC City requires that the target NPC City pay 100 Coin to the Circus. A Circus Troupe may only perform for each NPC City once per year. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Performers: A Circus Troupe must be comprised of at least 3 Performance Elephants, 6 Performance Horses, 10 Performance Dogs and 12 Dance Specialists. <p>Note: Dance Specialists follow standard specialist rules and require Dance 11 to train.</p>
Summary	<i>Yearly event to gain Morale and Silver</i>

Name	Dance 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Circus Troupe (Dance research)
Description	<p>Increases Dance skill by 1.</p> <p>Allows training of specialists.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Dancing, Allows specialists</i>
---------	---

Name	Great Work
DL	5
Pre-Req	See Art Research
Recipe	See Art Research
Leads To:	See Art Research
Description	See Art Research
Summary	<i>Sacrifice Cultural Skill Levels for Morale gain</i>

Name	Spring Arts Festival
DL	6
Pre-Req	See Art Research
Recipe	See Art Research
Leads To:	Inter Spring Arts Festival Dance (Dance research)
Description	See Art Research
Summary	<i>Yearly event to raise Morale</i>

Name	Inter Spring Arts Festival Dance
DL	8
Pre-Req	Spring Arts Festival Dance (Dance research) Administration 10 (Group B skill)
Recipe	1 Amphitheatre: People 2k, Eng 8, Stone 10k, Cloth 1k, Silver 5k
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>An upgrade to the Spring Arts Festival Dance so that its available to more people.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Visitors: Tribes from other Clans may participate in your Spring Arts Festival Dance. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On Location: To participate, the Tribes from other Clans must have a unit with WA (doesn't count Inactives) population in the hex with your Tribe and the Amphitheatre. <p>Restrictions:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No Hunting: Units from other Clans participating in your Inter Spring Arts Festival Dance may not hunt during the Fair turn. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>New Building – Amphitheatre, expands Festival to other Clans.</i>

Design

Name	Design 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Design and Fashion +1 (example from Des 10 to Des 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Design specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Design and Fashion Specialists: There are no benefits to having Design Specialists at this time. • There is currently no benefit for Design skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Design, Specialists</i>

Name	Medals
DL	4
Pre-Req	Leadership 8 (Group B skill)
Recipe	1 Medal: Des 10, Mtl 4, People 1, Gold 0.1, Silk 2
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Metalwork Activity</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat Morale: Upon completion of a combat, not Raid, Suppression, etc, a Clan may award medals to their surviving Warriors that participated in that specific battle, regardless of if their side won or lost. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Victor: Instead of gaining 0.04 Combat Morale, the Tribe(s) gain 0.05 Combat Morale ○ Loser: Instead of losing 0.04 Combat Morale, the Tribe(s) only lose 0.02 Combat Morale. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Medal Usage: One Medal per surviving Warrior in the Unit(s) from the

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Tribe(s) with this research must be sent to usage to gain the benefits.</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Tribe may only gain an increase to its Combat Morale from Medals once per Combat. • Medals may not be given to other Tribes or Clans. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 0.1 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item – Medals, provides Combat Morale benefit after battles.</i>

Diplomacy

Name	Alliance MOTC
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Trusted Maps (Captaincy research) Trusted Maps (Economics research) Trusted Maps (Leadership research) Federal Community of Clans (Leadership research)
Description	<p>Once completed, this research topic allows MOTC to be declared between Tribes within Allied Clans (Alliances must be established using Corps Diplomatique BEFORE Alliance MOTC can be used) as if they were all members of a single Clan. To enable an Alliance MOTC, ALL the involved tribes must know this research topic and then sacrifice the requisite commodities (as explained below) and state which other Allied tribe(s) they will be joining with in a MOTC. An Alliance MOTC between tribes within two clans requires that each tribe sacrifice 10 units of a desired commodity and an additional 10 units of another, different non-desired commodity. An Alliance MOTC between tribes from three different clans requires that each tribe sacrifice 10 units of a desired commodity and an additional 10 units each of two, different non-desired commodities; e.g. each tribe sacrifices 30 commodities (10 of a desired commodity, 10 of one non-desired commodity and 10 of another different non-desired commodity). Between four clans requires 10 units of a desired commodity and an additional 10 units each of three, different non-desired commodities and so forth.</p> <p>This sacrifice simply enables an Alliance MOTC (and this fact should be shown in each clan's turn results). Once enabled, an Alliance MOTC may be held unused indefinitely and then used when needed by simply declaring a normal MOTC except that this MOTC may involve tribes from different clans. All involved tribes must be in a common hex when the Alliance MOTC is declared. A sacrifice allows one and only one Alliance MOTC to be declared. Further Alliance MOTC declarations each require their own sacrifices.</p> <p>Alliance MOTC Limitations – When an Alliance MOTC is declared, one of the participating tribes must be specified (by all participants) as the leader. At no time can the warriors from the other Alliance MOTC participants exceed the number of <u>warriors</u> in the leader's clan. This is enforced in a three-way MOTC, by limiting each of the other two (non-leader) participants' warriors to half the number of <u>warriors</u> in the leader's clan. In a four-way MOTC, this limit is reduced to a third and so forth. <u>An Alliance MOTC operates as a normal MOTC. Battles skills are averaged (weighted averaging) across all warriors in the MOTC. The one exception is Generalship. If the Tribe leading the Alliance MOTC possesses the Gship skill, its benefits accrue to all as the General is in command of the entire MOTC.</u> Finally, all tribes (except the Leader)</p>

	involved in an Alliance MOTC lose all of their Skill Attempts while the MOTC is active. Once ended, an Alliance MOTC can be reactivated ONLY by further sacrifices of commodities as described above.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Allows Meeting of the Clan with Alliance Mates</i>

Name	Corps Diplomatique
DL	7
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Once a Tribe has completely researched Corps Diplomatique, it gains the ability to send Diplomats to other Clans, thus establishing diplomatic relations between the clans. The research is Tribe specific and Diplomats must originate from the Tribe (not Element) with the research. Diplomats are shown in your status – but they are also Inactive so transfer of Diplomat(s) means you must also transfer Inactive(s). Diplomatic Relations entail a variety of benefits, obligations and penalties as described below.</p> <p>Benefit: Diplomatic Relations are established by a Tribe, that possesses Corps Diplomatique, sending a diplomat to the main Tribe of another clan (not Element), and that tribe/village simultaneously accepting the diplomat. The Diplomat must be sent via an Element of the Tribe. Accepting the diplomat and thus Diplomatic relations, is ordered by the other Clan in the turn following the arrival of the Diplomat at that Clan.</p> <p>If both the send and accept orders are given in the same month, Diplomatic Relations are established between the two clans. Diplomatic Relations allows Trade Routes (see also Board of Trade as a requirement, see also Trade Routes/Depots) to be established between a village of one clan and a village of the other clan, as if both villages were part of one clan including Depots and Goods Tribe relationship.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> NOTE: Corps Diplomatique does not allow the creation of a Goods Tribe between Clans, only setting up a Trade Route. <p>Declaring war on a clan with whom you have Diplomatic Relations is a two step process. On Turn X, the clan must withdraw/expel the ambassador. This causes all diplomatic benefits in trade to be lost. On Turn (X+1), war can be declared normally. In such cases, the tribe (only of the clan that declares war) that sent/accepted the diplomat suffers a General morale penalty of 0.05.</p>
Summary	<i>Send Diplomats out to form relations to assist with Trade Route setup</i>

Name	Diplomacy 11
DL	5

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Diplomacy +1 (example from Dip 10 to Dip 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Diplomacy specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diplomacy Specialists: There are no benefits to having Diplomacy specialists at this time. • There is currently no benefit for Diplomacy skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Bush Lore, Specialists</i>

Name	Expanded Horizons, Expanded Horizons II
DL	5, 5
Pre-Req	Expanded Horizons: Both Diplomacy 10 and Economics 10 in Clan* Expanded Horizons II: Expanded Horizons (Diplomacy or Economics research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Expanded Horizons: Upon completion, the Clan gains an additional Desired Commodity that provides Slaves. The type of Desired Commodity is determined by the GM randomly.</p> <p>Expanded Horizons II: Upon completion, the Clan gains an additional Desired Commodity that provides Hirelings. The Type of Desired Commodity is determined by the GM randomly.</p> <p>*Expanded Horizons requires that the Clan have, in any combination of its Tribes, both Economics 10 and Diplomacy 10. A Tribe may research this topic provided it has either one of the skills at 10 and itself or another tribe have the other skill at 10.</p>
Summary	<i>Gain another one/two Desired Commodities to buy Hirelings/Slaves</i>

Name	Extra Tribe
DL	4 / 5 / 6 /

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Completion of this topic allows the Clan to spawn an extra Tribe.</p> <p>This Tribe must be immobile. Standard costs apply.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Upon completion of this research, contact the GM to create the extra tribe and to have the research removed so it can be researched additional times. 2. The maximum number of Tribes that a Clan may have is 10. Creation of extra tribes through this research counts against this limit. Be aware that this may restrict your options for International NPC Tribes.
Summary	<i>Gain an extra Tribe, though it must be immobile.</i>

Name	Fair 3
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Only one Tribe per Clan may use the Fair3 (must be able to Trade, that is, with TP or Eco). A third Fair may be held in the Year. The effect is that you may trade at double quantity limits in EITHER Fair 04 or Fair 10 (please nominate which). Slaves are at double limits for this Fair.</p> <p>If other modifiers to trading limits at Fair have already taken you to the x10 limit then Fair3 enables you to trade up to 20 times the limits (rather than 20 different trades) at Fair time. The reason for this is that Fair3 is actually a third Fair that has been bundled for administrative purposes.</p>
Summary	<i>Your Clan may have a 3rd fair each year.</i>

Name	Frontier Lands I, II, III....
DL	1, 2, 3....
Pre-Req	Frontier Lands 1: Government Level 2 (Politics research) Frontier Lands 2: Frontier Lands I (Diplomacy or Government research) Frontier Lands 3: Frontier Lands II (Diplomacy or Government research) Frontier Lands 4:....
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Frontier Lands 1: Frontier Lands II (Diplomacy or Government research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Frontier Lands II: Frontier Lands III (Diplomacy or Government research) Frontier Lands III: Frontier Lands IV (Diplomacy or Government research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Controlled Hexes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Every Level of Frontier Lands extends the rings of Controlled hexes for a Home city by 3 Rings. ○ Frontier Land controlled hexes count as Controlled Hexes for purposes of Pacification, Treaties, Nations, etc. ○ Frontier Land controlled hexes do not count as Controlled hexes for purposes of Tithes, Recruits or Militia. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pacification: Each controlled hex requires Pacification just as normal controlled hexes require except that Frontier Lands require 1/10th the normal Pacifiers as regular Controlled Hexes. 0.1% Warriors assigned instead of 1% Warriors assigned. • Administration: Each level of Frontier Lands counts as a level of Government Level when determining Administrators. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Edition: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: Frontier Lands will not be shown to other players but they exist. If two or more Frontier Lands overlap, a Nation can be formed following normal rules. Both sides will need to Pacify these hexes. • TN2020: Frontier Lands will be shown to other players. If two or more Frontier Lands overlap, a Nation can be formed following normal rules. Only the final controlling side will need to Pacify these hexes. <p>Example: A Home City with Government Level 2 controls its hex and 2 rings of hexes around it (1+6+12 = 19 controlled hexes requiring $19 * 0.01 = 19\%$ of the Home City's Warriors). A Home City with Government Level 2 and Frontier Lands 2 controls its hex and 2 ring of hexes around it via Government Level 2 and then 6 rings of hexes around it via Frontier Lands 2. It has a total of 19 fully controlled hexes (1 + 6 + 12 = 19) that require $19 * 0.01 = 19\%$ of the Home City's Warriors. It semi-controls a further 18+24+30+36+42+48=198 hexes (6 further rings) requiring $198 * 0.01 / 10 = 19.8\%$ of the Home City's Warriors for a total of 38.8% of the Home City's Warriors.</p> <p>If later on, the Home City increases to Government Level 3, then it would have a total of 1+6+12+18=37 fully controlled hexes (37% of the Home City Warriors) and a further 24+30+36+42+48+54 = 234 semi-controlled hexes requiring 23.4% of the</p>

	Home City Warriors for a total of 60.4% of the Home City warriors assigned to Pacification.
Summary	<i>Semi-lawed controlled hexes radiating out from a Home City.</i>

Name	Political Route
DL	8
Pre-Req	Home City established in Clan Home City at Government Level 2 Board of Trade established in Clan
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Political Route: Once a Clan completes Political Route research topic, it may form 1 Political Route. Once a Political Route is formed, the research topic is removed but may be researched again. Political Routes are preset and maintained routes similar to Trade Routes but instead of trade, they provide communication and assistance between two cities allowing the utilization of Treaties in order to form a Nation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Formation: A Political Route forms between two Home Cities at a maximum route distance as below. It may go across fords, mountains, rivers, Alps, passes and one hex of water (lake or ocean) at a time. Route Distance: A route may be a maximum distance, in hexes, equal to 15 Hexes per Government Level of the Home City with the lowest Government Level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Example: A Home City with GL 2 and a Home City with GL 3 may have a route between them at a maximum distance of $2 * 15 = 30$ hexes. Map: Players will need to provide a map to the Game Master and show the route and specify the exact hex coordinates of the route. The GM will verify that the route does not pass through a hex controlled by another Player's Home City that is not part of the alliance / nation. Once set, the route may not be changed without retaking the research topic. Route Effect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nation Forming: Once the route is set and pacifiers are assigned, the two cities may work towards forming a Nation through standard Treaty rules. Controlled Hexes: Uncontrolled hexes between the researcher's Home City and the target Home City along the Political Route are considered to be Controlled by the research holding clan's Home City. Each controlled hex from Political Route adds to the normal Home City Controlled Hexes.

- **Restrictive:** These Controlled Hexes do not produce Tithes, provide Militia, Actives or other benefits outside of allowing Treaties.

Requirements:

- **Completion Payment:** Upon formation of the Political Route, each Clan must consume 20 “Lots” of one of that Clan’s desired commodities.
- **Annual Payment:** Each turn, on Month 1, each Clan must consume 5 “Lots” of one of that Clan’s desired commodities.
 - **Failure to Pay:** All bonuses are suspended until desired commodity debt is paid.
- **Pacification:** Controlled Hexes formed by a Political Route requires normal pacification and follows all normal pacification rules.
 - **Failure to Pacification:** All bonuses are suspended until pacification is reassigned.

Restrictions:

- **Other Controlled Hexes:** A Political Route may not go across non-allied Controlled Hexes.
- **Unallied Controlled Hexes:** If an unallied City grows and has Controlled EHxes which now overlap this Political Route, all bonuses are lost until Control of the Hexes is resolved either through removal of the interloper, use of a treaty or other method of Alliance is made.

Notes:

- **Multiple Routes:** This research may be taken multiple times at the same
- Frontiers exist around every Kingdom and Nation. Wise rulers seek out others to ally with and work towards the pacification of these frontiers. This usually requires a firm iron fist to squash bandits. Dedicated routes to those allies become essential.

Summary	<i>Different route to forming a Nation</i>
---------	--

Distilling

Name	Absinthe
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Barrel: People 5, Grain 100, Herbs 10, Silver 5
Leads To	N/A
Description	Can be sold at Fair. Opening price at Fair is 500 Silver. Starting quantity at Fair is 20 Barrels. Further Details Coming
Summary	<i>New Item - Absinthe, Sells at Fair</i>

Name	Branded Ale (Wine, Brandy, etc)
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Putting your own brand on an alcoholic beverage will enable your Branded <Alcohol> to sell at Fair for 1.5 normal prices. In combination with Eco research and later developments will see market competition, monopolies, guilds etc come into play. Each alcohol requires its own research topic. Branded Alcohol may be traded and sold by other Clans. Each unique Branded Alcohol may be sold independently of any other alcohol even of the same type. Wine and Branded Wine 0123 and Branded Wine 0456 may all be sold at the same fair but each of them takes up a fair slot.
Summary	<i>New Item - Alcohol of your naming, Sells at Fair for +50% base price</i>

Name	Distillers' Guild
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Distiller's Guildhall: People 2k, Eng 8, Stn 8, Stone 10k, Gold 10, Silver 10k
Leads To	N/A
Description	Description

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

n

The effects of a Distiller's Guild is to ensure that all Guild Members make a large profit off their alcohol and to help regulate the alcohol trade throughout the land by ensuring that there is not a glut of one type of beverage and a dirth of another.

Formation and Governance

Anyone who completes the research may choose to become a Guild Master by starting a Guild (done by informing the GM by email). Guilds are always public: the formation of new ones will be published in TribeNews and currently active ones will be listed on public TN portals. Membership of any Guild is limited to 10 Clans in total, including the Guild Master. A Clan may be a member of only one Guild of each type (Traders Guild 20 and Traders Guild 25 are considered the same type, Bargemen's Guild is a different type). A Clan may only be a member of one Exclusive Guild, such as Exotic Weavers Guild.

Distillers' Guild is an Exclusive Guild.

Membership is by invitation from the Guild Master to anyone they choose, cc'd to the GM: a clear acceptance to the offer must be sent to the Guild Master, cc'd to the GM. Players may seek membership once the formal invitation is issued. The Guild Master is not obliged to accept any particular appliacton for membership. It is incumbent on the Guild Master to maintain the list of the membership in their Guild. Players may leave a Guild at any time by notifying the Guild Master by email, cc'd to the GM. Benefits to the departing player lapse effective from the date of the resignation email. Players may be voted out of the Guild via 60% of membership in favour (the Guild Master counts as two members with two votes).

Any Guild may choose to write a Constitution, which must agreed with the GM. Any such document is always public knowledge and must be made available on public TN portals. It is the Guild Master's responsibility to ensure that this happens.

Should a Guild Master lose the capacity to run a Guild, a deputy can be appointed by the GM from amongst remaining Guild members. This deputy may continue to run the Guild as previously run but must immediately undertake any skill development and research necessary to support it. If no-one is able to act as deputy the Guild is dissolved and all benefits are lost.

Operation and benefits

Members of a Distillers Guild are allocated one type of Alcohol. Only two Guild Members may be assigned to each of the Alcohol types. Entry into the Guild allows the construction of a Distillers' Guildhall (see recipe above). Once a Distillers' Guildhall is constructed, a Guild Member gains a bonus when selling alcohol of their appropriate type at Fair or through any other NPC avenue (such as Taverns, trade towns, etc). This bonus is equal to an extra 50% of base sale price for their appropriate Alcohol, Branded included. For instance, Ale normally sells

	<p>for 272 Silver per barrel. If the Chief is selling Ale and is in the Ale slot in the Guild, then each barrel would instead sell for 408 Silver. If the Chief is selling Branded Ale, then normally it is $272 * 1.5$ but with Distillers' Guild it is now $272 * 2.0 = 544$ barrels may be sold.</p> <p>Alcohol Types (Other types may become available):</p> <p>Ale:</p> <p>Brandy:</p> <p>Mead:</p> <p>Rum:</p> <p>Wine:</p> <p>Absinthe:</p> <p>Gin:</p> <p>Port:</p>
Summary	<i>Guild, Up to 10 people may join. Increases payout for specific alcohol</i>

Name	Distilling 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Distilling +1 (example from Dis 10 to Dis 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Distilling specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Distilling, Specialists</i>

Name	Gin
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Barrel: People 5, Juniper 50, Grain 25, Herbs 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Can be sold at Fair.</p> <p>Opening price at Fair is 1,000 Silver.</p> <p>Starting quantity at Fair is 20 Barrels.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>New Item - Gin, Sells at Fair</i>

Name	Port Wine
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Barrel: People 5, Distilling 7, Grapes 100, Brandy 10
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Fortified Wine.</p> <p>Can be sold at Fair.</p> <p>Effects unknown.</p> <p>Further Details Coming</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Port Wine, Sells at Fair</i>

Name	Road House
DL	3
Pre-Req	<u>Tavern (Distilling research)</u>
Recipe	Road House: People 500, Eng 5, Logs 1000, Silver 2000
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Building: Roadhouse <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Monthly Sales: Every Roadhouse allows a Clan to sell certain Alcohol each turn to the local population in exchange for silver. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Maximum Quantity: Each Road House will buy 2 Barrels of each accepted alcohol per turn. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Example: In one turn, a single Road House would buy 2 barrels of Ale, 2 barrels of Mead and 2 barrels of Wine. • Example: In one turn, all six Road Houses would buy 12 barrels of Ale, 12 barrels of mead and 12 barrels of Wine. ▪ Purchase Price: Road Houses purchase alcohol at standard Fair prices. ▪ Branded Alcohol: Branded Alcohol may be sold in place of their normal type, not in addition to the normal unbranded type. ▪ Additional Price Modifiers: Other price modifiers to alcohol also affect the purchase price of the alcohol at a Road House. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Location: Roadhouses must be built in the six adjacent hexes surrounding a village that houses a unit from a Tribe with the Tavern and Roadhouse research.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AutoOrders: Players must use autotransfers to/from 1263 to transfer the barrels and alcohol to 1263 and the silver from 1263. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Limited Alcohol Accepted: The Road House will buy Ale, Mead and Wine. • Limited Quantity: Only 6 Roadhouses may be built via this research. Additional, undesigned, research topics may expand this number. • Water: Roadhouses may not be built on water. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Road house is a small inn or tavern for the local population. • Proposed by Lucas Riley
Summary	<i>New Building - Roadhouse - Allows selling of alcohol each turn</i>

Name	Tavern
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Tavern: People 250, Eng 4, Logs 500
Leads To	<u>Road House (Distilling research)</u>
Description	<p>Requires 500 logs to build, at Eng4 installed @ 2 per. The Tavern allows the owner to sell 2 times the normal limits on alcohol at the Fair. You do not need a Trading Post to do this. The normal limit is x 6 with Pol 10 and TP). If the Tribe with Tavern research and the Tribe conducting the Fair are different they may work together as long as they share the one Village site. Tavern with Wholesale Trading will x8 limits at Fair (noting the overall limit for Fair trading is x10).</p> <p>Note, in the longer term there would be the possibility a tavern could be built elsewhere to generate monthly income from the sale of beverages. A site may have a maximum of 10 Taverns.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Increases Fair Multiplier for Alcohol only.</i>

Economics

Name	Bargemens Guild
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Bargeyard: People 160, Eng 5, Logs 300, Iron 100, Coal 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Similar to the Traders Guild, the Bargemen's Guild allows members the transportation of goods from one Bargeyard to another Bargeyard along a pre-approved path. The effect of a Bargemen's Guild is to allow a limited degree of barge based transfers between Guild Members' units along nominated Guild Routes, which represent well travelled river routes amongst a stable trading community. Such transfers are facilitated by locals, i.e. no player element needs to be assigned or moved.</p> <p><u>Operation and benefits</u></p> <p>A Guild Route runs between two Bargeyards belonging to member Clans of the Guild (both Bargeyards may be owned by the same Guild member). A Guild Route consists of a continuous route of up to <u>120</u> Hex Sides that may be traveled by barges. Each Guild Route must be individually approved by the GM. Any member creating a new Guild Route must provide the GM with a graphical map showing the location of the units with Bargeyard and the proposed path in hexes. <i>NB Guild Route details are between the individual members involved and the GM. The Guild Master and other members need not have knowledge of all Guild Routes.</i></p> <p>During Trade Fair months each Guild Member may conduct a single Guild Trade along an approved Guild Route. Such a Guild Trade is in addition to the normal fair; it does not count toward trade fair limits in any way. A Guild member may receive goods from as many members as are in their Guild, but may send goods only from a single Bargeyard.</p> <p>For each member of the Guild, the Guild Master receives 5 Gold annually (from locals), received on Turn 1 of each game year. For computational purposes the total membership in the Guild is determined at the time the preceding turn 12 TribeNews is published. The Guild Master must show this remittance as a Transfer.</p> <p><u>Initial limits</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A Guild member may possess at most 2 Bargeyards at any one time. 2. A Guild member may possess at most 2 approved Guild Routes at any one time. 3. A Guild member may nominate a new Guild Route only once per game year. If already at the limit for Guild Routes, such a new proposal must nominate which route

it is replacing.

4. A single Guild Trade may have at most 8 distinct items (plus barrels/containers for liquids). Only one of these may be a research item; otherwise items must be available on the public fair list or be an Exotic good such as Jade, Tea, Frankincense, etc. Books, Artefacts, Relics, Scrolls, people in any form (population, slaves, locals, hirelings, mercenaries, etc.) and boats or ships of any kind cannot be traded in this way.

5. The total quantity of goods transferred in a single Guild Trade is limited to the capacity of 20 Barges (it is up to the player to calculate this – if the GM discovers an error the player will be notified, a second error and the player is forever barred from any Guild membership). **Barges** capable of carrying the quantity of goods transferred must be held at the sending Bargeyards, but do not need to be moved.

6. Animals may be traded this way at normal ship capacity limits.

7. Bargeyards are buildings and must be built in a village.

Standard Guild Rules (From Traders Guild):

Formation and Governance

Anyone who completes the research may choose to become a Guild Master by starting a Guild (done by informing the GM by email). Guilds are always public: the formation of new ones will be published in TribeNews and currently active ones will be listed on public TN portals. Membership of any Guild is limited to 10 Clans in total, including the Guild Master. A Clan may be a member of only one Guild of each type (Traders Guild 20 and Traders Guild 25 are considered the same type, Bargemen's Guild is a different type). A Clan may only be a member of one Exclusive Guild, such as Exotic Weavers Guild, though Bargemens Guild is not an exclusive Guild. Membership is by invitation from the Guild Master to anyone they choose, cc'd to the GM: a clear acceptance to the offer must be sent to the Guild Master, cc'd to the GM. Players may seek membership once the formal invitation is issued. The Guild Master is not obliged to accept any particular application for membership. It is incumbent on the Guild Master to maintain the list of the membership in their Guild. Players may leave a Guild at any time by notifying the Guild Master by email, cc'd to the GM. Benefits to the departing player lapse effective from the date of the resignation email. Players may be voted out of the Guild via 60% of membership in favour (the Guild Master counts as two members with two votes).

Any Guild may choose to write a Constitution, which must be agreed with the GM. Any such document is always public knowledge and must be made available on public TN portals. It is the Guild Master's responsibility to ensure that this happens.

Should a Guild Master lose the capacity to run a Guild, a deputy can be appointed by the GM from amongst remaining Guild members. This deputy may continue to run the Guild as previously run but must immediately undertake any skill development and research necessary to support it. If no-one is able to act as deputy the Guild is

	dissolved and all benefits are lost.
Summary	<i>Guild, 10 people may join, allows long distance river travel once per Fair</i>

Name	Board of Trade
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Entrepot (Economics research) International Cultural Organization (Administration research) Trade Camps (Economics research)
Description	<p>Once a Tribe has completely researched Board of Trade, it gains the ability to create Trade Routes (see Trade Route) without performing further research. Sea Borne Trade Routes may be created via Board of Trade but your Clan must have already researched Sea Borne Trade Routes topic to do so.</p> <p>Board of Trade provides three distinct benefits:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Create Trade Routes (1 Trade Route per Admin Skill Level not already used) 2) Improved Land Trade Routes (See Create Trade Routes Note 1 & 2). 3) Improved Sea Borne Trade Routes (See Create Trade Routes Note 3 & 4) <p>Create Trade Routes:</p> <p>A Tribe with Board of Trade (BoT) may create 1 Trade Route for every point of Admin skill that the Tribe with BoT has that is not already used to create Elements/Fleets. It takes 2 points of Admin skill for each Element/Fleet. <i>(Example: The Tribe with BoT has Admin 6 and has 2 elements which uses 4 of its 6 points of Admin. It may create up to 2 Trade Routes).</i></p> <p>Trade Routes follow all the rules of Trade Routes created under the Trade Routes research topic. The follow exceptions and notes apply:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Land Trade Routes may be a maximum length of 240 MV (instead of 120 MV normally allowed). 2) Units that move along Land Trade Routes have their speed doubled to 80 MV per Turn. 3) Sea Borne Trade Routes may be a maximum length of Unlimited MV (instead of 360 MV normally allowed). See <i>Sea Borne Trade Restrictions</i> below. 4) Units move along Sea Borne Trade Routes have their speed doubled to 120 MV per Turn. 5) Movement is unaffected by Weather. 6) Movement is done through GOTO orders to Waystations / NPC Sites along the Trade Route per the Trade Route rules. 7) A Trade Route slot may be terminated and reused after a two year wait. <p>How to Create and Maintain a Trade Route:</p>

- 1) In Activities, make an activity called Create and Administer Trade Route
 - 1) Include the Unit at the other end of the route
 - 2) Include what Trade Route number it is (First is 1, Second is 2, etc)
 - 3) 5 Actives must be assigned each turn
 - 4) When your next Payment must be made (Silver and Commodities)
- 2) Transfer (to usage) 10 of one of your Desired Commodities upon creation and annually
- 3) Transfer (to usage) 1500 silver upon creation and annually

Example of 1 Trade Route:

Unit	Activity	Item	People	Notes
2101	Admin Trade Route	0101e2	5	Route: 1, Silver 1500 & Opium 10 due Turn 6/811

Example of 3 Trade Routes:

Unit	Activity	Item	People	Notes
2101	Admin Trade Route	0101e2	5	Route: 1, Silver 1500 & Opium 10 due Turn 6/811
2101	Admin Trade Route	2101e1	5	Route: 2, Silver 1500 & China 10 due Turn 7/811
2101	Admin Trade Route	0101e1	5	Route: 3, Silver 1500 & China 10 due Turn 5/812

How to Dissolve a Trade Route:

- 1) In Activities, make an activity called End Trade Route
 - a. Include the Trade Route Number
 - b. Include when it was terminated
- 2) Note: That Trade Route number is able to be used again two years after the date it was terminated.

Example:

Unit	Activity	Item	People	Notes
2101	End Trade Route			Route: 1, Terminated 8/811

General Notes:

- 1) One end of a Trade Route must be the village that holds Board of Trade research.
- 2) Only 1 Board of Trade is allowed per Clan.
- 3) BoT Research is Tribe specific but any units belonging to the Clan (and only units from that Clan) may use the Trade Routes.
- 4) Units may not be absorbed or created via Trade Routes.

Sea Borne Trade Route Restrictions: Sea Borne Trade Routes created under Board of Trade (Requires both Board of Trade and Sea Borne Trade research topics to be held by the Clan) have an additional restriction that comes with the unlimited length of the trade route.

	<p>1) A Jetty must be available along the Trade Route every 40 hexes. This can be a standard Jetty named hex created per Mandate section 12.1.1 or any village with a Jetty.</p> <p>Countered By: Destroying the Village with Board of Trade eliminates Trade Routes that originate from that village.</p> <p>Note: A Fleet may only gain movement bonuses from three research topics simultaneous Examples include, but are not limited to, Board of Trade, Fast Fleet, Trusted Maps, etc.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows formation of many Trade Routes. Trade Routes allow rapid movement of goods/units</i>

Name	Brothel
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Brothel: People 1000, Eng 6, Logs 2000, Silk 100, Cloth 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>A Brothel houses 30 Courtesans @300 Silver (30 Actives) need to be assigned during the Fair. Enables the sale of sex as a Trade Fair item generating up to 9000 Silver and does not count against Fair limits. One brothel per Fair. Alternatively, instead of producing Silver each Courtesan can produce 30 Coins or 2 Opium.</p> <p>Finally, Fair3 (a third fair) does allow the amount of silver/coins produced to be doubled. However, this is the only possible increase. No other fair multipliers apply.</p> <p>Note: Is coded</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Brothel, New Fair activity for silver</i>

Name	Carnival
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Carnivale replaces a single Fair each year.</p> <p>A Tribe that has completed Carnivale has its Fair Multiplier quadrupled (x4) for a single Fair (month 4 or month 10 but not both). The number of Fair Slots remain the same (10 buy/sell slots) but the quantities for each slot are</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>quadrupled (If you could normally buy 10 Hives, with Carnivale you could by 40 Hives).</p> <p>In the event that multiple research topics or special hexes modify the Fair Multiplier, Carnivale quadruples(x4) the Fair Multiplier to a maximum Fair Multiplier of x10.</p> <p>For instance, if you have a City with Trading Post, your Fair Multiplier is x3. With Carnivale, it would be x12. If the City with Trading Post also has a Castle, it would have a fair multiplier of 1 x 3 (City w/ TP) x 2 (Castle) x 4 (Carnival) = x24 however the maximum Fair Multiplier is x10, so it would round down to x10.</p>
Summary	<i>Replaces one Fair with Carnivale and larger Fair Multiplier</i>

Name	Economics 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Economics +1 (example from Eco 10 to Eco 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Economics specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Economics, Specialists</i>

Name	Entrepot
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Board of Trade (Economics Research)</u>
Recipe	1 Entrepot: People 250, Eng 3, Log 400, Iron 500, Gold 10, Silver 1000
Leads To	
Description	A Clan that has the Entrepot research topic may build Entrepots in villages. Entrepots may be built in villages for other Clans but they have no effect.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Entrepots effects only work in conjunction with Board of Trade routes.

1. **Land Route:** Normally Board of Trade requires that all trade route slots to have one end at the village possessing Board of Trade. Villages with Entrepot connected back to the Board of Trade village through Trade Routes count as if they were the Board of Trade village themselves for purposes of creating new Trade Routes. This trade route still takes up one of the Board of Trade slots. *Clarification, the TR from the Board of Trade to the Village containing an Entrepot counts as one slot against the Board of Trade and the TR leading onward from the Village w/Entrepot counts as a second slot.*
2. **Sea Borne Route:** Increases the segment span for Sea Borne Board-of-Trade Trade Routes from 40 to 80 hexes between villages with jetties / jetties provided that the Sea Borne Trade Route starts and ends at two villages with Entrepots. It does not increase speed of movement, only the distance between the required villages/jetties. (See Board of Trade Miscellaneous Notes #5). A Sea Borne Route that uses any number of Entrepots takes up an additional Board of Trade Route slot (effectively taking up 2 slots total).

Example – Land:

Normal: (Board of Trade) ---TR→ (Village)

Example: (Board of Trade) ---TR→ (Village w/ Ent) ---TR → (Village)

Example: (Board of Trade) ---TR→ (Village w/ Ent) ---TR → (Village w/ Ent) –TR->

Entrepot, otherwise known as a transshipment port, is a port, city or trading post where merchandise is imported, stored and traded only be to exported again. It is a way point along the great trade routes. As trade routes grew, so did the existence of Entrepots. Historical Entrpots are Hong Kong, Amsterdam, Cape of Good Hope, New Orleans, etc.

Summary	<i>Allows Trade Routes via Board of Trade to branch off or be placed in series</i>
----------------	--

Name	Expanded Horizons, Expanded Horizons II
DL	5, 5
Pre-Req	Expanded Horizons: Both Diplomacy 10 and Economics 10 in Clan* Expanded Horizons II: Expanded Horizons (Diplomacy or Economics research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Expanded Horizons: Upon completion, the Clan gains an additional Desired Commodity that provides Slaves. The type of Desired Commodity is determined by the GM randomly.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Expanded Horizons II: Upon completion, the Clan gains an additional Desired Commodity that provides Hirelings. The Type of Desired Commodity is determined by the GM randomly.</p> <p>*Expanded Horizons requires that the Clan have, in any combination of its Tribes, both Economics 10 and Diplomacy 10. A Tribe may research this topic provided it has either one of the skills at 10 and itself or another tribe have the other skill at 10.</p>
Summary	<i>Gain another one/two Desired Commodities to buy Hirelings/Slaves</i>

Name	Goods Tribe Economic Zone
DL	6
Pre-Req	Leadership 10 (Group B skill) Economics 10 (Group B skill)
Recipe	1 Administrative Building: People 600, Eng 8, Stone 3000
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>An advanced and economically literate society with a disciplined military collaborate to achieve a more efficient organization of goods and their transportation.</p> <p>A Unit with this research may be assigned as the Goods Tribe for units within Range 2 of the Unit versus the standard range 1 (Adjacent).</p>
Summary	<i>Goods Tribes may be at distance 2 instead of 1.</i>

Name	<Guild> Hall
DL	5
Pre-Req	Membership in the appropriate Guild type
Recipe	1 Guild Hall: People 2k, Eng 6, Stn 6, Stone 10k, Silver 20k, Gold 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Guild Hall solidifies the control of the Guild over its appointed tasks for a single Clan. One Guild Hall is needed for the Clan to gain the benefits. Guild Halls help with administration, training and retaining the specialized knowledge needed to operate a Guild.</p> <p>Each Guild type has its own Guild Hall (and research) and receives a bonus specific to that Guild type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Traders Guild: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o A Traders guild route may go over water hexes, but only one water hex at a time. (For instance, Land-Water-Land-Water-Land is acceptable but Land-Water-Water-Land is not). This is reflected as local bargemen, ferry operators, etc. · Bargemen's Guild: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o A Bargemen's guild route may extend 180 MV instead of the normal

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>120 MV but must meet all other requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Merchant Navy Guild: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o A Merchant Navy route may follow a river. Each hex side of River costs 0.5 of a Hex of the route. Only 20 hexes worth of movement may be along a River (40 hex lengths). · Exotic Weavers Guild: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Members of an Exotic Weavers Guild that build an Exotic Weavers Guild Hall may place a paper element in Shanghai that may trade as a Shanghai Element but may only deal in exotically woven goods. The Guild Leader, with a Guild Hall, would instead be able to trade at 2x the standard quantities. · Triball Guild: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o Instead of the silver generated from a Triball Guild activity being converted into Gold, up to 50% may be converted into a single other Commodity following the commodity exchange rates in NPC Exchange. <p>Benefits offered by a Guild Hall affects only the holder of the Guild Hall research. It may be built for other Clans but they gain no benefit from it unless they also research the appropriate type of Guild Hall.</p> <p>Note: Each type of Guild Hall is a separate research topic in the auto-order sheet.</p> <p><Note: This research topic will grow as new Guilds are designed. Periodically, when a new guild is approved, the player should contact the GM to have the Guild hall effect added></p>
Summary	<i>New Building - <Guild> Hall – Increases boost of a Guild for that member.</i>

Name	Hire Security
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Once per year a Tribe (ONE Tribe only per Clan may have this research) may hire up to 50 Security per Security level for a 12 month period @ 20 Silver each for the Year. Need to be equipped but not fed. Act at Tribe levels and are shown in addition to Warrior numbers.
Summary	<i>Tribe may hire extra security to protect against Spies/Assassins</i>

Name	Market Place
DL	5

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Market Place: Eng 4, People 250, Log 500
Leads To	N/A
Description	The number of items traded at the Fair may be increased from 10 to 15. You need the research to use, but do not need it to build.
Summary	<i>Fair - Increases the number of Fair Slots by +5</i>

Name	Merchant Navy Guild
DL	2
Pre-Req	Shipbuilding 10 (Skill)
Recipe	1 Merchant Navy Shipyard: People 150, Eng 6, Logs 300, Iron 50, Coal 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Similar to the Traders Guild, the Merchant Navy Guild allows members the transportation of goods from one Merchant Navy Shipyard to another Merchant Navy Shipyard along a pre-approved path. The effect of a Merchant Navy Guild is to allow a limited degree of fleet based transfers between Guild Members' units along nominated Guild Routes, which represent well travelled ocean routes amongst a stable trading community. Such transfers are facilitated by locals, i.e. no player element needs to be assigned or moved.</p> <p><u>Operation and benefits</u></p> <p>A Guild Route runs between two Merchant Navy Shipyards belonging to member Clans of the Guild (both Merchant Navy Shipyards may be owned by the same Guild member). A Guild Route consists of a continuous route that may be traveled by ships. Each Guild Route must be individually approved by the GM. Any member creating a new Guild Route must provide the GM with a graphical map showing the location of the units with Merchant Navy Shipyard and the proposed path in hexes. Routes may be up to 60 contiguous water or coastal hexes in length. These routes are particularly well travelled and have been thoroughly researched by sailors.</p> <p><i>NB Guild Route details are between the individual members involved and the GM. The Guild Master and other members need not have knowledge of all Guild Routes.</i></p> <p>During Trade Fair months each Guild Member may conduct a single Guild Trade along an approved Guild Route. Such a Guild Trade is in addition to the normal fair; it does not count toward trade fair limits in any way. A Guild member may receive goods from as many members as are in their Guild, but may send goods only from a single Merchant Navy Shipyard.</p> <p>For each member of the Guild, the Guild Master receives 5 Gold annually (from locals), received on Turn 1 of each game year. For computational purposes the total membership in the Guild is determined at the time the preceding turn 12 TribeNews</p>

is published. The Guild Master must show this remittance as a Transfer.

Initial limits

8. A Guild member may possess at most 2 Merchant Navy Shipyards at any one time.

8. A Guild member may possess at most 2 approved Guild Routes at any one time.

8. A Jetty must be built every 20 hexes along the Guild Route.

8. A Guild member may nominate a new Guild Route only once per game year. If already at the limit for Guild Routes, such a new proposal must nominate which route it is replacing.

8. A single Guild Trade may have at most 8 distinct items (plus barrels/containers for liquids). One of these may be a research item and one may be a book, otherwise items must be available on the public fair list or be an Exotic good such as Jade, Tea, Frankincense, etc. Artefacts, Relics, Scrolls, people in any form (population, slaves, locals, hirelings, mercenaries, etc.) and boats or ships of any kind cannot be traded in this way.

6. The total quantity of goods transferred in a single Guild Trade is limited to the capacity of 5 Traders (it is up to the player to calculate this – if the GM discovers an error the player will be notified, a second error and the player is forever barred from any Guild membership). Ships capable of carrying the quantity of goods transferred must be held at the sending Merchant Navy Shipyards, but do not need to be moved.

7. Animals may be traded this way at normal ship capacity limits.

8. Merchant Navy Shipyards are buildings and must be built in a village.

Standard Guild Rules (From Traders Guild):

Formation and Governance

Anyone who completes the research may choose to become a Guild Master by starting a Guild (done by informing the GM by email). Guilds are always public: the formation of new ones will be published in TribeNews and currently active ones will be listed on public TN portals. Membership of any Guild is limited to 10 Clans in total, including the Guild Master. A Clan may be a member of only one Guild of each type (Traders Guild 20 and Traders Guild 25 are considered the same type, Merchant Navy Guild is a different type). A Clan may only be a member of one Exclusive Guild, such as Exotic Weavers Guild, though Merchant Navy Guild is not an exclusive Guild. ~~; Bargemen's Guild and Merchant Navy Guild.~~ Membership is by invitation from the Guild Master to anyone they choose, cc'd to the GM: a clear acceptance to the offer must be sent to the Guild Master, cc'd to the GM. Players

	<p>may seek membership once the formal invitation is issued. The Guild Master is not obliged to accept any particular application for membership. It is incumbent on the Guild Master to maintain the list of the membership in their Guild. Players may leave a Guild at any time by notifying the Guild Master by email, cc'd to the GM. Benefits to the departing player lapse effective from the date of the resignation email. Players may be voted out of the Guild via 60% of membership in favour (the Guild Master counts as two members with two votes).</p> <p>Any Guild may choose to write a Constitution, which must agreed with the GM. Any such document is always public knowledge and must be made available on public TN portals. It is the Guild Master's responsibility to ensure that this happens.</p> <p>Should a Guild Master lose the capacity to run a Guild, a deputy can be appointed by the GM from amongst remaining Guild members. This deputy may continue to run the Guild as previously run but must immediately undertake any skill development and research necessary to support it. If no-one is able to act as deputy the Guild is dissolved and all benefits are lost.</p>
Summary	<i>Guild, 10 people may join, Once per fair allows long distance lake/ocean goods move.</i>

Name	Opium Den
DL	4
Pre-Req	Smoking Pipes (Apothecary research) Or Smoking Pipes (Woodworking research)
Recipe	1 Opium Den: People 200, Stone 1k, Cloth:500, Silk:100
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting Recipe: This research allows the Tribe to build an Opium Den as an Engineering Activity. • Hashish Smoking: When smoking Hashish, any Tribe in the Clan also gains Gold equal to one Half (1/2) the number of Pipes/Hookahs that were utilized, rounded up. • Opium Smoking: When smoking Opium, any Tribe in the Clan also gains Gold equal to 75% of the Opium smoked, rounded up. • Frankincense Incense: The use of 1 Frankincense per 10 Hookah/Pipe/Opium increases the Gold gain by 1/3rd, rounded up. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hashish Smoking Example: A Tribe smokes Hashish using 50 Pipes (or

	<p>Hookahs). In addition to the +0.01 General Morale, the Tribe also gains $50 / 2 = 25$ Gold</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Opium Smoking Example: A tribe smokes Opium. The Tribe has a Fair multiplier of 3 (City + TP) and an Opium Den. It may spent 16 Opium to gain 16 lots of Slaves normally and with the Fair multiplier, this increases to 48 Opium to gain 48 lots of Slaves provided the Tribe have 48 Hookahs. In addition to the 288 Slaves, the Tribe would also gain $48 * 0.75 = 36$ Gold. • Frankincense Example: In the above Opium example, if the Tribe also spent 5 Frankincense, the amount of gold gained would increase by a third. This would increase the 36 Gold to 48 Gold. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 Opium Den is sufficient for any number of Clans / Tribes to use in a City. • Opium Dens may be built for other Clans / Tribes and used by other Clans / Tribes.
Summary	<i>New Building – Opium Den, Gain Gold while your people find eternal bliss</i>

Name	Sea Borne Trade
DL	8-6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Once a Tribe has researched Sea Borne Trade, it gains the ability to create a water borne trade route. This route must consist only of hexes and hexsides that are passable by a fleet, thus requiring both the starting and ending villages to be accessible by water.</p> <p>Benefit: Sea Borne Trade operates under all the rules and restriction of land-borne trade routes. Of course carrying capacity is determined by the vessels assigned to the trade fleet, rather than by land-based conveyances. Historically, Sea Borne Trade was more efficient than land-borne trade. Thus the movement of a trade fleet is 60 MV points. The maximum distance permitted for Sea Borne Trade is 360 MV points and must end at a village with a Jetty. Way stations along the route must be provided every 20 hexes. A Way Station is a hex with a Jetty (either village or jetty named hex as per Mandate 12.1.1). Ocean (or Lake) hexes cost 3 Movement Points for all trade route purposes.</p> <p>It needs to carry with enough provs to travel the distance. A maximum of 5 distinct items may be traded this way. Counters: Naval patrol in the hex of arrival.</p> <p>Note: GM requests that people with Sea Borne Trade Route review the Jetty requirements for SBT. Jetty requirement is modified by Board of Trade and other research topics.</p>

Summary	<i>Trade Route formed across sea for rapid movement of units / goods.</i>
Name	Second Caravan
DL	2
Pre-Req	<u>Traders Guild 20 (Economics research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Upon completing this research, a Traders Guild (20 or 25) allows each of its members to utilize a second caravan every fair month. The second caravan follows all rules that the first caravan follows.</p> <p>If each of the caravans starts from different caravanserai then only 100 wagons are required at each starting point. If both caravans start from the same Caravanserai location then 100 wagons for each caravan is required at that starting location.</p> <p><i>Example: If two caravans start from the same village, then you need 200 wagons at that village.</i></p> <p><i>Example: If a caravan starts from village A and a caravan starts from Village B, then Village A needs 100 wagons and Village B needs 100 wagons.</i></p>
Summary	<i>Guild Master upgrade to Traders Guild 20/25 to allow all members two transfers a fair</i>

Name	Supply
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>Generalship (Leadership)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Mercenaries may be used offensively.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Mercenaries may attack.</i>

Name	Trade Camps
DL	2
Pre-Req	<u>Trade Route (Economics research)</u> OR <u>Board of Trade (Economics research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>Allows a Trade Route or a Board of Trade Trade Route to have one end of a Trade Route's link at a Garrison, Agent or immobile Courier that belongs to your Clan. This does not need to be a village (it does not need to have a Meeting House). Normal rules about paying for route or changing route apply.</p> <p>Note: Garrisons are immobile, similar to villages. This is a way to set up a linked garrison near a friendly player without affecting their Politics / Local Support distance requirements.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows Trade Routes to end in a hex that doesn't have a Meeting House.</i>

Name	Trade Element – Increased Movement
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Adds 4 MV to the Clan's Trade Element.
Summary	<i>Increases Trade Element (e9) movement by +4</i>

Name	Trade Routes
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	<p>1 Depot: People 2250, Eng 7, Stone 10k, Log 500, Parchment 200</p> <p>1 Warehouse: People 2250, Eng 7, Stone 10k, Log 500, Parchment 200</p> <p>1 Waystation: People 50, Eng 2, Logs 100</p>
Leads To	<u>Trade Camps (Economics research)</u>
Description	<p>Each Trade Route needs to be researched separately (<i>but see Board of Trade</i>).</p> <p>Trade Routes are dedicated paths from one player village to another player village that Units may utilize to move more rapidly provided that they meet the requirements for using a Trade Route. Trade Routes may also be used to form Goods Tribe relationships at a distance through the use of Depots.</p> <p>Requirements to Create a Trade Route:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Trade Route must start at a Player Village owned by the Clan with the Research Topic. Village is defined as having a Meeting House. 2. The Trade Route must end at a Player Village owned by the Clan with the Research Topic. (Some research may modify this requirement). Village is defined as having a Meeting House. 3. The Trade Route may be a maximum of 120 MV from a starting village to the

end village. (Some research may modify this requirement)

4. The Trade Route may not cross water (Lakes, Rivers, Ocean) though it may cross Fords.
5. The Trade Route may not cross impassable terrain (High Snow Mountains, etc) though it may cross such terrain if it is through the use of Passes.

How to Create a Trade Route:

1. Designate the Starting Village (Include map Coordinates, AA 0101 for example)
2. Designate the End Village (Include map Coordinates, ZZ 0101 for example)
3. Designate the location of Waystations along the Route. (Include map coordinates)
 - Waystations are explained below under the Waystation section.
 - There must be one Waystation or NPC Site every 40 MV approximately
 - i. *See Partial MV Waystations under the Waystation section.
 - Waystations may not be built closer than 20 MV from another Waystation in the same Trade Route.
 - Waystations are not required to be built at NPC sites with the exception of International Cities which require a Warehouse.
 - *See Construction of Waystations under the Waystation section.
4. Create a map showing the exact route and showing the exact MV cost for that route. Include the location of the Waystations or NPC Sites along the Trade Route.
5. Provide the information above to the GM. The GM will record the information and add the Waystations to the TribeNet map Database.
6. Note: Trade Routes may not be changed normally. However, Trade Routes provided by Board of Trade may be changed as per the Board of Trade research topic.

Requirements to Use a Trade Route:

1. The Unit must belong to the Clan with the Research or have Diplomatic Relations via Corps Diplomatique with the Clan with the Research.
 - a. You can not use a Trade Route belonging to another Clan if you are only Truced with that Clan.
2. A Unit must contain at least 20 Warriors to utilize the Trade Route. Each Warrior must have metal weapons and armour.
3. A Unit may move up to 40 MV per turn along a Trade Route. (This can be modified with other research)

How to Use a Trade Route:

1. Include a Comment in the Orders stating which Unit will be utilizing a Trade Route, which Trade Route it is utilizing (Start and End Points) and if it will be arriving at the end of a trade route or at a waystation.
2. Utilize the GOTO <HexCoordinate> Movement order (if using Automatic Orders) or state to which Hex the unit is moving. The destination for the

move order must be an appropriate Waystation, NPC Site or one of the Player Village end points.

- a.** A Unit may move up to 40 MV along a Trade Route each turn and must end its movement at a Waystation, NPC Site or a Player Village at either end of the Trade Route. *See Partial MV Waystations under the Waystation section.
- 3.** Movement along a Trade Route follows the pre-determined path from the creation of the Trade Route. A unit does not need to follow the path to the very ends and may enter or leave a Trade Route at either of the end points or at a Waystation or NPC Site.

Waystations:

- Waystations are movement end points along a Trade Route. When a Unit moves along a Trade Route, it will always end its turn at an NPC Site, a Waystation or at one of the two Player Villages at the ends of the Trade Route.
- Units on a Waystation are vulnerable (unless the Hex is otherwise combat free)
- Waystations are designated and constructed when the Trade Route is created and are added to the map as a named location. Because of this, other Clans may see the named Hex and know that Units utilizing a Trade Route may end their movement at this hex. When a Trade Route is created, the Workers needed to build the required Waystations must be kept unassigned (to simulate them working on the Waystations) and the Logs must be sent to Usage.
- Waystations may be Player Villages that belongs to the Clan that created the Trade Route.
- Waystations act as if they are Meeting Houses for purposes of controlling hexes. Ie other clans may not build structures or otherwise control the hex via Ford Bloackade.
- Waystations are named, for example, “0123 Waystation”.
- ~~• A single Hex may have Waystations belonging to multiple Clans. (A Hex could be named “0250 and 0900 Waystations” for example. If a single hex becomes overburdened with Waystations, it may be renamed and the information stored in the hex database differently).~~
- NPC Sites do not typically need to be designated with the Waystation name, as they already have the name of the Site. However, International Cities (such as Beijung, Tokyo, Trier) that are to be utilized as a Waystation, must have a Warehouse actually built in their hex.
 - A list of the Warehouses in an International City will be listed along with the special hex information. For instance, when arriving at Tokyo and requesting information about the special hex, the GM will provide the list of Clans with Warehouses in that International City as part of the Special Hex text.
- Defense: Waystations belong to a specific Clan and fortifications built at such a Waystation may only be utilized by that Clan. Unoccupied waystation buildings may be torn down normally. See “Keep” research for further

defensive options.

- **Construction:**

- **1 Waystation: People 50, Eng 2, Logs 100**
 - People should be left unassigned and the Logs transferred to usage.
- Warehouses in an International City must actually be built by Clans using them.
 - **1 Warehouse: People 2250, Eng 7, Stone 10k, Log 500, Parchment 200**
- After a Trade Route is created, new / replacement Waystations may be built by a Unit that is physically in the Hex location that will hold the Waystation.

- **Partial MV Waystation: Sometimes 40 MV will not be perfectly aligned with entrance into a Hex (For instance, 13 PR is 39 MV while 14 PR is 42 MV). As a Unit moves 40 MV, the Waystation will need to be designated on either of these hexes. It is allowable to be either of these hexes (in the example either on the 13th or 14th PR). For example, a Unit utilizing the Trade Route (120 MV in total / 40 PR hexes) with the first Waystation on the 14th PR hex would move 42 MV the first turn to end on that 14th PR Waystation, then would move 39 MV the second turn (to end on the 27th PR) and then finally 39 MV the third turn (to end on the 40th PR end point). Use of these ‘rounding’ issues cannot shorten a trip from 3 turns down to 2 turns, etc.**

- **Destruction and Reconstruction:**

- Waystations may be torn down through standard rules for destroying buildings through reverse Engineering. To destroy a Waystation, any defenders in the hex must be defeated in Combat.
- Upon destruction of a Waystation, the owning Clan is notified that their Waystation on the trade route at that specific location has been destroyed. When a Waystation is destroyed, the Trade Route may still be used provided there are enough stopping points along the route that a Unit may stop at the end of each turn along the Trade Route while moving no further than 40 MV (*See Partial MV Waystation), but the Waystation may not be stopped at since it was destroyed.
- Waystations that have been destroyed may be recreated but it requires a Unit at the location, 50 effective workers and 100 Logs to be used. New Waystations may likewise be built following standard building and Waystation rules.

Depots:

- A Depot allows units from the Clan to form a Goods Tribe relationship from one end of the Trade Route to the other end of the Trade Route.
- Depots do not require additional research. If a Trade Route can be formed, the player may also utilize Depots on that Trade Route.
- **Construction:**
 - Depots may be constructed at either end of a Trade Route at a Player Village but not at a Waystation or NPC Site.

- 1 Depot: People 2250, Eng 7, Stone 10k, Log 500, Parchment 200
- A Unit at the Player Village that holds the Depot may be set as a Goods Tribe by any Unit from the Clan at the other end of the Trade Route, even though they are not in the same / adjacent hexes.
- Arms and Armour must be held by each Unit using a Depot (that is, not held by the GT) – This may only be adjusted from the Depot once every six months and the player must clearly indicate when this happens via Comments in their Orders.
- Population may be transferred from one Unit to another via this Depot relationship but is limited to a total of 300 People per month and includes Slaves, Hirelings, Mercenaries in addition to the regular W/A/I population types.
- **NOTE: Corps Diplomatique does not allow the creation of a Goods Tribe between Clans, only setting up a Trade Route.**

Miscellaneous Information:

- Economic research may be possible to allow the hijacking of a Unit utilizing a Trade Route or other subversive Activities that might be dreamed up by players.

Example of Creation:

I am creating a Trade Route from my village (Parkerville) at BC 0204 to my village (Williansburghough) at BD 0204. This is a total of 90 MV. Waystations are at BC 0904 (21 MV from Parkerville) and BC 2304 (42 MV from Waystation BC 0904 – see Partial MV Waystation, and 30 MV from Williansburghough). An NPC site (Silk Exporter) is located at BC 3004. Here is the map (Map inserted in email).

Converting old Trade Route to New Trade Route: Over the next 6 turns, contact the GM to reform the Trade Route utilizing the new rules regarding Waystations. The Beginning and End villages should remain the same but the route may be changed to take into account the expanded use of the Trade Route rules.

Summary	<i>Allows long distance rapid transport of goods / units between two points.</i>
----------------	--

Name	Traders Guild 20
DL	1
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Second Caravan (Economics research) Traders Guild 25 (Economics research)
Description	Description

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

n

The effect of a Traders Guild is to allow a limited degree of short- range transfers between Guild Members' units along nominated **Guild Routes**, which represent well travelled paths amongst a stable trading community. Such transfers are facilitated by locals, i.e. no player element needs to be assigned or moved.

Formation and Governance

Anyone who completes the research may choose to become a Guild Master by starting a Guild (done by informing the GM by email). Guilds are always public: the formation of new ones will be published in TribeNews and currently active ones will be listed on public TN portals. Membership of any Guild is limited to 10 Clans in total, including the Guild Master. A Clan may be a member of only one Guild of each type (Traders Guild 20 and Traders Guild 25 are considered the same type, Bargemen's Guild is a different type). A Clan may only be a member of one **Exclusive Guild**, such as Exotic Weavers Guild, though Traders Guild is not an exclusive Guild. Membership is by invitation from the Guild Master to anyone they choose, cc'd to the GM: a clear acceptance to the offer must be sent to the Guild Master, cc'd to the GM. Players may seek membership once the formal invitation is issued. The Guild Master is not obliged to accept any particular applicant for membership. It is incumbent on the Guild Master to maintain the list of the membership in their Guild. Players may leave a Guild at any time by notifying the Guild Master by email, cc'd to the GM. Benefits to the departing player lapse effective from the date of the resignation email. Players may be voted out of the Guild via 60% of membership in favour (the Guild Master counts as two members with two votes).

Any Guild may choose to write a **Constitution**, which must be agreed with the GM. Any such document is always public knowledge and must be made available on public TN portals. It is the Guild Master's responsibility to ensure that this happens.

Should a Guild Master lose the capacity to run a Guild, a deputy can be appointed by the GM from amongst remaining Guild members. This deputy may continue to run the Guild as previously run but must immediately undertake any skill development and research necessary to support it. If no-one is able to act as deputy the Guild is dissolved and all benefits are lost

Operation and benefits

A Guild Route runs between two Caravanserais (Eng 2, requires 200 logs installed at rate of 2/person) belonging to member Clans of the Guild (both Caravanserais may be owned by the same Guild member). A Guild Route consists of up to **20 contiguous land hexes** (including the destination but not the start, so adjacent hexes represent a 1-hex Guild Route). Rivers, Hill and Low Mountain hexes may be freely crossed by a Guild Route. Lake, Ocean or High Mountain are impassable to a Guild Route. Each Guild Route must be individually approved by the GM. Any member creating a new Guild Route must provide the GM with a graphical map showing the location of the units with Caravanserais and the proposed path in hexes. *NB Guild Route details are*

between the individual members involved and the GM. The Guild Master and other members need not have knowledge of all Guild Routes.

During Trade Fair months (Turns 04 and 10) each Guild Member may conduct a single Guild Trade along an approved Guild Route. Such a Guild Trade is in addition to the normal fair; it does not count toward trade fair limits in any way. A Guild member may receive goods from as many members as are in their Guild, but may send goods only from a single Caravanserai.

For each member of the Guild, the Guild Master receives 5 Gold annually (from locals), received on Turn 1 of each game year. For computational purposes the total membership in the Guild is determined at the time the preceding turn 12 TribeNews is published. The Guild Master must show this remittance as a Transfer.

Initial limits

1. A Guild member may possess at most 2 Caravanserais at any one time.
2. A Guild member may possess at most 2 approved Guild Routes at any one time.
3. A Guild member may nominate a new Guild Route only once per game year. If already at the limit for Guild Routes, such a new proposal must nominate which route it is replacing.
4. A single Guild Trade may have at most 8 distinct items (plus barrels/containers for liquids). Only one of these may be a research item; otherwise items must be available on the public fair list or be an Exotic good such as Jade, Tea, Frankincense, etc. Books, Artefacts, Relics, Scrolls, people in any form (population, slaves, locals, hirelings, mercenaries, etc.) and boats or ships of any kind cannot be traded in this way.
5. The total quantity of goods transferred in a single Guild Trade is limited to the capacity of **100 Wagons** (it is up to the player to calculate this – if the GM discovers an error the player will be notified, a second error and the player is forever barred from any Guild membership). Wagons capable of carrying the quantity of goods transferred must be held at the sending Caravanserai, but do not need to be moved.
6. Animals may be traded this way at a rate of 2 wagons = 2 elephants, 5 horses/cattle/dogs (untrained only), 20 goats (NB the equivalent wagons still need to exist in the sending Caravanserai).
7. Caravanserais are buildings and must be built in a village.

Possible Future developments

Depending on the popularity of this topic and GM workload, there may be considerable scope for additional research topics to improve member benefits, e.g. by increasing the number of Caravanserais belonging to a Guild Member, or quantity of goods (not

	<p><i>number of items) transferred in a Guild Trade, or possibly even the number of Guild Routes a single member may possess, preferential rates at Trade Fairs or indeed just about anything else you can think of! Once multiple Guilds exist there may be scope to form one or more Associations of Guild Masters with the power to set rules affecting all Guilds whose Masters join the Association, and which may be able to offer additional benefits. The details of any of these ideas (or any others you may have!) are yet to be negotiated with the GM, however all agreed research topics relating to developing Traders Guild benefits will always be on the public Research List.</i></p> <p>Note: No books</p>
Summary	<i>Guild, 10 members may join, allows one long distance transport of goods per fair</i>

Name	Traders Guild 25
DL	3
Pre-Req	Traders Guild 20 (Economics) Politics 10 (Skill) Economics 10 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A clan with highly developed Pol skill influences locals out to a longer range than one without. Effect is the same as TG20 but with a 25-hex range. Any Guild Master completing this research automatically upgrades the trading range of any Guild member who also possess Pol 10.</p> <p><i>25 hexes is the maximum possible range of a Guild Trade.</i></p>
Summary	<i>Increases distance of transport for Traders Guild 20.</i>

Name	Trusted Maps
DL	3
Pre-Req	Alliance MotC (Diplomacy research) Or Alliance MotC (Leadership research)
Recipe	N/A
Description	<p>To Benefit from this research, a Clan must:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Have completed Alliance MotC Research. 2) Must have a declared alliance in which at least one member has the Sea Borne Trade Routes research. 3) Must have established Diplomatic Relations with the clan that completed Sea Borne Trade Routes research. <p>Any fleet in the Tribe holding this research has their MV increased by 50% when using Sea Borne Trade Routes. If combined with other research, this bonus is</p>

	<p>additive, not cumulative.</p> <p>Note: A Fleet may only gain movement bonuses from three research topics simultaneously. Examples include, but are not limited to, Board of Trade, Fast Fleet, Trusted Maps, etc.</p>
Summary	<i>Speeds up naval movement along Sea Borne Trade Routes</i>

Name	Toll Gate
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Toll Gate: People 700, Eng 6, Stone 2000, Logs 500, Iron 500
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A City with a stone wall surrounding it may build toll gates (2 required). These toll gates enable the gathering of taxes from the locals.</p> <p>Once a City has two (2) Toll Gates, it gains either Gold 100 or Coin 1000 immediately and every twelve months.</p> <p>Only Cities may have Toll Gates. Toll Gates may only be built for the Research Holder's City.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Toll Gate, Build two toll gates and get Gold/Coin yearly</i>

Name	Wholesale Trading
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Tribe that has completed Wholesale Trading has its Fair Multiplier doubled. The number of Fair Slots remain the same (10 buy/sell slots) but the quantities for each slot are doubled (If you could normally buy 10 Hives, with Wholesale Trading you could buy 20 Hives).</p> <p>In the event that multiple research topics or special hexes modify the Fair Multiplier, Wholesale Trading doubles the Fair Multiplier to a maximum Fair Multiplier of x10.</p> <p>For instance, if you have a City with Trading Post, your Fair Multiplier is x3. With Wholesale Trading, it would be x6. If the City with Trading Post also has a Castle, it would have a fair multiplier of 1 x 3 (City w/ TP) x 2 (Castle) x 2 (Wholesale Trading) = x12 however the maximum Fair Multiplier is x10, so it would round down to x10.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Increases Fair Multiplier by x2</i>

Engineering

Name	Barbican
DL	4
Pre-Req	Drawbridge (Engineering research) Gatehouse (Engineering research)
Recipe	Barbican: Eng 10, Stone 4000, Logs 500, Iron 500, Silver 10000
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Barbican commonly was made up of 4 Stone Towers with a seamless structure in-between the towers, which housed a garrison, the winch mechanisms for the drawbridge and portcullises, its own wells, etc. In effect a Keep that defended the gate. It takes 4 x damage to standard Stone Tower to destroy them.</p> <p>Adds + 4 to the effective Archery Skill for defenders in combat. (This incorporates the +2 from Drawbridge)</p> <p>Barbicans may be built for other Clans. Barbicans may be used by other Clans in their villages.</p> <p>Barbican solved the problem of defence by turning the Gatehouse into a Keep-like structure that had 2 sets of gates and portcullises (an steel-reinforced wooden latticed gate - the lattice "holes" were big enough to put a polearm through, but not a body part), a common tactic was to let the enemy in by the first, putting up a weak defence and letting them "break through" the outer gates.</p> <p>Then when their initial press of enemy infantry was in the entrance tunnel/passage, both portcullises would slam shut at the front and the back for the entrance tunnel trapping the enemy. Thus allowing the defenders to slaughter the enemy troops trapped in-between the front and back portcullises through the murder-holes in the roof of the passage-way and firing arrows in through the rear portcullis. The enemy army would also be powerless to stop the slaughter and (as was intended) would suffer a morale loss from having seen their best troops (who had led the charge) slaughtered in front of them.</p> <p>Proposed by Paul Malone</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - New Building - Barbican, Bonus to Archery when defending</i>

Name	Bridge
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Bridge: People 6,000, Eng 6, Stn 2, Stone 30,000

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To:	Fortified Bridge (Engineering research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Improvement (Bridge) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Bridge is built on a hexside that contains either a River or a Canal. ○ A Bridge allows passage from one hex to another across a river / canal similar to a Ford but without the +1 MV cost. ○ Reduced Movement Value Cost: Moving across a bridge into an adjacent hex is done at a reduced cost. A Bridge hexside counts as having Road – Stone. ○ Ship Travel: Blocks Ship travel similar to a Ford. ○ Combat Bonus: Similar to defending across a Ford, defending across a Bridge provides a +4 effective skill level to Archery and Combat. • Stand-alone Bridge: A bridge that does not have a unit (garrison, element, etc) from the owning clan on either one of its hex sides and does not have any other protection (such as guards or mercenaries) is able to be occupied by any Clan or Tribe. They gain all bonuses available from a Bridge. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Limited Hexside: May only be built across a River or Canal. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat: When in combat defending across a bridge, include the Bridge in your list of Buildings similar to Pass or Ford. • An unprotected/occupied Bridge may be destroyed following standard reverse Engineering rules. • TN Edition: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The GM will need to add a Ford to this hexside on both adjacent hexes. • The GM will need to add a Stone Road to this hexside on both adjacent hexes. • A Note on both hexes will need to be added stating “Bridge <Direction>” • Ship Travel Blocking: This is only valid in TN Classic. • TN2020: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Bridge will be added on both hexes as an improvement. The code will take care of all additional avenues. • A Bridge will not block ship travel in TN2020.
Summary	<i>New Improvement – Bridge, spans a river or canal allowing movement.</i>
Name	Canals
DL	7

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Canal (One Hex-Side): People 40000 in flat or swamp Canal (One Hex-Side): People 50000 in all other terrain. Remove Ford (One Hex-Side): People 1000 w/ Tools, Wagons 10, Cattle/Horses: 20
Leads To	Superior Canal (Engineering research) Great Canal (Engineering research)
Description	<p>Note: Cannot build a Canal adjacent to Mountains.</p> <p>A Canal is treated (and shown) as a River in all respects but must start from a body of water (River, Lake or Ocean). 40,000 AM's can turn a hexside (30,000-40,000 yards) into a Canal in flat terrain or swamp (a single Prairie hex next to the hexside is all that is needed to be regarded as flat), 50,000 in all other terrain.</p> <p>Where flat abuts other terrain the higher manpower cost applies. A shovel doubles output. Canals are 40' wide. Fords cannot be left in the newly created Canal as part of their construction.</p> <p>To convert a Ford into a Canal (that is, the Ford is removed) - 1000 Workers with tools (either Picks, Shovels, or Mattocks or combination), 10 Wagons, 20 Cattle/Horses can convert a Ford into a River/Canal.</p> <p>Destruction: Canals may be destroyed through standard reverse Engineering practices. A unit in a Canal Hex may seek to destroy the canal in the hex through reverse Engineering. As with any reverse Engineering, the cost to remove a structure is one-half the cost to construct it and can utilize the same tools with the same benefits as building the road in the first place. Reverse Engineering a canal requires Eng=3. When attempting reverse Engineering of a canal, the chief must consult the Canal topic to determine the number AM's that were required to build the canal in the first place. The chief must then deploy AM's totaling one-half of this amount rounded up. The chief ordering the reverse Engineering is responsible for performing these calculations and noting them as a comment to the GM. If there is an enemy unit in the hex destruction of a canal may require the defeat of this unit.</p>
Summary	<i>Spend lots of work to create an artificial river hex side</i>

Name	Colosseum
DL	8
Pre-Req	Dungeon (Engineering)
Recipe	Colosseum: People 2000, Eng 8, Stones 10000
Description	<p>Once per Year 500 Slaves may entertain a Tribe. 100-300 will die. General Morale will increase 0.05.</p> <p>This structure may be built in other Clans' villages and used by that Clan. A Clan</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	may only gain the bonus once per year.
Summary	<i>Yearly slave fights to boost Morale</i>

Name	Crenellations
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 yard of Crenellation: Eng 6, People 6, Stone 30
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fortification Value: Villages or Settlements with this building gain +5% to Fortification Value. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adequate Coverage: One yard of Crenellations must exist in the location for every yard of wall to gain full benefit. In the case of partial coverage, the bonus to Fortification Value is proportionate to the coverage of the Crenellations relative to wall length. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grandfathered: Any and all villages or settlements occupied by a unit from a Tribe with this research automatically gains yards of Crenellations equal to the longest wall type. <u>This Grandfathering takes into account villages occupied by Tribe units as of 1/818.</u> Height: Crenellations continue to add their bonus even if the Stone Wall height is increased later. For example, if 120 yards of 10' stone wall exist and 120 yards of Crenellations exist, and the village upgrades the stone wall to 120 yards of 15' stone wall, the 120 yards of crenellations are still valid.
Summary	<i>New Building: Crenellations, Combat Boost - +5% to Fortification value</i>

Name	Demolitionists I, II, III
DL	5,5,5
Pre-Req	Demolitionists I: Blasting Jars (Alchemy research) Demolitionists II: Demolitionists I (Alchemy research) Demolitionists III: Demolitionists II (Alchemy research)
Recipe	N/A
Description	<p>Workers using this research may be equipped with multiple Blasting Jars (or better) each.</p> <p>Benefit:</p> <p>1) Each level of Demolitionists allows the use of three additional Blasting Jars (or</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>better).</p> <p>For example: 1 Worker without this research may use 1 Blasting Jar and count as 10 Effective Workers. 1 Worker with Demolitionists I may use 4 Blasting Jars and count as 40 effective workers. With Demolitionists II, the 1 Worker may use 7 Blasting Jars and count as 70 Effective Workers. With Demolitionists III, the 1 Worker may use 10 Blasting Jars and count as 100 Effective Workers.</p> <p>Additionally, each level of Demolitionists improves the base “Defenders Defensive Factor bonus reduction” of Siege Cannons by 1%.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows Workers to use multiple Blasting Jars/Powder, also decreases Fortifications</i>

Name	Destroy Roads
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Skills: Trail Road (Eng 3), Dirt Road (Eng 6), Stone Road (Eng 9)
Description	<p>As with any great advancement of civilization, there comes time when others want to destroy it. Roads are no exception.</p> <p>Workers with Destroy Roads gain an extra +1 AM (1 worker counts as 2 workers) towards Reverse Engineering (Destroying) Roads.</p> <p>Joint Project: Workers in a Joint Project with a Unit that knows Destroys Roads gain +0.5 AM instead (1 worker counts as 1.5 workers).</p>
Summary	<i>Assists Units in destroying and removing roads.</i>

Name	Drawbridge
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Drawbridge: People 55, Engineering 10, Logs 100, Iron/Brass/Bronze 50, Coal 400, Rope 10
Leads To	<u>Barbican (Engineering research)</u>
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>A wooden reinforced bridge that can be lowered to form a ramp over the Ditch or Moat, eliminating the need for a permanent crossing over the Ditch or Moat. Adds + 2 to the effective Archery Skill for defenders in combat.</p> <p>Drawbridge may be built for other Clans. Drawbridges in another Clan's village may</p>

	be used by that Clan.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - New Building - Drawbridge, Bonus to Archery when defending</i>

Name	Dungeon
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Dungeon: People 400, Eng 7, Stones 2000
Leads To	Colosseum (Engineering research) Treachery (Torture research)
Description	<p>200 Slaves per Dungeon may be held requiring only 1 Overseer (but requires a Whip). Prerequisite for some Torture and other research topics. Can only be built in established Villages.</p> <p>This structure may be built in other Clans' villages and used by that Clan.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Dungeon - Boost to Torture</i>

Name	Engineering 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Engineering +1 (example from Eng 10 to Eng 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Engineering specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Engineering Specialists: There are no benefits to having Engineering specialists at this time. • There is currently no benefit for Engineering skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Engineering, Specialists</i>

Name	Expert Diggers
DL	2

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>All workers who are performing digging based activities count as an extra worker. One Active / Warrior performing a digging action would count as 2 AM. Specialists (such as Engineering Specialists) performing a digging action with Expert Diggers would count as 3 AM not 4.</p> <p>Example Digging Activities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Engineering / Moats • Engineering / Ditches • Engineering / Canals • Engineering / Fords • Pottery / Clay • Gather / Sand <p>This has no effect on Mining.</p> <p>When utilizing Expert Diggers for a Digging Action show as Effective Workers. 100 Actives performing a Digging based action would be shown as 200 Effective Workers.</p>
Summary	<i>Efficiency boost to Digging projects</i>

Name	Fords
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	<p>Ford to River: Eng 3, People 500 w/ Tools, Wagons 20, Cattle/Horses 10</p> <p>River to Ford: Eng 6, People 2000 w/ Tools, Wagons 20, Cattle/Horses 10</p>
Description	<p><u>Fords to Rivers (Eng3 if using Joint Project)</u> 500 Workers with tools (either picks, shovels, or mattocks or combination), 20 Wagons, 10 Cattle/Horses can convert a Ford into a River.</p> <p><u>Rivers to Fords (Eng6 if using Joint Project)</u> 2000 Workers with tools (either picks, shovels, or mattocks or combination), 20 Wagons, 10 Cattle/Horses can create a Ford in a River. Cannot be done adjacent to Mountains.</p> <p>Note: while both of these take effect at <u>the end</u> of the turn unless you are the builder you should not assume they will be present during your MV Orders. For example, if your MV is processed before a Ford is built (by another Clan) no Ford will be shown at the time of your MV and you will not be able to cross. In short you should not make your MV depend upon the completion of a Ford in the turn.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Allows creation and removal of Fords across rivers / canals</i>
---------	--

Name	Fences
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Fence: People 50, Eng 4, Logs 100
Leads To	Improved Fence Builders (Engineering research) Improved Fence Builders (Herding research)
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>Holds 50 Horse/Cattle/Camel, or 100 Goats. May be built for other Tribes/Clans. Fences are considered to be outside Village walls (and may be built independent of Village for example, in an adjacent hex).</p> <p>Fences is a research that increases Herder Efficiency. Maximum Bonus: +1 Herder Efficiency MaxFences: #Goats/100 + #Cattle/50 + #Horses/50 + #Camels/50 Bonus: # Fences / Max Fences Required Fences for Maximum Bonus: MaxFences</p> <p>If you have 1000 goats, 500 cattle and 500 horses, you normally require $50+50+50 = 150$ maximum herders. Your maximum fences are $1000/100 + 500/50 + 500/50 = 30$ Fences. If you have 30 fences, your bonus is $30 / 30 = +1.0$ Herder efficiency. You normally require 90 herders, now it is $90 / 2 = 45$ herders required. If you only had 15 fences, your bonus would be $15 / 30 = +0.50$ Herder efficiency. You normally require 90 herders, now it is $90 / 1.5 = 60$ herders required.</p>
Summary	<i>Reduces number of herders required.</i>

Name	Fen Drainage
DL	5
Pre-Req	Canals (Engineering)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>With the knowledge gained under Fen Drainage; and by means of a system of canals, ditches and drains; it is possible to drain a Swamp hex, turning it into a more useful piece of land. The target hex must be adjacent to at least one body of fresh water (River or Lake). 40,000 AM's will create the network of ditches required to drain away sufficient water that will convert the Swamp hex, into a Prairie hex. The process of draining requires a year after the ditches have been dug.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	A shovel doubles output.
	Fen Drainage cannot be used to drain a Swamp Hex that is adjacent to salt water.
Summary	<i>Turn Swamp hex into a Prairie hex</i>

Name	Fortified Bridge
DL	6
Pre-Req	Bridge (Engineering research)
Recipe	<p>1 Fortified Bridge: People 9,000, Eng 8, Stn 4, Mtl 4, Stone 45,000, Log 500, Coal 25,000, Iron 5,000</p> <p>1 Fortified Bridge (Upgrade from Bridge): People 3,000, Eng 8, Stn 4, Mtl 4, Stone 15,000, Log 500, Coal 25,000 and Iron 5,000</p>
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Improvement (Fortified Bridge) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Fortified Bridge is built on a hexside that contains either a River or a Canal. ○ Crossing River/Canal: A Fortified Bridge allows passage from one hex to another across a river / canal similar to a Ford but without the +1 MV cost. ○ Reduced Movement Value Cost: Moving across a bridge into an adjacent hex is done at a reduced cost. A Bridge hexside counts as having Road – Stone. ○ Combat Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Similar to defending across a Ford, defending across a Bridge provides a +4 effective skill level to Archery and Combat. ▪ Gatehouse: Additionally, as a Gatehouse is built into either end of the Bridge, defending across a bridge gains an additional +2 to Archery skill. ○ Ship Travel: A Fortified Bridge blocks ship travel along a river similar to a Ford in Classic TN. Once TN2020 goes into effect, the river will be fully passable and a chain may be raised or lowered to allow/stop untruced clans' ships from passing down the river. The Barrier chain may only be operated ○ Toll Gate: A unit belonging to the controlling Clan at a Fortified Bridge may gain either Gold 50 or Coin 500 once per year on Month 1 of each year. This is in addition to any benefits from normal Toll Gates. • Stand-alone Fortified Bridge: A bridge that does not have a unit (garrison, element, etc) from the owning clan on either one of its hexes and does not have any other protection (such as guards or mercenaries) is able to be occupied by any Clan or Tribe. They gain all bonuses available from a Fortified Bridge. • Settlement/Village Bridge: A bridge that is built to include a settlement / village on one of its hexes is considered to be part of the fortifications for that settlement / village and is considered to be manned by that settlement / village.

Requirements:**Restrictions:**

- Limited Hexside: May only be built across a River or Canal.

Notes:

- **Flavor Text:** Fortifications were built to guard access to the bridge, control river traffic and to enable the charging of tolls on important roads crossing rivers. The bridges were often part of the defences of settlements and it was important from a defensive perspective that the bridge did not allow attacking enemies to break in. In addition to their genuine protective and defensive functions they also played a symbolic and architectural role. Often these towers were the first public buildings that the travellers saw when approaching the city. The fortified bridge combines the structures and benefits of a Gatehouse, Watchtower and Toll Gate in addition to the existing movement bonus from the Bridge. The inclusion of a massive iron chain to prevent river passage is the final part. This chain is able to be raised to the surface of the river and prevents any vessels from passing. The only way to bypass this is to capture the central tower (eliminate any controlling unit occupying the hexes on either side of the bridge).
- **Combat:** When in combat defending across a bridge, include the Fortified Bridge in your list of Buildings similar to Pass or Ford.
- Fortified Bridges may be built for other Clans and may be operated by other clans, regardless if they have the Fortified Bridge research topic.
- Unoccupied Fortified Bridges may be destroyed following standard reverse Engineering rules.
- **TN Edition:**
 - **TN Classic:**
 - The GM will need to add a Ford to this hexside on both adjacent hexes.
 - The GM will need to add a Stone Road to this hexside on both adjacent hexes.
 - A Note on both hexes will need to be added stating “Fortified Bridge <Direction>”
 - Ship Travel Blocking as Ford: This is only valid in TN Classic.
 - **TN2020:**
 - A Fortified Bridge will be added on both hexes as an improvement. The code will take care of all additional avenues.
 - A Fortified Bridge will be able to lower its chain to block all untraced clans ships from using the river or to raise its chain to allow all clans’ ships to use the river.

Summary	<i>New Improvement – Fortified Bridge, large upgrade to a standard bridge.</i>
---------	--

Name	Gate House
------	-------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Gatehouse: People 1250, Stone 5000, Logs 500, Iron 100, Coal 400
Leads To	Barbican (Engineering research)
Description	<p>The Gatehouse requires 5000 Stone, 500 Logs, 100 Iron and 400 Coal. Logs may be substituted for stone at normal rates for buildings and may only be installed in 20' Stone Walls or better.</p> <p>Adds + 2 to the effective Archery Skill for defenders in combat.</p> <p>This structure may be built in other Clans' villages and used by that Clan.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - New Building - Gate House, Bonus to Archery when defending</i>

Name	Great Canal
DL	8
Pre-Req	Canal (Engineering research) Research 10 (Group C skill) Literacy 6 (Group B skill) Home City established University (Building) Library (Building)
Recipe	Per Canal / Ford / Superior Canal
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Note: Cannot build a Canal adjacent to Mountains.</p> <p>The Great Canal is a long term mega-project that can be performed in and around a Home City.</p> <p>The Grand Canal is a project that spans multiple hex sides ranging away from the Home City but can be completed with Units inside the Home City but at a reduced efficiency. The hex where the workers are to be considered to be digging must be reachable by river travel (Barge/Longship if going over fords, any boat if no fords) and the Unit must have adequate ships on hand to carry the workers, animals and tools.</p> <p>Efficiency: $110\% - (\text{Hex Side Traveled}) * 5\% + \text{Government Level} * 5\%$, maximum 100%</p> <p><i>Example 1: if building a Canal in a hex that requires traveling 4 hex sides to reach the hex, and the Home City is at Government Level 0, the efficiency would be $110 - (4) * 5 = 100\%$ efficient. 100 workers would do the work of 100.</i></p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p><i>Example 2: if building a Canal in a hex that requires traveling 8 hex sides (about 4 hexes away) to reach the hex, and the Home City is at Government Level 1, the efficiency would be $110 - (8)*5 + 1*5 = 75\%$ efficient. 100 workers would do the work of 75.</i></p> <p><i>Example 3: If building a Canal in a hex that is 20 (about 10 hexes) distance away and the Home City is at Government Level 5, the efficiency would be $110 - 20*5 + 5*5 = 35\%$ efficient. 100 workers would do the work of 35. If the Home City were only GL 2, then it would be $110 - 20*5 + 2*5 = 20\%$ efficient.</i></p>
Summary	<i>Allows creation of Canals at a distance from the workers.</i>

Name	Improved Fence Builders
DL	2
Pre-Req	Fences (Engineering research) Or Fences (Herding research)
Recipe	1 Fence: People 5, Eng 8, Logs 100
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>The Tribe and its elements are more efficient at building Fences. When building a fence, a Unit with Improved Fence Builder may use a new Recipe to build the Fence.</p>
Summary	<i>Increases the efficiency of building fences...</i>

Name	Improved Stable Builders
DL	2
Pre-Req	Stables (Herding research) Or Stables (Engineering research)
Recipe	1 Stables: People 5, Eng 8, Logs 100
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>The Tribe and its elements are more efficient at building Stables. When building a Stable, a Unit with Improved Stable Builders may use a new Recipe to build the Stable.</p>
Summary	<i>Increases the efficiency of building Stables</i>

Name	Island Fortress
DL	9

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	Government Level 2 (Politics research) Castle (Politics research) Engineering 10 (Skill) Stonework 10 (Skill)
Recipe	<p>Island Fortress 10’:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 600k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 3M, Relic 1, Watch Towers 18 <p>Upgrade to Island Fortress 15’:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 900k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 4.5M, Relic 1 <p>Upgrade to Island Fortress 20’:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 1200k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 6M, Relic 1 <p>Upgrade to Island Fortress 25’:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 1500k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 7.5M, Relic 1 <p>Upgrade to Island Fortress 30’:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 1800k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 9M, Relic 1 <p>Additionally, the Island Fortress requires at least a single Gatehouse.</p> <p>*Calculations: 10’ is 0.5M per hexside, 15’ is a further 0.75M per hexside, 20’ is a further 1M per hexside, 25’ is a further 1.25M per hexside and 30’ is a further 1.5M per hexside.</p>
Description	<p>An Island Fortress may only be constructed in a single Hex that is surrounded on all sides by water, including Ocean, Lake or River. Additionally, the Hex must contain a Home City and Castle. Additional defenses may be built per standard wall rules (higher walls, crenellations, towers, gate houses, etc) but these must be built separately from such defenses held by the City itself. In addition, to get the same effect, the defenses must be built six times (one per Hex Side).</p> <p>Upon completion, the Island Fortress is completed. A wall of the appropriate size loops around the entire island.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Free Range Herding: A single Tribe or Unit in the Island Fortress has its Locals (Auxiliaries) set to 75% of the number needed to herd the current Herd held by that Unit or its Goods Tribe on Turn 1 of each year. This Unit may have no other Locals (Auxiliaries). Locals provide 75% of the herding requirements as payment for the protection the Island Fortress offers. 2. Clan gains 60 Gold and 20 ‘Lots’ of a Desired Commodity immediately and once per year from then on out. (A Lot is the number listed in the Commodities section of the Mandate). 3. Seeking: Effective Seeking Skill is +5 for units seeking inside the Island Fortress 4. Blockade: Units that are untruced with the Clan may not enter the territory inside the Island Fortress without assault or sieging the island itself as if it were a fortified village. 5. Combat: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Island Fortress’ first line of defense is on the beach forcing the

	<p>attacking force to make an amphibious landing within range of the defending archers. +4 to Terrain Proficiency when defending the site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Standard Fortification and Siege rules apply except that the City may perform all activities (such as farming, hunting, etc). 3. Siege Equipment: Only ship mounted Siege Equipment may be brought against the Island Fortress unless the siege engine is brought onto land within range of archers. Personnel assigned to man siege equipment in such situations suffer triple potential casualties. 4. Siege Resilience: Only research level Siege equipment may have an effect against the Island Fortress. Additionally, siege equipment has only half the effect against the Island Fortress walls. 5. Local Militia: Any combat conducted in defense of the Island Fortress gains 20% additional Militia. 6. Outer Wall: The Island Fortress' outer wall may be abandoned and defense setup in normal village/city walls. <p>Note: Multi-hex islands would require Island Fortress Expanded I research at DL2 and would allow an Island Fortress up to 7 hexes. Island Fortress Expanded II research at DL 2 (requires Expanded I) would allow an Island Fortress up to 19 hexes. Expanded III would allow up to 37 hexes. Expanded IV would allow up to 61 hexes. Finally, the largest Island Fortress would be Expanded V and would allow up to 91 hexes. Anything further falls under Great Wall research topic.</p> <p>The Island Fortress may be built for other Clans but that Clan must have a Home City and a Castle in that hex.</p>
--	---

Name	Keep
DL	7
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	* See Description
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A basic keep requires 4000 stones per 1000 square yards capacity for a Keep1 (1 layer). A Keep may have additional layers of stones added to provide thicker, harder to penetrate walls. Each additional layer of stones uses the same quantity of stones as the original (8000 per 1000 square for a Keep2 etc). If a keep with a thicker wall is expanded, all layers must be increased. In keeps <u>half normal village capacity restraints apply</u> and each 1000lbs of non animal/person requires 5 square yards. You may not house Elephants, Cattle or Goats in a Keep. Capacity cales relate to the Keep OR to normal fortified defence, not both. Your Keep will be shown as capacity. For example, 4000Keep1 means it is a single thickness Keep capable of storing 4000 sq yards capacity.</p> <p>* you may choose to enter the Keep at the start of any combat turn – but if you do you give up all external buildings – so no Refining etc. And you may not return to use external defences on subsequent continuos combat turns. The Keep is perhaps</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>more useful for supporting smaller units in positions away from the main Tribe/population base. Remember that the Keep is still subject to siege.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Waystations: A Keep may be built at a Waystation. Keeps at Waystations may be used by the Clan that setup the Waystation or by any friendly Clan at the Waystation. See Utilization. Only one Clan may occupy a single Keep in a turn. A Waystation may have more than one Keep. Keeps at Waystations may be torn down following normal rules. • Utilization: A Keep that is part of a Waystation may only be used by another Clan that is part of a Trade Guild, Merchant Navy Guild, Bargemens Guild or via Corps Diplomatie of which the builder of the Keep is a member. <p>Keeps may be built for other Clans.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - New Building - Keep, allows protection at home or waystations</i>

Name	Mining Ladder
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	People 15, Wd3, Mtl3, Log 4, Iron 25, Coal 150
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>(Also Under Mining, Metalwork and Woodwork)</p> <p>A Mining Ladder provides a Bonus to Mining output equal to +100% to ten (10) miners and a Bonus to Digging output (Clay, canals, sand, moats, etc) equal to +100% to ten (10) diggers. This is cumulative with other implements (Picks, Shovels, Ore Carts, Seam Wedges, etc). This bonus is additive, not compounded.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>5 Miners with 1 Mining Ladder would count as 10 Miners 10 Miners with 1 Mining Ladder would count as 20 Miners 15 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders would count as 30 Miners 20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders would count as 40 Miners 20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders and 20 Picks would count as 60 Miners 20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders, 2 Ore Carts and 20 Picks would count as 80 Miners</p> <p>These wood and metal ladders and ramps are used to for more advanced vertical mining and to facilitate the movement of personnel and ore up mine shafts when they occur due to following veins. These would not be standard wood ladders or ramps but would have iron reinforcement to handle the added weight of the ore and wagons. We have called it Mining Ladders research to shorten the name but it would really be both ladders and ramps. 1 Mining Ladder weighs 50 lbs.</p>

Summary	<i>New Item - Mining Ladder, Boost to number of mining effective workers, serves 10</i>
Name	Outpost
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Outpost: People 500, Eng 9, Stn 8, Stones 8000, Logs 200
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Fortified towers for lookouts to help in the protection against being surprised by invaders</p> <p>An Element containing at least 20 Warriors – cannot be overrun via Locate, and will report Locating scouts – but cannot Suppress enemy Scouts either – must be within 6 hexes of the main Village.</p> <p>Can be Assaulted as a 15 Stone Wall or Sieged as normal attack. However, the Outpost may build 20 etc Stone Walls (see also Keep) for better protection in combat. It cannot build towers of any sort.</p> <p>This structure may not be used by Clans without the research topic.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Outpost, Outpost prevents overrun via Local and reports locating scouts</i>

Name	Pass
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Remove Pass: Eng 3, People 500 w/ Tools, Wagons 20, Cattle/Horses 10 Add Pass: Eng 6, People 2000 w/ Tools, Wagons 20, Cattle/Horses 10
Description	<p><u>Remove Pass (Eng3 if using Joint Project)</u> 500 Workers with tools (either picks, shovels, or mattocks or combination), 20 Wagons, 10 Cattle/Horses can remove a Pass.</p> <p><u>Add Pass (Eng6 if using Joint Project)</u> 2000 Workers with tools (either picks, shovels, or mattocks or combination), 20 Wagons, 10 Cattle/Horses can create a Pass on a Mountain or Volcano hexside. Cannot create a Pass on an Alps hexside.</p> <p>Note: while both of these take effect at <u>the end</u> of the turn unless you are the builder you should not assume they will be present during your MV Orders. For example, if your MV is processed before a Pass is built (by another Clan) no Pass will be shown at the time of your MV and you will not have the reduced MV cost. In short you should not make your MV depend upon the completion of a Pass in the turn.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows creation and removal of Passes across mountain / volcano Hexsides</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Roads
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Road Segment (Hex Side, both directions): Various Skills: Trail Road (Eng 3), Dirt Road (Eng 6, Stn 2), Stone Road (Eng 9, Stn 4)
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>This research topic enables the Clan to build Roads between a Village and a set location (Village, City, Special Hex, Mine, immobile unit).</p> <p>There are three levels of Roads:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Trails: Small worn paths that are well traveled. Workers compact the earth to create relatively dry marching paths. 2) Dirt Roads: Raised roads made of dirt, sand, salt and some gravel. 3) Stone Roads: Paved roads of stone tiles. <p>Requirements::</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Reach: Roads may be built in the hex that the unit is in and any adjacent hexes. 2) Pass / Ford / River: Roads may not be built across a hex side that already has a River, a Ford or a Pass. 3) Resources: Resources must be available in the hex that the unit is located or in the hex that the road is being constructed. 4) Coordinates: The Player must know the coordinates of all the affected hexes (the hex the road is being constructed and the destination hex of the road). If the player does not know these coordinates, it is highly recommended that they do not take this research as it will create additional work on part of the GM. <p>Creating a Road:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) The Player creates a Comment in their Orders that states the Hex the road originates in (either the hex the unit is in or an adjacent hex), the direction of the road and the hex coordinate of the end of the road. 2) It is the responsibility of the Player to track the expenditure of ActiveMonths (AM) when building road(s). These are unassigned workers and the progress of the road construction is maintained in the Comments section. 3) It is the responsibility of the Player to send all material to Usage by the conclusion of that road construction. 4) Once the necessary AM is expended and the resources are sent to Usage, a Comment in the Comment section is used to notify the GM. At this time, the player reiterates the hexes and direction of the roads built this time. This should include the return direction road. 5) The GM adds the roads to the origination hex and destination hex.

Road Construction Costs:

- 1) Each Turn, the unit may work on the Road by assigning workers, similar to Shipbuilding.
- 2) Each Hex the Road extends into has a cost. Costs are determined the most costly of the two hexes (Origination or Destination hex). For example, if building from PR to LJM or from LJM to PR, you would use the cost for the LJM.
- 3) All building is done from the originating Unit. More than one Hex of Road may be built a turn if it has enough AM and resources..
- 4) Road Progress is maintained by the Player through their Activities. When a Road segment (Hex to Hex) is completed, it is the responsibility of the Player to inform the GM of this extension to the Road by showing on the map which segment was just completed.
- 5) Upgrading Roads: Roads may be upgraded by paying the difference between the new Road type and the existing Road type in AM with the exception that Stone must be used equal to the new road type.
- 6) Destruction: Roads may be destroyed through standard Engineering practices. **A unit in a Road Hex may seek to destroy the road in the hex through reverse Engineering. As with any reverse Engineering, the cost to remove a structure is one-half the cost to construct it and can utilize the same tools with the same benefits as building the road in the first place. Reverse Engineering a road requires Eng=3. When attempting reverse Engineering of a road, the chief must consult the Road topic to determine the number AM's that were required to build the road in the first place. The chief must then deploy AM's totaling one-half of this amount rounded up. The chief ordering the reverse Engineering is responsible for performing these calculations and noting them as a comment to the GM. If there is an enemy unit in the hex destruction of a road may require the defeat of this unit.**

Benefit Per Hex:

- 1) Trail: Hex Move Cost Modifier of: $\frac{5}{6}$ (A $\frac{1}{6}$ th decrease)
- 2) Dirt Roads: Hex Move Cost Modifier of: $\frac{2}{3}$ (A $\frac{1}{3}$ rd decrease)
- 3) Stone Roads: Hex Move Cost Modifier of: $\frac{1}{3}$ (A $\frac{2}{3}$ rd decrease)

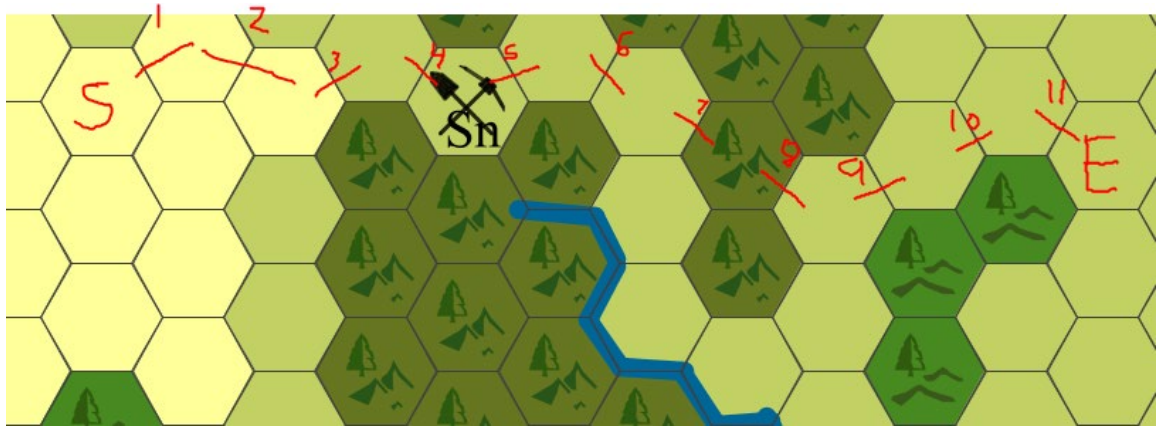
Example: Moving into a Prairie along a Road would normally cost 3 MV, but with a Dirt Road it only costs 2 MV. A Stone Road would allow that movement for only 1 MV.

Roads will lengthen the distance between end points of a Trade Route, and also enable Elements moving along a Trade Route to move further each turn (as 40 MV takes them further).

Cost per Hex Side:

Terrain	Trail	Dirt Road	Stone Road
---------	-------	-----------	------------

Flat – No Trees	AM: 250 Coin: 3	AM: 600 Sand & Salt: 500 Stone: 500 Coin: 6	AM: 1.8k Sand & Salt: 1.5k Stone: 1.5k Coin: 18
Flat – Trees, Snow	AM: 375 Coin: 4	AM: 900 Sand & Salt: 750 Stone: 750 Coin: 9	AM: 2.7k Sand & Salt: 2.25k Stone: 2.25k Coin: 27
Hill – No Trees	AM: 375 Coin: 4	AM: 900 Sand & Salt: 750 Stone: 750 Coin: 9	AM: 2.7k Sand & Salt: 2.25k Stone: 2.25k Coin: 27
Hill – Trees, Snow	AM: 500 Coin: 5	AM: 1.2k Sand & Salt: 1k Stone: 1k Coin: 12	AM: 3.6k Sand & Salt: 3k Stone: 3k Coin: 36
Mountain – No Trees	AM: 500 Coin: 5	AM: 1.2k Sand & Salt: 1k Stone: 1k Coin: 12	AM: 3.6k Sand & Salt: 3k Stone: 3k Coin: 36
Mountain – Trees, Snow	AM: 625 Coin: 7	AM: 1.5k Sand & Salt: 1.25k Stone: 1.25k Coin: 15	AM: 4.5k Sand & Salt: 3.75k Stone: 3.75k Coin: 45
Swamp, Volcano	AM: 750 Coin: 8	AM: 1.8k Sand & Salt: 1.5k Stone: 1.5k Coin: 18	AM: 5.4k Sand & Salt: 4.5k Stone: 4.5k Coin: 54
Tool Use	Shovel: +100% AM for each Worker with a Shovel Mattock: +50% AM for each Worker with a Mattock (Does not stack with Shovel) Mining Ladder: Provides standard bonus for Mining Ladders as if it were a Digging output. Pick: +50% AM for each Worker with a Pick. Only applicable in Hills, Mountains or Volcano hexes. (Does stack with Shovel) Wagon-Pulled(1 Wagon provides bonus to 5 people): +50% AM for each Worker Blasting Jars: Up to 20% of the AM may come from Workers with Blasting Jar usage. Example, Out of 3150 AM, 630 AM can come from Blasting Jar (63 workers + 63 Blasting Jars).		



Example: To Build the Road in this image from the Village S to the Village E, Village S would need to spend the following resources for a Trail:

1: PR / PR: AM 250

2: PR / PR: AM 250

3: PR / GH: AM 375

4: GH / GH: AM 375

5: GH / GH: AM 375

6: GH / GH: AM 375

7: GH / LCM: AM 625

8: LCM / GH: AM 625

9: GH / GH: AM 375

10: GH / GH: AM 375

11: GH / GH: AM 375

Total: AM 4,375

This Trail would normally cost MV equal to $3+3+5+5+5+5+5+10+5+5+5+5= 56MV$

Now it costs to move: $3*5/6 + 3*5/6+.....+5*5/6 = 47MV$

If it were to be made into a Dirt Road, the cost to go from S to E would be 38MV.

If it were to be made into a Stone Road, the cost to go from S to E would be 19MV (though the cost to build would be much higher).

Summary	<i>Build Roads to decrease MV cost when traveling</i>
---------	---

Name	Roman Crane
DL	7-6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Roman Crane: People 6, Eng8, Wdw10, Logs 20, Iron 40, Rope 10
Leads To	N/A
Description	(Also under Woodwork) Description: Wood crane comprised of a modest size boom, a base plate, and a large diameter barrel shaped “wheel” on its side built around and attached to a centre axle (like a hamster wheel). One or more people walk inside the wheel providing mechanical power to drive the winch and thereby raising or lowering loads.

	<p>Benefit: Increase worker productivity by 50% on Engineering projects and Shipbuilding so 2 workers do the work of 3. Each crane enables up to 20 workers to gain benefit. The Crane applies to raw workers that is, before other items such as Wheelbarrows. Player must show equivalent workers in their orders. Cranes are inventory item and transportable once constructed and thus may be used by Clans without the research.</p> <p>Weight: 300</p> <p>Proposed by Brian Whitesell</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Roman Crane, bonus to Engineering and Shipbuilding.</i>

Name	Sappers / Sappers II
DL	Sappers: DL 5 Sappers II: DL 7
Pre-Req	Sappers: N/A Sappers II: Sappers (Engineering research)
Recipe	*See Description
Leads To	N/A
Description	Sappers reduce the effectiveness of defensive fortifications by 5% (10% instead if Sappers II completed). <i>Uses 500 Logs each time deployed.</i> Sappers come from troops not engaged in combat. Requires 1 Sapper per 20 yards wall.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Decreases enemy fortification value by 5% / 10%</i>

Name	Scaffolding
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Scaffold: People 2, Wdw 6, Logs 3
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity</p> <p>A worker with a scaffold does the work of 1.5 effective workers for Shipbuilding or Engineering work. Every worker requires their own scaffold.</p> <p>Examples:</p> <p>1 Worker, 1 Scaffold = 1 Effective worker 2 Workers, 2 Scaffolds = 3 Effective workers 100 workers, 100 scaffolds = 150 Effective workers</p> <p>The Scaffolding, once made, is transportable. At this stage of coding players will need to show this. For example, if you are using 20 workers with Scaffolding you would show them as 30. Scaffolds are inventory item and transportable once</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	constructed and thus may be used by Clans without the research. Weight: 50 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Scaffolding, Increases worker efficiency by +0.5 AM per worker, serves 20</i>

Name	Scout Post
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Scout Post: People 2k, Eng 6, Sct 6, Stn 6, Stone:10k, Cloth:100, Lamp:6 Upkeep: Yearly / 8 Oil + 8 Cotton
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Scout Post is a building that provides additional support to scouting groups and command chains that are part of a garrisoned unit. This research provides the Tribe that holds the research the ability to build Scout Posts in villages that have at least one garrison from the Clan. One garrisoned unit in that village gains the ability to operate additional scouting groups that may not be changed each month.</p> <p>Benefit: One Garrison at the village with the Scout Post, from the same Clan, gains 8 additional scout groups which may Patrol or Locate. These Scout Groups do not count towards the standard limit of the Tribe.</p> <p>Requirements: A Scout Post must be built in a village that is occupied by a Garrison of the same Clan. A Scout Post requires a yearly upkeep of 8 Oil and 8 Cotton The 8 bonus Scout Groups provided by the Scout Post may only be changed once per in-game Calendar year (813, 814, etc). The Garrison operating the Scout Post needs to have at least Scout 6 skill level. The Garrison unit that gains the extra scout groups may only use those 8 scout groups and not any further from other sources. (It cannot send out 9 or more scout groups).</p> <p>Scout Posts may not be built or operated by other Clans, but may be operated by other Tribes.</p>
Summary	<i>Units with a Scout Post get their own set of 8 Scout groups independent of the Tribe</i>

Name	Sewers
DL	8
Pre-Req	Sanitation 6 (Group C skill) Eng 10 (Group C skill) Home City established University (Building)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	Sewers: People 1250, Eng 9, San 6, Stn 8, Stones 5000, Logs 500
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Engineering / Stonework activity</p> <p>Sewer Requirements:</p> <p>1) Water Access: Note: Sewers may only be built at sites adjacent to water (River, Lake, Ocean) or Swamps.</p> <p>Benefits: Sewers serve all Tribes of one clan in the site.</p> <p>1) Siege Protection: Sanitation skill is increased by 4 during Sieges. This does not allow Specialists (that would require Sanitation 11 research).</p> <p>2) Population Boost: Improves Population growth (0.5%) similar to Hospital.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <p>1) Sewers may not be built in Autosheet and must be built using the GM Comments and the Player must transfer the material to usage (1263) when building a Sewer.</p> <p>Sewers may be built for other Clans but they require the Sewers research to utilize.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Sewers, Increases population gain.</i>

Name	Siegecraft
DL	6
Pre-Req	Engineering 10 (Skill) Leadership 10 (Skill) Tactics 10 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Siegecraft allows the Tribe to develop a new Group B Skill, Siegecraft. Each point of Siegecraft reduces the besieger's casualties by 2%. In cases where both the besieger and the village under siege have the Siegecraft Skill, the difference in their skills is multiplied times 2% and used to adjust the besieger's casualties. If the defender's skill exceeds the besieger's skill, the adjustment increases the besieger's casualties.</p> <p>This Siegecraft 2% adjustment occurs in any battle, skirmish, or other event in which casualties occur, between a besieger and a village under siege. It does not apply in cases where the besieger battles an outside force.</p> <p>In addition, completion of this Siegecraft research topic will be a pre-req for any further offensive and/or defensive siege research.</p>
Summary	<i>New Skill, Siege Craft, reduces casualties when defending.</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Spiked Moat
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Yard Spiked Moat: People 2, Eng 5, Wd 3, Log 5
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Fortification (Spiked Moat): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ During a Combat that involves fortifications, attacks against Infantry and Cavalry by the Defender is bolstered and the attack causes an additional 10% extra Potential Casualties if there are enough yards of Spiked Moat to equal the yards of Moats and/or Ditches. ○ If there are less yards of Spiked Moat than associated moats/ditches, the 10% bonus is applied proportionate to the number of yards of Spiked Moat versus the number of yards of moats/ditches. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Limited Use: After a battle in which Spiked Moats are used, 50% of the Spiked Moats are lost. This is reduced by 1% per skill level of Engineering from the unit with the highest Engineering skill level. Additionally, this is further reduced by 2% per skill level of Siegecraft. This may not be reduced to below 20%. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spiked Moats may be built for other Clans. • Spiked Moats may be used without the research.
Summary	<i>New Building – Spiked Moat. Causes additional damage to attackers.</i>

Name	Stables
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Stable: People 50, Logs 50
Leads To	<u>Improved Stable Builders (Engineering research)</u> <u>Improved Stable Builders (Herding research)</u>
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>Holds 30 Horse or 30 Cattle, or 60 Goats. Halves herders required. If using an adjacent hex Goods Tribe relationship Stables are best with the Goods Tribe (that is, the Tribe that holds the buildings).</p>

	<p>Elephants are not able to be housed in a stable. As with some other Herding topics you will have to show equivalent numbers.</p> <p>This structure may be built in other Clans' villages and used by that Clan.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Stables, Reduces number of herders required</i>

Name	Stone Wall 25'
DL	7
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	*See Description
Leads To	Castle (Politics research) Stone Wall 30' (Engineering research)
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>Needs the prior three layers to exist. 75 stones per yard – 12 people to install 1 yard. 25' Walls 30 (18+12) people 210 stones per yard (if previous walls do not exist). 25' wall 8 Damage points Total 20</p> <p>This structure may be built in other Clans' villages and used by that Clan.</p>
Summary	<i>Build bigger walls against better bad guys. Increase fortification value.</i>

Name	Stone Wall 30'
DL	9
Pre-Req	Stone Wall 25' (Engineering)
Recipe	*See Description
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>Needs the prior four layers to exist.</p> <p>30' Walls 18 people 90 stones per yard (if 25' wall exists) 30' Walls 48 (30+18) people 300 stones per yard (if 25' wall does not already exist) 30' wall 10 Damage points Total 30</p> <p>This structure may be built in other Clans' villages and used by that Clan.</p>
Summary	<i>Upgrade to 25' Stone Wall</i>

Name	Superior Canals
DL	7

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	Canals (Engineering research)
Recipe	*See Description
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Superior Canal; like a regular Canal; is treated (and shown) as a River in all respects but must start from a body of fresh water (River or Lake). 80,000 AM's can turn a hexside (30,000-40,000 yards) into a Superior Canal. Superior Canals are permitted adjacent to Mountains, but may not travel <u>through</u> any Mountains. A shovel doubles output. Canals are 40' wide. Fords cannot be left in the newly created Canal as part of their construction.</p> <p>To convert a Ford into a Canal (that is, the Ford is removed) – 1000 Workers with tools (either picks, shovels, or mattocks or combination), 20 Wagons, 10 Cattle/Horses can convert a Ford into a River/Canal.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows creation of Canals adjacent to Mountain.</i>

Name	Trellis
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Trellis (Acre): People 1, Eng 6, Wdw 2, Logs 1, Cotton 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity</p> <p>Requires Farm 6 to use Trellis to reduce AM for grape harvesting</p> <p>A structure to support vines and hold them in optimal position to encourage growth and enable easier harvesting of the grapes. The trellis can be installed on a vineyard (during or after planting) and then is permanently associated with that acreage. Trellis can be built for another clan if the unit is permitted into their village hex, but once built cannot be moved.</p> <p>The effect of a trellis is reducing the work required harvesting grapes to ¼ of normal. In other words, 1 person can harvest up to 4 acres of grapes which have trellis installed.</p> <p>Combines linearly with other research (so treat as +3 workers not x4, if in conjunction with other research). Players need to track the trellised acres and show effective workers adjusted for trellis in their orders, for instance show 100 workers harvesting 400 trellised acres as 400 effective workers.</p> <p>Weight: While the Trellis is stored as an item, it is meant to be a stationary</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	installation. It has a heft weight and is not meant to be moved.
Summary	<i>New Building - Trellis, Increases effectiveness of workers for harvesting.</i>

Name	Watchtower
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Watchtower: People 300, Eng 6, Logs 600
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Village with a Watchtower adds 2% per tower to the chances of Security and Suppressors detecting Spies, Scouts, Raiders and Locating groups. Watch Towers are 30' high. A Village may have a maximum of 6 Watchtowers. Requires 2 observers per WT.</p> <p>This structure may be built in other Clans' villages and used by that Clan.</p>
Summary	<i>Increases Security and Suppressors effectiveness.</i>

Name	Wire Fences
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Wire Fence: People 4, Logs 4, Wire 10
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Wire Fences = Fence. A Wire Fences can be constucted with 4 logs and 10 wire. Logs installed at 2 per person, wire at 5 per person.</p> <p>Holds 50 Horse/Cattle/Camel, or 100 Goats. May be built for other Tribes/Clans. Fences are considered to be outside Village walls (and may be built independent of Village for example, in an adjacent hex).</p> <p>Fences is a research that increases Herder Efficiency. Maximum Bonus: +1 Herder Efficiency MaxFences: #Goats/100 + #Cattle/50 + #Horses/50 + #Camels/50 Bonus: # Fences / Max Fences Required Fences for Maximum Bonus: MaxFences</p> <p>If you have 1000 goats, 500 cattle and 500 horses, you normally require 50+50+50 = 150 maximum herders. Your maximum fences are 1000/100 + 500/50 + 500/50 = 30 Fences. If you have 30 fences, your bonus is 30 / 30 = +1.0 Herder efficiency. You normally require 90 herders, now it is 90 / 2 = 45 herders required. If you only had 15 fences, your bonus would be 15 / 30 = +0.50 Herder efficiency. You normally require 90 herders, now it is 90 / 1.5 = 60 herders required.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Reduces number of herders required.</i>
---------	--

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Excavation

Name	Excavation 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Excavation +1 (example from Exc 10 to Exc 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Excavation specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Excavation Specialists: There are little benefits to having Excavation specialists at this time. It will reduce the number of people needed to dig up Artefacts but this doesn't allow you to assign the same number of people to get twice the artefacts. • There is currently no benefit for Excavation skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Excavation, Specialists</i>

Name	Expert Dig
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Tomb Robbers (Excavation research)</u>
Description	Two Artefacts may be dug per turn. Requires 20 people with implements. A unit with Expert Dig may carry unlimited Artefacts.
Summary	<i>Allows a second Artefact to be dug up from ruins each turn</i>

Name	Holy Artefact
DL	6
Pre-Req	<u>Expert Dig (Excavation)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Description	Once per year Clan may conduct a search for a Holy Artefact at its excavation site. A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

n	<p>Holy Artefact when found will add 0.05 General Morale to one tribe in the clan. The Holy Artefact if lost in ANY WAY will remove this 0.05% bonus. A Holy Artefact may be used in the same way as normal artefacts but is worth 12 normal artefacts.</p> <p>Weight: 2 lbs</p> <p>Proposed D Thacker</p>
Summary	<i>Yearly gain of a special artefact that majorly boosts morale.</i>

Name	Major Find
DL	5
Pre-Req	Expert Dig (Excavation research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unique Artefact: The Tribe with this research has the ability to find unique artefacts from its primary relic site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unique / Named: Every Unique Artefact is given its own unique name. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Player that controls the Clan names the Unique Artefact. For example, Artefact 277 Death Mask of Agamemnon. In inventory, it will be shown as Artefact Clan# <ShortName> such as “Artefact 277 DeathMask”. General Morale: A Tribe holding a unique Artefact gains +0.02 General Morale to the Tribe and its units. If a Goods Tribe is holding the Unique Artefact, one Tribe that is a Sub-unit of the Goods Tribe may gain the bonus instead. Trade to Locals: A Unique Artefact may be traded in per standard artefact rules as if it were 12 artefacts. This removes the +0.02 General Morale bonus. Exhibition: A Unique Artefact counts as a separate artefact from other artefacts that come that site for purposes of the Exhibition research branch and any other rules that count different artefact sources. Announcement: The gaining of a Unique Artefact is known to all. It is announced in the Clan News with the Clan Number and Clan Name (if the clan has a name) being announced as having discovered a Unique Artefact and the Unique Artefact name is included. The Clan News will also have a section listing Clan # and Unique Artefact Names. Find / Gaining of Unique Artefacts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediately: Immediately upon completing this research topic, the Excavation garrison that is excavating the main excavation site gains 1 Unique Artefact. Annually: On turn 1 of each year, the Excavation garrison that is excavating the main excavation site gains 1 Unique Artefact.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maintaining Control: A Clan must maintain control of its Unique Artefacts or it will lose the bonuses provided by the Unique Artefact. If a Unique Artefact is looted via spoils or otherwise taken from a Clan (voluntary or involuntary), the Tribe that lost the Unique Artefact loses its +0.02 General Morale bonus and a further loss of 0.02 General Morale occurs. The Tribe that takes the Unique Artefact gains its bonuses. This penalty does not occur inside a Clan as it transfers the Unique Artefact between its Tribes. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Gain a named Unique Artefact that provides feel good times for the Tribe.</i>

Name	Tomb Robbers
DL	7
Pre-Req	<u>*See Archaeology</u>
Recipe	<u>*See Archaeology</u>
Leads To	
Description	<u>*See Archaeology</u>
Summary	<i>Steal from the dead and gain commodities.</i>

Farming

Name	Farming 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Agriculture I (Farming research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Farming +1 (example from Farm 10 to Farm 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Farming, Specialists</i>

Name	Agriculture I, Agriculture II, Agriculture III...
DL	1, 2, 3
Pre-Req	Farming 11 (Farming research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Agriculture I: Agriculture II (Farming research) Agriculture II: Agriculture III (Farming research) Agriculture III: Agriculture IV (Agriculture research) Agriculture I: Agriculture 11 (Agriculture research)
Description	<p>The effect of gaining an Agriculture topic is to add levels to your Farming Skill.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Agriculture 1: +1 Level to Farming (ex. Farm 11 to Farm 12) ○ Agriculture 2: +3 Level to Farming (ex. Farm 12 to Farm 15) ○ Agriculture 3: +5 Level to Farming (ex. Farm 15 to Farm 20) • New Skill – Agriculture (Group C): Once Agriculture 1 research topic has been completed, the Tribe may learn a new skill called Agriculture. It is a Group C skill. Agriculture skill is purely a skill to access Agriculture research topics Agriculture 4 and beyond. <p>Requirements: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Restrictions: N/A Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Books may be written.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Farming</i>

Name	Flax
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Oilmill (Milling research)</u>
Description	Farming Activity Best location is flat/temperate, each person plants 3 acres, harvests 2 (1 flax = 1 cotton). Harvesting returns should automatically convert Flax to Cotton. A Scythe will double the acres harvested in regards to Flax. Weight: 1 lbs
Summary	<i>Improved method of farming Cotton</i>

Name	Herb Plot
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Herb Plot Research introduces a new crop, Herbs. Herbs are permanent crops like Grapes. Upon successfully completing Herb Plot Research Topic, the Tribe gains access to a new skill – Herbing (Group C). Herbing only affects how many people may plant Herb plots in a single month. Plowing: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plowing follows normal rules. • Acres must be plowed to allow planting of Herb Plots. Planting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Limited to: 10 Population / Level of Herbing Skill • Must be planted in Spring Months

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

- May be planted in all Spring Months
- 1 Population with Hoe plants 5 Herb plots
- Hoes are required for Planting
- Every Herb plot planted requires the use of 1 Herb (Transfer to Usage)

Maintaining:

- Limited to: No limit to the number of Population able to Maintain.
- Must be maintained each Summer (except the year initially planted).
- 1 Population maintains 5 Herb plots
- 1 Population with Hoe maintains 10 Herb plots

Harvesting:

- Limited to: No limit to the number of Population able to Harvest.
- Must be harvested in Month 12.
- 1 Population harvests 5 Herb plots
- 1 Population with Hoe harvests 10 Herb plots
- Produces annual Yield of 2 Herbs per Acre.
- Weather does not affect Herbs.
- NOTE: Not Coded. Player must transfer the appropriate amount of Herbs from 0263 on Month 12.
- **Climate does not have an effect on Herb Plots.**

Crop	Plant/Person	Harvest/Person	Tools
Herb	5	5	Hoe required for Planting. Hoe doubles Harvest acres.

Alternate Description

“somedays, herbers rouse themselves from slumber (face down in ashtray) and prosecute craft with poetic ambivalence.” Courtesy of E. Waugh. Can substitute “GM’s” for “herbers” with little change to meaning! Note: Not Coded

Summary	<i>Teaches you how to farm and harvest Herbs</i>
----------------	--

Name	Inactive Workers
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Inactives can perform up to one-third of the farming activities labour. If not doing this they “work” for the public service.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	During planting and harvesting, everybody, in the tribe worked. During planting, young children could plant seeds into furrows and the elderly could push the soil back over the seeds. During harvest young and elderly people could bundle scythed grain stalks into sheaves and collect the actual grain kernels as the grain was threshed. Would require coding from Jeff. Until this is done Chief, please add Actives/Warriors and Inactives into a single figure in Activities (showing the Inactives in notes).
Summary	<i>Use worthless Inactives to do some farming</i>

Name	Juniper
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Farming Activity May only be grown in Coniferous hexes. Best location is Hilly, Temperate.</p> <p>Juniper is a Maintained Crop. Rules and returns for planting, maintaining and harvesting Juniper are identical to Grapes.</p> <p>Note: Trellis may not be used to assist in harvesting Juniper.</p> <p>NOTE: Until further coding, players may plant Juniper as if they were Grapes. The one unit may not plant both Grapes and Juniper in one turn. In the comments section of the turn order, the Player shall inform the GM of the need to manually update the Grape planting to Juniper.</p> <p>Weight: 0.01 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>Farm and Harvest Juniper to make more alcohol</i>

Name	Plantation
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Plantation: People 200, Eng 6, Farm 6, Logs 400 (May be substituted with stone)
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Plantations provide a 50% increase in Effective Workers for purposes of all farming activities (Plowing, Planting, Harvesting and Fire Control). This requires extra tools and improvements for this increase in effective workers. <i>(Example: 100 Workers plowing would be 150 Effective Workers. They would require 150 Plows and Cattle. This represents swapping out tired animals and allowing used tools to be maintained).</i> Each Plantation affects 100 Workers. To gain the benefit of the Plantation, the</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Farming Clan must have a unit in the farming Hex that either has the skill Slavery 10 or Economics 10. Plantations may be built for other Tribes/Clans. Plantations are not considered inside defensive walls of a village / city.</p> <p><i>Plantations are large-scale farms that consists of a main house, the symbol of the plantation, and is surrounded by a small walled set of land. Stone markers indicate plowing rows, planting distances and designated areas are setup for harvest drop off. Designated areas for tool maintenance and swapping animals are also included. “The latifundia of the Roman Empire were the earliest examples of plantations.”</i></p> <p>Examples:</p> <p>Plowing: 100 Workers with 1 Plantation would count as 150 Effective Workers and would require 150 Plows (and appropriate Cattle for those Plows). They would plow $150 * 8 = 1,200$ Acres.</p> <p>Planting: 100 Workers with 1 Plantation would count as 150 Effective Workers and would plant 300 acres of Tobacco ($150*2$) or 450 acres of Sugar ($150*3$)</p> <p>Harvesting: 100 Workers with 1 Plantation would count as 150 Effective Workers and would Harvest 150 acres of Tobacco ($150*1$) or 300 acres of Sugar ($150*2$). If the Workers had 150 Scythes they would Harvest 600 Acres of Sugar ($150*4$) just as if 150 workers with Scythes were harvesting Sugar.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Plantation, +0.5 AM per Farmer up to 100 Farmers, needs more tools</i>

Name	Trellis
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Trellis (Acre): People 1, Eng 6, Wdw 2, Logs 1, Cotton 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity</p> <p>Requires Farm 6 to use Trellis to reduce AM for grape harvesting</p> <p>A structure to support vines and hold them in optimal position to encourage growth and enable easier harvesting of the grapes.</p> <p>The trellis can be installed on a vineyard (during or after planting) and then is permanently associated with that acreage. Trellis can be built for another clan if the unit is permitted into their village hex, but once built cannot be moved.</p> <p>The effect of a trellis is reducing the work required harvesting grapes to 1/4 of normal. In other words, 1 person can harvest up to 4 acres of grapes which have trellis installed. Combines lineally with other research (so treat as +3 workers not x4, if in conjunction with other research).</p>

	<p>Players need to track the trellised acres and show effective workers adjusted for trellis in their orders, for instance show 100 workers harvesting 400 trellised acres as 400 effective workers.</p> <p>Weight: While the Trellis is stored as an item, it is meant to be a stationary installation. It has a hefty weight and is not meant to be moved.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Trellis, Greatly (+3 AM) assists with harvesting Grapes.</i>

Fire Control

Name	Excubitoriums
DL	5
Pre-Req	Fire Brigade (Fire Control research)
Recipe	1 Excubitorium: People 500, Eng 6, Fire 6, Stone 2.5k, Lamp 2, Oil 2, Barrel 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Excubitoriums are night watch fire control scout posts. Upon completing the research, the Tribe gains the ability to build Excubitoriums.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On month 1, the Tribe with the research and one other Tribe, from inside or outside the Clan, in the same location gains +0.01 General Morale. • On month 1, the Clan gains 25 Locals per Excubitorium provided that the Clan has at least 1 Longhouse. A maximum of 10 Excubitoriums will provide this bonus. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To gain the yearly General Morale bonus and the Locals, the Tribe must have access to at least 1 Excubitorium in the same hex. • On month 1, the Tribe must expend 2 Oil per Excubitorium (send to usage) or no bonus is provided. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If multiple Tribes have this research topic, they will each require their own Excubitoriums.
Summary	<i>New Building – Excubitorium, slow increase of General Morale and gain Locals.</i>

Name	Fire Brigade
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Excubitorium (Fire Control research) Excubitorium (Garrison research) Inactive Fire Watchers (Fire Control research) Roman Fire Pump (Fire Control research)
Description	The Fire Brigade provides some organization and support to fire watchers to make

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

n	<p>them more effective.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On completion of the Fire Brigade research topic, workers assigned to Fire Control activities increases effectiveness by 100%, i.e. each worker controls 200 acres + 20 acres per skill level. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To gain this bonus, each worker assigned to Fire Control must be issued with a Hood, Jerkin, Stave and a barrel full of water. Players must check that the required items are available in the inventory and not used for any other purpose. The GM must be informed by a note how many workers are on fire control, that the required items are available and the percentage of the farmed acres that are covered. The ideal is to cover 100% of the farmed acres. <p><i>The Roman Emperor Nero created fire brigades in Rome in AD 60.</i></p>
Summary	<i>Increases the effectiveness of fire watchers over farming.</i>

Name	Fire Control 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Specialized knowledge of fire prevention, control and extinguishing allows some people to rise to the top of their field.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Skill Level Increase: Increases Fire Control Skill by +1. Specialists: Allows Fire Control specialists.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Bonus – Fire Control, allows Specialists</i>

Name	Inactive Fire Watchers
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Fire Brigade (Fire Control research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Inactives can comprise up to one half of the people in the Fire Brigade. Inactives perform a range of activities including looking out for fires, sounding the alarm, and generally acting as eyes and ears for the main fire-fighting force. Note that the

	equipment required by the Fire Brigade must still be available in numbers to cover the whole force (including the Inactives).
Summary	<i>Allows using the normally useless Inactives to do productive tasks.</i>

Name	Roman Fire Pump
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Fire Brigade (Fire Control research)</u>
Recipe	1 Roman Fire Pump: People 5, Ltr 6, Iron 2, Leather 4, Coal 10
Leads To	N/A
Description	Leatherworking Activity Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Roman Fire Pump provides a bonus of +1 AM (one worker counts as two workers) when performing Fire Control Activities. • One Roman Fire Pump may be used by each worker assigned to Fire Control. <p><i>These small pumps were typically used to rapidly fill buckets for use in fire fighting activities by the Aquarii. Unlike the larger fire pumps which were transported on the backs of wagons by the Siphonarii.</i></p>
Summary	<i>New Item – Roman Fire Pump, increases effectiveness of fire control workers (+1AM)</i>

Fishing

Name	Fishing 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Skill Level Bonus:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ Fishing +1 (example from Fish 10 to Fish 11)• Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Fishing, Specialists</i>

Name	Trawler														
DL	6														
Pre-Req	N/A														
Recipe	1 Trawler: People 160, ShB8, Wdw8, Mtl7, Logs 160, Brass 40, Coal 200, Sheath 150, Silver 3000, Leather 30, Cloth 15, Rope 20, Oars														
Leads To	N/A														
Description n	Trawlers increase the amount of Fish that are provided through the Fishing activity.														
		ShB	Wood	Mtl	Logs	Brass	Coal	Sheath	Silver	Leather	Cloth	Rope	O/P	Weight	
	Trawler	8	8	7	160	40	200	150	3000	30	15	20	O	20000	
	Sail Movement							Row Movement							
	Vessel Type	M P	Nav	Sea	Sail	Crew	MP	Nav	Sea	Row	Crew	MEF	Sail	Hull	Max People
	Trawler	20	2	2	4	10+7	15	.5	.5	2	20+7	12	16	16	60
Defense Points: 16 Cargo: 20,000 Weight: 20,000															

	Trawlers may be used by Tribes / Clans without the research.
Summary	<i>New Ship, Trawler. Greater output when fishing</i>

Name	Trawling Net
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Trawling Net: People 4, Wv7, Cotton 30, Silver 25
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Counts as +2 AM when Fishing. The number of Trawling Nets may not exceed the number of people fishing. A single worker may use a Net or a Trawling Net but not both.</p> <p>Weight: 5lb</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Trawling Net, increases Fishing output</i>

Fletching

Name	Bodkin Arrows
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	10 Bronze Bodkin Arrows: People 5, Fletching 10, Bronze 1, Coal 7 10 Iron Bodkin Arrows: People 5, Fletching 10, Iron 1, Coal 10 10 Steel Bodkin Arrows: People 5, Fletching 10, Steel 1, Coal 10, Silver 10
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Arrow (Bodkin): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Warriors assigned to Ranged Combat and equipped with a Bow type weapon may utilize Bodkin arrows instead of regular arrows. Warriors may mix the two though the bonus from the Bodkin Arrows only apply to Potential Casualties caused by Bodkin Arrows. ○ Potential Casualties caused by Bodkin Arrows gain +0.1 Armour Penetration. Armour Penetration is used to reduce armour effectiveness by that factor. So a Bodkin arrow from a regular bow would have +0.1 Armour Penetration and thus would reduce armour by 10%. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Limited Use: Bodkin Arrows that are used during combat are lost and may not be recovered without additional research. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bodkin Arrows may be used by Tribes and Clans without the research.
Summary	<i>New Arrow – Bodkin. Additional Armour Penetration for Ranged attacks from Bows.</i>

Name	Fletching 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Fletching +1 (example from Fle 10 to Fle 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Fletching, Specialists</i>

Name	Longbow
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Longbow: People 4, Wpn 10, Stave 1, String 1, Coin 5
Leads To	Longbowman (Archery research)
Description	<p>Longer range and more powerful bow.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Fletching activity) of Longbow. WeaponValue: Provides enhanced Weapon statistics over Bows. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Base Value: 5 Skill Multiplier: 0.2 Armour Penetration: *0.50 Armour Value <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Weight: 3lbs
Summary	<i>New Weapon – Longbow, more effective Bow</i>

Forestry

Name	5 Logs / Person
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>6 Logs / Person (Forestry research)</u>
Description	A forester can cut down 5 logs.
Summary	<i>Get 5 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>

Name	6 Logs / Person
DL	6
Pre-Req	<u>5 Logs / Person (Forestry Research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>7 Logs / Person (Forestry research)</u>
Description	A forester can cut down 6 logs.
Summary	<i>Get 6 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>

Name	7 Logs / Person
DL	7
Pre-Req	<u>6 Logs / Person (Forestry Research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>8 Logs / Person (Forestry research)</u>
Description	A forester can cut down 7 logs.
Summary	<i>Get 7 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>

Name	8 Logs / Person
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>7 Logs / Person (Forestry Research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>9 Logs / Person (Forestry research)</u>
Description	A forester can cut down 8 logs.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

n	
Summary	<i>Get 8 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>

Name	9 Logs / Person
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>8 Logs / Person (Forestry Research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>10 Logs / Person (Forestry research)</u>
Description	A forester can cut down 9 logs.
Summary	<i>Get 9 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>

Name	10 Logs / Person
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>9 Logs / Person (Forestry Research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	A forester can cut down 10 logs.
Summary	<i>Get 10 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>

Name	<u>Burner Improvements</u>
DL	2
Pre-Req	Charcoal Specialists (Forestry Research)
Recipe	1 Burner Improvement: People 50, Eng 6, Stn 4, Mtl 4, Brk 4, Stones 150, Iron 50, Fodder 50, Clay 50
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Burner Improvements are improvements made to existing burners. Burner Improvements double the effective workers assigned to the Charcoal Making activity (Section 12.6) only. Each Burner Improvement affects a single burner (10 people).</p> <p>They are themselves counted as buildings. You can never have more Burner Improvements than you have Burners. They may be built in other Villages and transferred but are not transportable. They must be built in place.</p> <p>The bonus from Burner Improvements follows the standard rules for TribeNet multiplication. With Charcoal Specialists (Special Research topic) giving a 50% increase and Burner Improvements giving a 100% improvement, the each worker would have an effective worker value of 2.5, not 3.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<i>Charcoal Specialists felt that their knowledge of the process was such that they needed to find new and better ways to make charcoal. After much experimenting, they discovered a series of improvements that would assist in controlling oxygen to the process and also maximize the amount of charcoal produced in each burner, thus lessening the amount of work each person allowing them to watch additional burns.</i>
Summary	<i>New Building - Burner Improvement, Increases (+0.5) output when Charcoal Making</i>

Name	Forestry 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Forestry +1 (example from For 10 to For 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Forestry, Specialists</i>

Name	Log Driving
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Logs cut on a river bank or moved to a river may be dumped into the current by a Unit and allowed to flow to a point where they are picked up by another unit. One worker for every 100 logs must be assigned as a Log Driver in activities (Forestry). The log drivers don't actually move with the logs but must come from a unit that is at one of the end points or is adjacent to the river along the path that the logs take. Regardless of who supplies the log drivers, there must be a sending and receiving unit at the end points.</p>
Summary	<i>Transport Logs along rivers and canals</i>

Name	Managed Plantations
------	----------------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Normal Forestry activities can be performed in GH or PR but only after 1 full year after initial planting to allow young trees to take root. 50 people are required to setup the plantation but once setup, it looks after itself.</p> <p>10 people may practice Forestry per Forestry Level (until level 10) and with normal returns (Only the Tribe with the research may use it). Multiple Managed Plantations may be setup for the Clan but the Automatic Transfer spreadsheet must be used if a Clan has more than one Managed Plantation. Managed Plantations may not be made or used for/by other Clans.</p> <p>Each month Twice per year (in Fair months) the player receives a shipment of Logs/Bark based on the current month's activity. Players are responsible for indicating the amount of Logs and Bark produced each turn, keeping a running tally and showing this in Orders in the Fair months when the shipment is due. The player shall use the automated transfer system to collect the Logs/Bark for the current turn if they are utilizing the automated order spreadsheet. The correct transfer code is from unit 2263. Otherwise, the player is responsible for indicating in their orders that the transfer is needed.</p> <p>Note: This is Forestry research and will not produce weapons like Staves and Shafts.</p>
Summary	<i>Plant Trees in a treeless Hex and get Logs/Bark each turn.</i>

Name	Improved Charcoal Making
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	When performing the Forestry action / Charcoal Making, workers in a Unit with Improved Charcoal Making count as an extra 0.5 Workers each (+0.5 AM / worker). Two workers would do the work of 3 workers. If you are using Forestry Specialists in combination with ICM then 1 Specialist = 2.5 effective workers.
Summary	<i>Your workers count extra when making Charcoal (+0.5 AM)</i>

Name	Saw
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	1 Saw: People 3, Mtl5, Iron 5, Coal 40
Leads To	N/A
Description	Metalwork Activity Saws multiply logging rates x 4. <u>Cannot</u> be used with Adze. A Forester with no tools cuts 4 Logs A Forester with Adze cuts 8 Logs A Forester with Saw cuts 16 Logs
Summary	<i>New Item - Saw, Increase Log output by x4</i>

Name	Sawmill
DL	6
Pre-Req	Milling 10 (Group C skill) Forestry 4 (Group A skill)
Recipe	1 Sawmill: People 300, Eng 6, Wd 4, Stn 4, Logs 250, Stones 625, Iron 500, Coal 4000
Leads To	N/A
Description	A new method of milling logs, with the power coming from water so fewer people can cut may more logs. Restrictions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Max Sawmills: A site is restricted to 100 Sawmills. • Terrain: The site must be on a hex that allows Forestry activities that provide logs (Forest, Jungle, etc) • River: The site must be on a hex that has at least one Hexside as a River or Canal. Bonuses: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Max Users: 100 People per Sawmill • Production Boost: Workers utilizing a Sawmill produce x8 the number of Logs they normally would. A worker may not utilize an Adze or Saw, though may utilize research topics that increase Logs per Person (5 Logs / Person, 6 Logs / Person, etc). Other Clans: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sawmills may be built for other tribes, but that Tribe must have Milling 10 and Forestry 4 or better to gain the bonus.
Summary	<i>New Building - Sawmill, Increases output of Logs by x8</i>

Name	Scraper
-------------	--------------------------------

DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Scraper: Person 1, Mtl1, Iron 1, Coal 4
Leads To	N/A
Description	Metalwork Activity Doubles rate for Bark Stripping Weight: 1 lb
Summary	<i>New Item - Scraper, Increases output of gaining Bark by x2</i>

Furniture

Name	Bunk
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Bunk: People 2, Log 2, Iron 1, Coal 5
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity</p> <p>Three non-Clan members may share 2 bunks inside a Lodgings and Barracks by sleeping and working in shifts. While not ideal, it is a way for people to live in confining space without needing additional buildings.</p> <p>Allows the creation of Bunks. Every <u>two</u> Bunks allows 1 additional space to be available in a Lodging and Barracks. There is a maximum number of bunks equal to the base amount of Lodging and Barracks space available.</p> <p>For instance, 10 Lodgings can normally hold $10 \times 20 = 200$ extra people. 200 Bunks would allow these 10 Lodgings to hold $200/2 = +100$ people for a total of 300 people in 10 Lodgings.</p> <p>Weight: 50 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item – Bunk, adds capacity to Lodgings and Barracks</i>

Name	Furniture 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Furniture +1 (example from Furn 10 to Furn 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Furniture, Specialists</i>

Furrier

Name	Advanced Trap
DL	4
Pre-Req	Improved Trap (Metalwork research) OR Improved Trap (Furrier research)
Recipe	1 Advanced Trap: People 2, Mtl 10, Iron 2, Coal 8
Leads To	N/A
Description	An Advanced trap is a continued evolutionary refinement of the Research topic Improved Trap and functions much as a standard trap. One Hunter/Furrier may use 1 Advanced Trap (with no standard Traps or Improved Traps) – this improves Hunting by 1.0 (i.e. one hunter counts as two).
Summary	<i>New Item, Advanced Trap, Hunter/Furrier can use for large boost (+1 AM)</i>

Name	Furrier 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Furrier +1 (example from Fur 10 to Fur 11) • Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Furrier based specialists Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Furrier, Specialists</i>

Name	Improved Trap
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Improved Trap: People 1, Mtl 3, Iron 1, Coal 6
Leads To	Advanced Trap (Furrier research) Advanced Trap (Metalwork research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	An Improved Trap functions much as a standard trap, but allows a 15% bonus instead of 10% bonus. <u>Standard limit of 5 traps per hunter apply.</u> 1 Hunter/Furrier may use up to 5 Improved Traps (with no standard Traps) – this improves Hunting by 0.15 per IT or 0.75 per 5 Its.
Summary	<i>New Item, Improved Trap, Hunter/Furrier can use for multiple small boosts (Total +0.75)</i>

Name	Winter Furs
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Winter Pants (Furrier research) Winter Shirt (Furrier research)
Description	Furriers will be able to identify higher quality furs. They will sell for double the price of ordinary Furs at Fair. During Winter months (only) a Furrier with 5 Traps (or better) will furry 4 Winter Furs. This Activity is over and above ordinary Furring and must be shown as a Transfer, for example, “400 Winter Furs to 0250” using 100 Actives with 500 Traps.
Summary	<i>Ability to gain Winter Fur during Winter to sell for silver</i>

Name	Winter Jacket
DL	5
Pre-Req	Winter Pants (Furrier research) Winter Shirt (Furrier research)
Recipe	1 Winter Jacket: People 2, Sew 7, Winter Furs 6
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Winter Month Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Each worker with a Winter Jacket during a Winter month does the work of 1.50 Workers (+0.50 AM each) when performing Activities. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Winter Months only: Workers only get a bonus to their effective output during Winter months only. This is considered Months 10 (Last Fair), 11 (Midwinter), and 12 (Winterend). There is no bonus gained during months 1,2,3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9. • Military / Scouting: No bonus is gained from this item during Military or Scouting activities. It has no effect on Armour Value or Army Factor or any other

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

avenue of Combat.

Notes:

- **Game Edition:**
 - **Classing TN:** This bonus must be manually added by the player as additional effective workers.
 - **TN2020:** This bonus will be automatically calculated when the clothing is assigned as part of the activity. Clothing will be considered as a semi-consumable item once TN2020 is implemented which means it will have a chance of wearing out when used.
- Workers from any Tribe/Unit, even without Winter Jacket research, may benefit from the Winter Jacket.
- Workers from other Clans, even without Winter Jacket research, may benefit from the Winter Jacket.
- A Winter Fur Winter Jacket is a heavy duty but primitive thick furred jacket that makes winter cold and wind more bearable. It is definitely not a high end luxury item but for workers in the cold, it certainly feels that way.
- **Weight:** 5 lb
- **Example:** 100 Workers with 100 Winter Jackets would do the work of 150 standard workers.
- **Example:** 100 Workers with 100 Winter Pants and 100 Winter Shirts and 100 Winter Jackets would do the work of 200 standard workers.

Summary	<i>New Item – Winter Jacket, increases productivity of a worker during Winter months.</i>
----------------	---

Name	Winter Pants
DL	3
Pre-Req	Winter Furs (Furrier research)
Recipe	1 Winter Pants: People 1, Sew 5, Winter Furs 2
Leads To	Winter Jacket (Furrier research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Winter Month Bonus:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ Each worker with a Winter Pants during a Winter month does the work of 1.25 Workers (+0.25 AM each) when performing Activities. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Winter Months only: Workers only get a bonus to their effective output during Winter months only. This is considered Months 10 (Last Fair), 11 (Midwinter), and 12 (Winterend). There is no bonus gained during months 1,2,3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9.• Military / Scouting: No bonus is gained from this item during Military or

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Scouting activities. It has no effect on Armour Value or Army Factor or any other avenue of Combat.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Game Edition: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Classing TN: This bonus must be manually added by the player as additional effective workers. • TN2020: This bonus will be automatically calculated when the clothing is assigned as part of the activity. Clothing will be considered as a semi-consumable item once TN2020 is implemented which means it will have a chance of wearing out when used. • Workers from any Tribe/Unit, even without Winter Pants research, may benefit from the Winter Pants. • Workers from other Clans, even without Winter Pants research, may benefit from the Winter Pants. • A Winter Fur Winter Pants is a pair of casual, thick furred pants that makes winter cold and wind more bearable. It is definitely not a high end luxury item but for workers in the cold, it certainly feels that way. • Weight: 1 lb • Example: 100 Workers with 100 Winter Pants would do the work of 125 standard workers. • Example: 100 Workers with 100 Winter Pants and 100 Winter Shirts would do the work of 150 standard workers.
Summary	<i>New Item – Winter Pants, increases productivity of a worker during Winter months.</i>

Name	Winter Shirt
DL	3
Pre-Req	<u>Winter Furs (Furrier research)</u>
Recipe	1 Winter Shirt: People 1, Sew 5, Winter Furs 2
Leads To	<u>Winter Jacket (Furrier research)</u>
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Winter Month Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Each worker with a Winter Shirt during a Winter month does the work of 1.25 Workers (+0.25 AM each) when performing Activities. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Winter Months only: Workers only get a bonus to their effective output during Winter months only. This is considered Months 10 (Last Fair), 11 (Midwinter), and 12 (Winterend). There is no bonus gained during months 1,2,3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

- **Military / Scouting:** No bonus is gained from this item during Military or Scouting activities. It has no effect on Armour Value or Army Factor or any other avenue of Combat.

Notes:

- **Game Edition:**
 - **Classing TN:** This bonus must be manually added by the player as additional effective workers.
 - **TN2020:** This bonus will be automatically calculated when the clothing is assigned as part of the activity. Clothing will be considered as a semi-consumable item once TN2020 is implemented which means it will have a chance of wearing out when used.
- Workers from any Tribe/Unit, even without Winter Shirt research, may benefit from the Winter Shirt.
- Workers from other Clans, even without Winter Shirt research, may benefit from the Winter Shirt.
- A Winter Fur Winter Shirt is a casual, thick furred shirt that makes winter cold and wind more bearable. It is definitely not a high end luxury item but for workers in the cold, it certainly feels that way.
- **Weight:** 1 lb
- **Example:** 100 Workers with 100 Winter Shirts would do the work of 125 standard workers.
- **Example:** 100 Workers with 100 Winter Pants and 100 Winter Shirts would do the work of 150 standard workers.

Summary	<i>New Item – Winter Shirt, increases productivity of a worker during Winter months.</i>
----------------	--

Garrison

Name	Excubitoriums
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Fire Brigade (Fire Control research)</u>
Recipe	1 Excubitorium: People 500, Eng 6, Fire 6, Stone 2.5k, Lamp 2, Oil 2, Barrel 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Excubitoriums are night watch fire control scout posts. Upon completing the research, the Tribe gains the ability to build Excubitoriums.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On month 1, the Tribe with the research and one other Tribe, from inside or outside the Clan, in the same location gains +0.01 General Morale. • On month 1, the Clan gains 25 Locals per Excubitorium provided that the Clan has at least 1 Longhouse. A maximum of 10 Excubitoriums will provide this bonus. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To gain the yearly General Morale bonus and the Locals, the Tribe must have access to at least 1 Excubitorium in the same hex. • On month 1, the Tribe must expend 2 Oil per Excubitorium (send to usage) or no bonus is provided. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If multiple Tribes have this research topic, they will each require their own Excubitoriums.
Summary	<i>New Building – Excubitorium, slow increase of General Morale and gain Locals.</i>

Name	Garrison 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Garrison +1 (example from Garr 10 to Garr 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having Specialists in this skill at this time. • TN Classic: There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10. • TN 2020: Upon transitioning into TN 2020 code set, Garrison 10+ skill levels will allow additional Garrisons not artificially restricted by code.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Garrison, Specialists</i>

Name	Sentry Duty
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Units in the Tribe with Sentry Duty gain the ability to assign Warriors to Sentry Duty. If 10 Warriors are assigned for every 1,000 Population (or fraction thereof) in the Hex to Sentry Duty, Clan Units in that hex gain +2 Terrain Proficiency when defending.</p> <p>If a Garrison unit performs the Sentry Duty, Clan Units in that hex gain an additional +2 Terrain Proficiency.</p>
Summary	<i>Assign Warriors to Sentry Duty and gain Terrain Proficiency during battles.</i>

Geology

Name	Geology 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Geology +1 (example from Geo 10 to Geo 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having Specialists in this skill at this time. • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Geology, Specialists</i>

Name	Geology IV, Geology V, Geology VI
DL	4,5,6,...
Pre-Req	Geology IV: Geology 10 (Group C skill), Geology III (Mining research) Geology V: Geology IV (Geology research) Geology VI: Geology V (Geology research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Geology IV: Geology III (Mining research) Geology V: Geology IV (Geology research) Geology IV: Geology V (Geology research)
Description	<p>The effect of gaining a Geology topic is to add levels to your Mining Skill.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Geology 4: +5 Level to Mining (ex. Min 20 to Min 25) ◦ Geology 5: +5 Level to Mining (ex. Min 26 to Farm 30) ◦ Geology 6: +5 Level to Mining (ex. Min 32 to Farm 35) • Additional Skill Level Bonus: Every research topic of Geology 7 or higher adds an

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>additional +5 Mining levels.</p> <p>Requirements:N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Books may be written. • There is no current limit to the levels of Geology that can be researched.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Mining</i>

Glasswork

Name	Field Glasses
DL	5
Pre-Req	
Recipe	1 Field Glasses: Glasswork 10, Mtl 3, People 2, Lens 4, Brass 2, Coal 10, Gold 4
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fortification Value: Units (or all units in a MotC condition) with Field Glasses gain casualty reduction of a percentage equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ the effective Generalship skill level, rounded up. This stacks with other sources of Fortification Value such as walls, moats, crenellations, etc. This bonus applies even if the unit is attacking or using other fortifications. • Aggressive: Units (or all units in a MotC condition) with Field Glasses gain a percentage bonus to Potential Casualties equal to $\frac{1}{2}$ the effective Generalship skill level, rounded up. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leaders: This bonus is only applicable if the unit (or units in MotC) have one or more unit with the Generalship skill at 1 or higher. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Example: A unit with Generalship 7 and Field Glasses would gain a 4% bonus to potential casualties and would reduce incoming potential casualties by 4%.
Summary	<i>New Item: Field Glasses, Combat Bonus to Generalship skill.</i>

Name	Glasswork 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Glasswork +1 (example from Glass 10 to Glass 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Restrictions: N/A Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Glasswork, Specialists</i>

Name	Stained Glass Window
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Stained Window: Art 6, People 8, Sand 90, Lead 10, Copper 5, Gold 1, Coke 400 *Requires access to 1 Glasspipe and 1 Diamond each, per Window
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> New Item (Stained Glass Window): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stained Glass Windows are used for Advanced Cultural Buildings. They currently are little more than a building block for future advancement. New Activity (Glasswork / Stained Glass Window / None): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Completion of this research topic gives the Tribe the ability to use a Glasswork activity to produce Stained Glass Windows. Each Stained Glass Window produced in a turn requires access to a Glasspipe and Diamond. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Glasspipe: Each Stained Glass Window produced in a turn requires that the unit has access to a Glasspipe. One Glasspipe per Stained Glass Window produced in that turn. Diamond: Each Stained Glass Window produced in a turn requires that the unit has access to a Diamond. One Diamond per Stained Glass Window produced in that turn. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Limited Production: A Tribe may produce no more than 5 Stained Glass Windows per month.
Summary	<i>New Item: Stained Glass Window, Component for advanced cultural buildings</i>

Generalship

Name	Combat Discipline
DL	6
Pre-Req	Army (Combat research) Generalship (Leadership research) Generalship 10 (Group B skill) Junior Officer (Leadership research) Second in Command (Leadership research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Skill – Combat Discipline (Group B): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Reduced Casualties: Units in a Tribe that has Combat Discipline skill take 1%, per skill level of Combat Discipline, fewer Casualties per from all sources in all styles of combat including Suppression, Security, Field, Siege, etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Example: If a source was dealing 100 Potential Casualties to a Unit with Combat Discipline skill at 8, it would take 8% less Potential Casualties reducing the 100 incoming Potential Casualties down to 92. • Increased Military Morale: Each level of Combat Discipline skill in a Unit adds +0.005 to its Military Morale. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Annual Upkeep: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ TN Classic: Annually, on the first month of each year, a Tribe must pay either 10 Silver or 1 Coin per Warrior in the Tribe and all of its units. Failure to pay results in no benefit from this skill until the payment is made and the payment only lasts until the end of the year. Payment is made through transfer to usage on month 1 of each year. ○ TN 2020: Monthly, a Unit must pay 1 Silver or 0.01 Coin per Warrior in a Unit with Combat Discipline. Payment will be made through a command in the Administration phase of the turn. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mutual Use: All sides in a combat may gain a bonus from Combat Discipline. • Combat Discipline aids in unit cohesion and the ability of the unit to carry out orders effectively.
Summary	<i>New Skill – Combat Discipline, reduce casualties, increase Military Morale</i>

Name	Combined Arms
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Army Factor Bonus: +0.05 Army Factor for each type of combat assignment employed in the battle. Valid Combat Assignments are Cavalry, Ranged, Infantry, Heavy/Siege and Naval. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Must assign at least 2 different Combat assignments. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Naval may only be assigned if in a Coastal Hex or adjacent to a River/Canal. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Example: If you assign Ranged and Infantry, you would get a +0.10 to Army Factor. If you assign Ranged, Infantry and Cavalry, you would get a +0.15 to Army Factor. If you assign Ranged, Infantry, Cavalry, Heavy/Siege and Naval, you
Summary	<i>Combat Bonus: Increase to Army Factor based upon different troop types</i>

Name	Circumvallation
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Once completed, this research topic allows a besieging force to construct a Ditch/Moat and wooden Palisade (with Wooden Towers) surrounding the village they are besieging.</p> <p>Note that circumvallation construction can be done only on turns when the siege order is given – an assault does NOT allow circumvallation construction.</p> <p>These defenses come into play whenever the besieged defenders attempt to break the siege (or to end DEVA) and/or when any outside forces try to attack the besiegers. In these cases, the casualties suffered by the besiegers are reduced the factors shown in the rules for Ditches, Moats, Palisades and Wooden Towers.</p>

	<p>For example a 40% reduction for a wooden Palisade with a Moat.</p> <p>To be effective, the circumvallation walls must cover FOUR times the circumference of the walls of the village being sieged.</p> <p>For example, 4,800 yards of circumvallation is required to fully circumvallate a besieged village with 1,200 yards of walls.</p> <p>Finally, circumvallation walls remain in existence for only as long as the besiegers remain in the hex. They instantly vanish if the besiegers ever leave the hex for any reason.</p>
Summary	<i>Build fortifications around your enemy's fortifications and trap them inside</i>

Name	Field Marshall
DL	7
Pre-Req	Generalship 11 (Generalship research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>This adds a new skill (Category B) called Field Marshall. A Tribe that has completed the Field Marshall research topic may develop this skill.</p> <p>A Tribe that possesses Field Marshall has its Generalship skill increased by the unit's Field Marshall skill's full value one-half of its Field Marshall skill, rounded down, for all combat calculations. In addition, when two Clans are attacking the same target (or defending against two attackers) the Clan with Field Marshall may determine the order of attacks (that is, which Clan attacks or is attacked, first). This also applies when multiple units of a single Clan are attacking or defending. The Clan with the highest Field Marshall level will prevail should there be more than one Clan with Field Marshall (it outranks Generalship).</p>
Summary	<i>New Skill - Field Marshall, increases Leadership which increases Damage</i>

Name	Generalship 11
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Field Marshall (Generalship research)
Description	<p>Increases Generalship skill level by +1 to 11.</p> <p>Specialists are not allowed</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Generalship, No specialists</i>
Name	Generalship 12
DL	7
Pre-Req	<u>Generalship 11 (Generalship research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Increases Generalship skill level by +1 to 11.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Generalship, No specialists</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Healing

Name	Barber Surgeons
DL	4
Pre-Req	Battlefield Medicine (Healing research)
Recipe	N/A
Description	<p>Barber Surgeons were skilled at saving the lives of Warriors thought totally lost, but those Warriors did not return whole. Missing limbs, eyes and chronic pain were the lingering effects of the Barber Surgeons ministrations.</p> <p>Requirements:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. An additional 10 Actives, Warriors or Hirelings per 100 Warriors may be assigned to a battlefield support role as healers. If there are not enough additional Warriors assigned, the bonus to the Shift to Inactives is reduced pro-rata. <p>Benefit:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. At the end of all Combat for the turn, a Unit with Barber Surgeons gains Inactives equal to 5% (rounded up) of the “dead” Warriors for that Unit. 1. Example: 250 Warriors are listed as Casualties. At the end of the Combat for the turn, the Unit loses 250 Warriors but gains $250 \times 0.05 = 13$ Inactives <p><i>Warriors once considered beyond saving and regulated to the embrace of death are instead hastily operated on and go on to live productive lives cleaning latrines and wishing for their glory days while lamenting the loss of a limb, eye or other body part.</i></p>
Summary	Assign people in Combat to shift “Dead” people into Inactives (minus some limbs)

Name	Battlefield Medicine
DL	5
Pre-Req	War College (Research research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Barber Surgeons (Healing research) Battlefield Medics (Healing research) Camp Medics (Healing research)
Description	Battlefield Medicine provides the ability to heal wounded combatants between the Ranged and Melee phase of combat.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Requirements: Units in the Tribe with Battlefield Medicine may assign Warriors and Actives to a battlefield support role as healers. 5 Healer (Warrior, Active or Hireling) must be assigned in the monthly Turn Orders for every 100 Warriors participating in combat that turn. Less Healers have a corresponding loss of efficiency in healing. Warriors assigned to battlefield support role as a healer do not count against the 1/3rd limit.</p> <p>Benefits: Once Battlefield Medicine is completed and healers assigned, Units in the Tribe that are involved in combat may attempt to heal Wounded warriors at the end of the Ranged combat phase. Wounded warriors that are healed are available to fight in the Melee phase though any wounded warriors that are not healed are beyond saving and are dead. Healing performed at the end of ranged phase follows standard healing rules with the exception that only 25% of the normal number of warriors are healed. It just is not as effective as a more stable form of healing</p> <p>CODE NOTE 1: Assigning of Healers is not yet supported by the AutoOrder spreadsheet. Until it is updated, leave them unassigned and provide the assignment in a Note under the Comments section.</p> <p>CODE NOTE 2: Battlefield Medicine is not currently coded and is part of Phase II of the Combat Module. Utility of this research will not be effective during combat until the code supports. Learning this research now would provide no benefit until the code is completed.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Gain the ability to perform Healing in between Ranged and Melee phase</i>

Name	Battlefield Medics
DL	4
Pre-Req	Battlefield Medicine (Healing research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Requirements: An additional 10 Warriors (not Actives or Hirelings) per 100 Warriors may be assigned to a battlefield support role as healers. If there are not enough additional Warriors assigned, the bonus to effectiveness is reduced pro-rata.</p> <p>Benefits: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. These Battlefield medics allow the healing for Battlefield Medicine to be at 50% efficiency. </p>

	<p>2. Additionally, prior to Healing, 2% (rounded up to the nearest integer) of the Warriors that were designated as Casualties in the Ranged Phase are converted to Wounded and may be healed normally.</p> <p>CODE NOTE 1: Battlefield Medics is not currently coded and is part of Phase II of the Combat Module. Utility of this research will not be effective during combat until the code supports. Learning this research now would provide no benefit until the code is completed.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases pre-Melee healing and allows some 'dead' people to be healed.</i>

Name	Camp Medics
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>Battlefield Medicine (Healing research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A skilled set of Medics were able to lend their assistance to an entire army, but only if they were given the proper logistics and authority to act among a collection of different units.</p> <p>Benefits: Any Unit with Camp Medics research topic may serve to provide healing to any other friendly unit of the same Clan in the same Hex. This combat may be Siege, Assault or Assault by way of Locate. Standard healing rules apply with the exception that the Unit with Camp Medic skills and research topics are used in regards to Healing and not the combat unit's own skills.</p> <p>For all intents and purposes, the combat Unit's Healing (and related) skill(s) is equal to the skill of the unit with Camp Medics and the combat Unit may include the Healing related research topics on the list of known research topics for the combat.</p> <p><i>Its Camp Sanitation but for a Healing Corp.</i></p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Allows one Unit to heal all friendly units</i>

Name	Cleanliness
DL	5
Pre-Req	Healing 10 (Group B Skill) Sanitation 10 (Group C skill)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Improves population growth (0.5%) in all units from the Tribe with this research.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased Population Growth: A Tribe, and its units, with the Cleanliness research topic gain an improved population growth equal to 0.5%, similar to Hospital, Medicine 1 and Sewers. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Boosts population growth</i>

Name	Healing 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Healing +1 (example from Heal 10 to Heal 11) Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specialists: There are no benefits to having Specialists in this skill at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Healing, Specialists</i>

Name	Hospital
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Hospital: People 1250, Eng9, Stones 5000, Logs 500
Leads To	N/A
Description	Improves population growth (0.5%), and adds +4 to Healing Skill in combat

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	conducted in the Village where the Hospital is present. A single Hospital serves all Tribes of the one Clan in the site. Can be built for other Tribes but they require Hospital research to use. Once built, all population benefits currently allowed will be automatically credited each turn (that is, the modifier is hard coded). Heal skill must be at least Lvl 10 for this to happen.
Summary	<i>New Building - Hospital, Boosts population growth</i>

Name	Medicine 1, Medicine 2
DL	6, 6
Pre-Req	Medicine 1: N/A Medicine 2: Medicine 1 (Healing research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Medicine 1: Medicine 2 (Healing research) Medicine 2: N/A
Description	<p>Improves population growth (0.5%, 0.25%), and adds +4 to Healing Skill in combat conducted by units from the Tribe with this research.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased Population Growth: A Tribe, and its units, with the Medicine 1 research topic gain an improved population growth equal to 0.5%, 0.25% similar to one half of Hospital and Sewers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Medicine 2 provides an additional 0.5% 0.25% improved population growth. Temporary Skill Boost: A Tribe, and its units, count as having +4 to their Healing skill for Combat related healing. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: Books may be written.</p>
Summary	<i>Boosts population growth, Promotes healing</i>

Name	Salves
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	1 Herb and 2 Silver can be made into 1 Salve (Healing activity) 1 Salve is equal to 2

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

n	Herbs during Healing in combat. 1 person can make 10 Herbs into 10 Salves. Weight as Herbs.
Summary	<i>New Item - Salves, Counts as 2 Salves</i>

Name	Seek Herbs
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Increase Herb returns when Seeking - triple finds during Seeking using the same number of people. Note, you show me triple figures <u>after</u> Horses, Backpacks etc have been applied.
Summary	<i>Seeking Boost - Triples herbs found during seeking</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Heavy Weapons

Name	Breaching Walls																												
DL	6																												
Pre-Req	N/A																												
Recipe	N/A																												
Leads To	N/A																												
Description	<p>To be developed. The effect of creating breaches is to reduce defensive factor.</p> <p>..\Combat\Breaches\BreachesSteveSimmonsSheetVII.xls</p> <p>One yard or breach repaired of wall requires the following:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ITEM</th><th>SKILL</th><th>TYPE</th><th>PEOPLE</th><th>LOGS/STONES</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>10'</td><td>Eng 4</td><td>Palisade</td><td>1 Person</td><td>3 Logs</td></tr> <tr> <td>10'</td><td>Eng 7</td><td>Stonewall</td><td>3 Person</td><td>30 Stones</td></tr> <tr> <td>15'</td><td>Eng 8</td><td>Stonewall</td><td>6 Person</td><td>45 Stones</td></tr> <tr> <td>20'</td><td>Eng 9</td><td>Stonewall</td><td>9 Person</td><td>60 Stones</td></tr> </tbody> </table>				ITEM	SKILL	TYPE	PEOPLE	LOGS/STONES	10'	Eng 4	Palisade	1 Person	3 Logs	10'	Eng 7	Stonewall	3 Person	30 Stones	15'	Eng 8	Stonewall	6 Person	45 Stones	20'	Eng 9	Stonewall	9 Person	60 Stones
ITEM	SKILL	TYPE	PEOPLE	LOGS/STONES																									
10'	Eng 4	Palisade	1 Person	3 Logs																									
10'	Eng 7	Stonewall	3 Person	30 Stones																									
15'	Eng 8	Stonewall	6 Person	45 Stones																									
20'	Eng 9	Stonewall	9 Person	60 Stones																									
Summary	<i>To be developed, it allows breaching of walls in sieges</i>																												

Name	Heavy Weapons 11			
DL	5			
Pre-Req	N/A			
Recipe	N/A			
Leads To:	N/A			
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Heavy Weapons +1 (example from Hvy 10 to Hvy 11) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: Heavy Weapons Specialists may not be trained. <p>Notes: N/A</p>			
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Heavy Weapons</i>			

Name	Slave Crews			
DL	6			
Pre-Req	N/A			

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Slave Crews II (Heavy Weapons research)
Description	<p>Warriors crewing specific heavy weapons may be accompanied by a Slave (one Slave per Warrior participating and each Slave requires a Shackle). Applicable heavy weapons are Catapults, Ballistae and Trebuchets.</p> <p>In the even that the Heavy Weapons warriors suffer casualties, these are taken first by the Slaves rather than the warriors. Once all slaves have been eliminated/wounded, then further Casualties are applied to the Warriors.</p> <p>Slaves are not available for any other activity during the turn (that is the slaves must be put on defense like the warriors).</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Slaves can soak damage instead of Warriors for Heavy Weapons crews.</i>

Name	Slave Crews II
DL	3
Pre-Req	Slave Crews (Heavy Weapons research)
Recipe	N/A
Description	As Slave Crews but Slaves may be used with any crew manning weapons whose effectiveness uses either the Heavy Weapons or the Artillery skill.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Slaves can be used for heavy weapons or artillery</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Herbing

Name	Enhanced Herb Yield
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>The Tribe that possesses this research improves the yield from their herb plots.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each acre of herb plot yields 3 Herbs in month 12 (instead of 2). <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Players will need to add extra herbs via auto transfers in month 12 (until this is incorporated into code).
Summary	<i>More herbs produced from Herb Plots each year</i>

Name	Herbing 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Herbing +1 (example from Herb 10 to Herb 11) Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Herbing, Specialists</i>

Name	Improved Herb Planting
DL	5

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>The Tribe that possesses this research can plant more herb plots each spring month.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Increases the number of people that can plant herbs each spring month from 100 to 200 · Need corresponding hoes and herbs for extra plots. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Players will need to add extra herb plots each spring month via GM until incorporated into code
Summary	<i>More Herb Plots planted each spring month</i>

Herding

Name	Angora Goats
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Angora Goats may be sheared for wool (cotton) twice a year on months 6 and 12. One person may shear 10 goats. Each goat produces 25 cotton (1 person with 10 goats can produce 250 cotton).</p> <p>All goats in the Clan are considered to be Angora Goats, though only the tribe with the research and its elements may perform the shearing.</p> <p>Note: Until Shearing is coded, twice a year the player shall be responsible for manually reporting the shearing. During months 6 and 12, any Population that shall perform the shearing action should not be assigned to other tasks. The player shall use the autotransfer system to transfer the Cotton FROM 1263 and TO the unit performing the shearing.</p>
Summary	<i>Goats give wool which is really Cotton</i>

Name	Animal Training
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Circus Troupe (Dancing research)
Description	<p>Animal Training allows units of the Tribe to train Performance Animals.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fair: Performance Animals may perform at the Fair. See updated Fair spreadsheet. • Research Topics: Other research topics, Circus Troupe for example, require Performance Animals. <p>Training:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initial Training: Performance Animals may be trained by spending 1 Active per Animal for 3 months. The type of Animal must be identified at the start of Animal Training and the animals must be present with the Unit throughout the duration of the training. Neither the Actives nor the Animals may perform other activities during these months. Utilize Comments in the turn

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>orders to track the training of the animals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Completion: At the end of the Training, utilize the Comments section of the orders to request the conversion of the animals to Performance Animals. • Periodic Training: 1 Active per Performance Animal must be used each season to perform periodic training for each Performance Animal. If this is not performed, the Performance Animal will revert to a normal animal of that type. If this is caught by the GM vs the player, the animal may in fact escape its neglectful masters. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Breeding: Performance animals do not breed. • Herding: Performance animals require normal herding. • Fodder/Water: Performance animals require normal nourishment. • Transfers: Performance Animals may not be transferred to a unit without Animal Training research.
Summary	<i>Animals trained for Fair events</i>

Name	Dairy Cattle
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	100 Milk: 1 Person, 10 Cattle (Reusable) 30 Cheese: 1 Person, 90 Milk
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Dairy allows the use of the Milking and Cheesemaking activities.</p> <p>Milking (Group A): This new skill allows 10 Milkers per level (limited to 10,000 at Milk10) to perform the Milking activity. Milk must be used in the turn produced or it will be lost. Milk is not produced in desert or arid terrain. Milk may be used a provs or water. 10 Milk is consumed as 1 Prov. One person milks 10 cattle to produce 100 milk.</p> <p>Cheesemaking (Group C): This new skill allows 10 Cheesemakers per Cheesemaking level. Cheese is consumed as Provs. 1 Cheese is consumed as 1 Prov. 1 Person makes 30 Cheese using 90 milk. 1 person uses 90 Milk to make 30 Cheese.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows access to Milking and Cheesemaking, new sources of Food</i>

Name	Expert Breeding
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Veterinarian Medicine (Herding research)

Description	Add 3 to the Herding skill for purposes of Herd Growth. Players need to tell me when this research <u>first</u> comes in so I can manually adjust the Herd skill to 13. Note this does not mean you have achieved Herd11 for the purposes of Specialists etc. Herd11 needs to be attained separately but if it is your effective Herd level is 14.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Herding, instant +3 to Herd skill.</i>

Name	Fences
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Fence: People 50, Eng 4, Logs 100
Leads To	Improved Fence Builders (Garrison research) Improved Fence Builders (Herding research)
Description	<p>Holds 50 Horse/Cattle/Camel, or 100 Goats. May be built for other Tribes/Clans. Fences are considered to be outside Village walls (and may be built independent of Village for example, in an adjacent hex).</p> <p>Fences is a research that increases Herder Efficiency. Maximum Bonus: +1 Herder Efficiency MaxFences: #Goats/100 + #Cattle/50 + #Horses/50 + #Camels/50 Bonus: # Fences / Max Fences Required Fences for Maximum Bonus: MaxFences</p> <p>If you have 1000 goats, 500 cattle and 500 horses, you normally require 50+50+50 = 150 maximum herders. Your maximum fences are 1000/100 + 500/50 + 500/50 = 30 Fences. If you have 30 fences, your bonus is 30 / 30 = +1.0 Herder efficiency. You normally require 90 herders, now it is 90 / 2 = 45 herders required. If you only had 15 fences, your bonus would be 15 / 30 = +0.50 Herder efficiency. You normally require 90 herders, now it is 90 / 1.5 = 60 herders required.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Fences, reduces herders required.</i>

Name	Military Dogs
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Training Allowed: Completion of this research topic allows units in the Tribe to convert Dogs into any of the new Dog types listed below (initially Guard Dog and War Dog). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Conversion into a new dog type is instantaneous but irreversible. Once a Dog becomes a specialty dog, it cannot revert back to a Dog or convert to a

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>different specialty dog type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ It requires no practical time to train the dog as it happens during the Activity stage. ○ Specialty Dogs trained during the activity stage are not available until the next turn. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● New Dog Type / Guard Dog: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Security: Guard Dogs may be assigned to Security activity. Each Guard Dog increases the effectiveness of the Security activity. More than 100 Guard Dogs assigned to Security has a negligible extra effect. ○ Suppression: Guard Dogs may be assigned to Suppression activity. Each Guard Dog increases the effectiveness of the Suppression activity. More than 100 Guard Dogs assigned to Suppression has a negligible extra effect. ● New Dog Type / War Dog: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Combat 1.0 Module: In Combat 1.0 Module, A War Dog provides a +0.50 Combat Efficiency Bonus to a single troop. That is, a Troop with a War Dog does 50% more damage. ○ Combat 2.0 Module: Upon conversion to Combat 2.0 module, War Dogs will no longer provide a +0.50 Combat Efficiency for Melee. Instead, War Dogs will be a Troop Type of their own, similar to Mercenaries, Guards, Warriors, Knights, etc. War Dogs will fight in Melee Phases only. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ A War Dog is equivalent to a Warrior armed with a club. War Dogs fight with their own Combat, Tactics, Military Morale and Army Effectiveness. They use the Leadership of their host Tribe. ▪ War Dogs start with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Combat 1 ● Tactics 1 ● Military Morale 1.10 ▪ War Dogs take their own casualties but may wear special dog barding. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Combat: The number of War Dogs that may be deployed in combat may not exceed the number of Warriors deployed (where Elite Troops, Conscripts, Yeoman Archers and other non Warrior troop types are not regarded as Warriors). ● Combat: War Dogs bonuses only affect Melee combat (Infantry / Cavalry). ● Transfer: Guard Dogs and War Dogs may not be transferred to other Tribes / Clans that don't have the appropriate research. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Convert dogs into Guard / War dogs for combat.</i>

Name	Herding 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Herding 11</p> <p>Allows Herding Specialists Herding Specialists increases Herder Efficiency. Maximum Bonus: +1 Herder Efficiency Bonus Gained: # of Specialists / # of people assigned Maximum number of Specialists: # of Maximum Herders / 2</p> <p>For instance, if you require a total of 100 herders, the maximum number of Specialists that may be assigned is $100 / 2 = 50$ Specialists. If you assign 50 Specialists and no other herders, you would gain $50 / 50 = +1.00$. If you assign 25 Specialists and 50 herders, you would gain $25 / (25 + 50) = 25 / 75 = +0.34$ Herder efficiency. Without any other research, the herder efficiency would be $1 + 0.34 = 1.34$. The total herders required would be $100 / 1.34 = 75$ herders which is the total number of herders assigned.</p> <p>Prerequisite for Herding 12</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Herding, allows specialists</i>

Name	Herding 12
DL	6
Pre-Req	<u>Herding 11 (Herding research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Herding 12</p> <p>Prerequisite for Herding 13</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Herding</i>

Name	Horse Herders
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>Horse Herders is a research that increases Herder Efficiency. Maximum Bonus: +1 Herder Efficiency Bonus: Total Horses / Total Animals Horses Needed for Maximum Bonus: Total Animals</p> <p>If you have 1000 horses, you would require a total of 100 herders. With Horse Herders, you would gain a bonus to Herder Efficiency equal to $1000 (\# \text{ of Horses}) / 1000 (\text{Total Animals}) = +1.00$. Without any other research, the herder efficiency would be $1 + 1 = 2$. The total herders required would be $100 / 2 = 50$ herders.</p> <p>If you have 500 horses and 500 goats, you would require a total of 75 herders. With Horse Herders, you would gain a bonus to Herder Efficiency equal to $500 (\# \text{ of Horses}) / 1000 (\text{Total Animals}) = +0.50$. Without any other research, the herder efficiency would be $1 + 0.5 = 1.5$. The total herders required would be $100 / 1.5 = 67$ herders.</p>
Summary	<i>Reduces herders required for herding</i>

Name	Hunting Dogs
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Hunter with a Dog counts as 3 Hunters (you will need to show this to me – for example if you have 50 Hunters with 10 Dogs show this as 70 Hunters). You may convert Dogs to Hunting Dogs (which may then not be transferred to other Clans).
Summary	<i>Increases output of hunting. Each dog counts as 2 hunters</i>

Name	Herding Dogs
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Herding Dogs is a research that increases Herder Efficiency. Maximum Bonus: +1 Herder Efficiency Bonus: # of Herding Dogs / Maximum Herding Dogs Required Dogs for Maximum Bonus: # of Maximum Herders / 2 Maximum Herding Dogs: # of Maximum Herders / 2</p> <p>If you require 100 herders to herd your herd, the maximum number of Herding dogs</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>that you can utilize is $100/2 = 50$ herding dogs. If you have 50 herding dogs, this would get you a bonus of # of 50 (Number of Herding Dogs) / 50 (maximum herding dogs) = +1.0. Without any other research, the herder efficiency would be $1 + 1 = 2.0$. The total herders required would be $100 / 2 = 50$ herders.</p> <p>If you require 100 herders to herd your herd, the maximum number of Herding dogs that you can utilize is $100/2 = 50$ herding dogs. If you have 25 herding dogs, this would get you a bonus of # of 25 (Number of Herding Dogs) / 50 (maximum herding dogs) = +0.50. Without any other research, the herder efficiency would be $1 + 0.5 = 1.5$. The total herders required would be $100 / 1.50 = 67$ herders.</p> <p>Conversion to Herd Dogs from the Dog pack can occur at any time, but is non-reversible (you Order “convert xx Dogs to Herd Dogs”). The dogs are non-transferrable (the research includes the ability to handle).</p> <p>Dog 3 provs, 1 skin, 1 guteats 0.5 provs per turn Weighs 50 lb</p>
Summary	<i>Reduces herders required</i>

Name	Improved Fence Builders
DL	2
Pre-Req	Fences (Engineering research) Or Fences (Herding research)
Recipe	1 Fence: People 5, Eng 8, Logs 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Engineering Activity</p> <p>The Tribe and its elements are more efficient at building Fences. When building a fence, a Unit with Improved Fence Builder may use a new Recipe to build the Fence.</p>
Summary	<i>Makes building fences a little bit less of a pain, but not enough of a reduction.</i>

Name	Improved Stable Builders
DL	2
Pre-Req	Stables (Herding research) Or Stables (Engineering research)
Recipe	1 Fence: People 5, Eng 8, Logs 100
Leads To	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	Engineering Activity The Tribe and its elements are more efficient at building Stables. When building a Stable, a Unit with Improved Stable Builders may use a new Recipe to build the Stable.
Summary	<i>Makes building stables a little bit less of a pain.</i>

Name	Mounted Herders
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Doubles the number of animals herded. Mounted Herders require a Saddle and Rope. Mounted Herders affect all animals, regardless. Mounted Herders is a research that increases Herder Efficiency. Maximum Bonus: +1 Herder Efficiency Bonus: Minimum of (Total herders assigned, Total Horses, Saddles, Rope) / (#ofMaxHerders/2) Horses Needed for Maximum Bonus: # of Max Herders / 2 If you require 100 maximum herders, the maximum number of mounted herders required is $100 / 2 = 50$. If you have 70 herders assigned, 25 saddles, 25 rope, 50 horses, your bonus is $25 / 50 = +0.50$. Your herder efficiency would be $1 + 0.50 = 1.5$ and you would need to assign $100 / 1.5 = 67$ herders. You've assigned 70, so that's more than enough.
Summary	<i>Reduces herders required</i>

Name	Smart Herding
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	4 Crooks: People 1, Wdw 2, Log 1
Description	Using Smart Herding requires that the Unit performing Herding have access to Crooks (Must be in its inventory or in its Goods Tribe's inventory). Smart Herding research is not required to make Crooks but without the research, they have no effect on Herding. They can be made by any unit provided it has Wdw 2. Crooks may be built prior to completing, or even starting, the research in order to

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

ensure that the Unit/Tribe has enough Crooks so they can use Smart Herding immediately upon completion.

Units with Crooks and without Smart Herding gain no benefits.

Max Crooks = #Max Herders Required * 0.70

Crook Ratio = # of Crooks / Max Crooks

Herder Reduction maximum: *0.70

Actual Herder Reduction Multiplier: $1 - 0.3 * \text{CrookRatio}$

After all other bonuses are calculated for Herder Efficiency and the number of Herders is calculated ($\text{\#MaxHerders} / \text{HerderEfficiency}$), this number is multiplied by the Actual Herder Reduction Multiplier. For example, you require 100 maximum herders. The maximum number of crooks is $100 * 0.70 = 70$ crooks maximum. You have 70 crooks. $70 / 70 = 1.00$. Your actual herder reduction multiplier is $1 - 0.30 * 1 = 1 - 0.3 = 0.7$. With no other research, you require $100 \text{ herders} * 0.70 = 70$ herders required.

If you only had 35 Crooks, you CrookRatio would be $35 / 70 = 0.5$. Your actual herder reduction multiplier would be $1 - 0.30 * 0.5 = 1 - 0.15 = 0.85$. With no other research, you require $100 * 0.85 = 85$ herders.

Weight: 2lbs

Summary	<i>New Item - Crooks, Reduces herders required</i>
---------	--

Name	Stables
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Stables: People 50, Logs 100
Leads To	Improved Stable Builders (Engineering Research) Improved Stable Builders (Herding research) Knights (Horsemanship research)
Description	<p>Holds 30 Horse or 30 Cattle, or 60 Goats. Halves herders required. Prerequisite for some Cavalry related troops (for example, Knights).</p> <p>Stables is a research that increases Herder Efficiency. Maximum Bonus: +1 Herder Efficiency MaxStables: $\#Goats/60 + \#Cattle/30 + \#Horses/30 + \#Camels/30$ Bonus: $\#Stables / \text{MaxStables}$ Required Stables for Maximum Bonus: MaxStables</p> <p>If you have 600 goats, 300 cattle and 300 horses, you normally require $30+30+30 = 90$</p>

	maximum herders. Your maximum stables is $600/60 + 300/30 + 300/30 = 30$ stables. If you have 30 stables, your bonus is $30 / 30 = +1.0$ Herder efficiency. You normally require 90 herders, now it is $90 / 2 = 45$ herders required. If you only had 15 stables, your bonus would be $15 / 30 = +0.50$ Herder efficiency. You normally require 90 herders, now it is $90 / 1.5 = 60$ herders required.
Summary	<i>New Building - Stables, Reduces herders required</i>

Name	Veterinarian Medicine
DL	7
Pre-Req	<u>Herding 11 (Herding research)</u> <u>Expert Breeding (Herding research)</u> Scroll
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>This adds a new skill (Category B) called Veterinarian Medicine. A Tribe that has completed the Veterinarian Medicine research topic may develop this skill.</p> <p>A Tribe that possesses Veterinarian Medicine has its Herding skill increased by one-half of its Veterinarian Medicine skill, rounded down. In addition, its Horsemanship skill is increased by one-half of its Veterinarian Medicine skill, rounded down for the purposes of determining Horse casualties for a battle.</p> <p>Herding skill is changed on once per year. Note: it is up to the player to tell me when this happens. For example, on turn 8/946 tribe 2999 completes the Veterinarian Medicine research topic and can start developing the Veterinarian Medicine (VetM) skill. ONE YEAR later on 8/947, 2999's VetM has reached 5 (and its Herd skill still = 11). Thus on turn 8/947, you would set 2999's Herd skill = 13.</p> <p>On the following year, if VetM has reached 8, Herd would be set = 15.</p> <p>Books may be written but each Book requires a Scroll.</p> <p>Upon completion of the Research, the Scroll is destroyed/lost and is sent to Usage (1263) via transfer.</p>
Summary	<i>New Skill - Veterinarian Medicine. Increases Herd and Horsemanship skill.</i>

Herding Process

- 1. Determine total number of each animal**
- 2. Determine maximum herders required based upon no research.**
- 3. Get # of Fences**
- 4. Get # of Wire Fences**
- 5. Get # of Stables**
- 6. Get number of Crooks (If Smart Herding)**
- 7. Check if Horse Herders research.**

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

- a. If so, $\text{HorseModifier} = \text{Total Horses} / \text{Maximum Animals}$.
- 8. Mounted Herders? Yes or No.
 - a. If yes, $\text{MaxMountedHerders} = \text{MaxHerdersReq}/2$
 - b. $\text{MountedModifier} = \text{TotalHorses} / \text{MaxMountedHerders}$, max 1.00
- 9. Herding Dogs?
 - a. If Dogs: $\text{Max Dogs} = \text{MaxHerdersReq}/2$
 - b. $\text{Dog Modifier} = \text{\#HerdingDogs} / \text{MaxDogs}$, max 1.00
- 10. Specialists assigned?
 - a. If Yes, then $\text{SpecialistModifier} = \text{\#Specialists}/\text{\#PeopleAssigned}$.
- 11. If Fencing: $\text{MaxFences} = (\text{\#Goats}/100 + \text{\#HorsesandCattlendCamel}/50)$.
 - a. $\text{Fencing Modifier} = \text{\#Fences} / \text{MaxFences}$, max 1.00
- 12. If Stables: $\text{MaxStables} = (\text{\#Goats}/60 + \text{\#HorsesandCattleandCamel}/30)$
 - a. $\text{Stable Modifier} = \text{\#stables} / \text{MaxStables}$, max 1.00
- 13. If SmartHerding, $\text{MaxCrooks} = \text{MaxHerdersReq (From \#1 above)} * 0.7$
 - a. $\text{CrookRatio} = \text{\#Crooks} / \text{MaxCrooks}$
 - b. $\text{CrookModifier} = 1 - 0.3 * \text{CrookRatio}$
- 14. Herder Effectiveness =

$$1 + \text{SpecialistMod} + \text{FenceMod} + \text{StableMod} + \text{DogMod} + \text{HorseMod} + \text{MountedMod}$$
- 15. Herders Required = $\text{MaxHerdersRequired} / \text{HerderEffectiveness}$
- 16. Final Herders Required = $\text{Herders Required} * \text{CrookRatio}$

Horsemanship

Name	Close Formation (Close Order Cavalry)
DL	4
Pre-Req	Horsemanship 10 (Skill) Tactics 5 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Feudal Security (Politics research)
Description	+4 to Horsemanship, in addition to, not exclusive of, all other bonuses applicable.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Horsemanship</i>

Name	Equestrianism
DL	6
Pre-Req	Herding 10 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Tribe holding this research may host an annual Equestrian event.</p> <p>Requirements:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) 500 Warriors must attend at a cost of 100 silver each (total cost Silver 50,000), payable by the Tribe. 2) Benefit is gained once the Tribe hosts the event. <p>Benefits:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) The Tribe gains a bonus based upon the year. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Year 1: +0.02 General Morale Boost b. Year 2: +1 to Horsemanship skill (may go past 10 but does not allow Specialists) c. Year 3: +0.02 General Morale Boost d. Year 4: +1 to Herding skill (may go past 10 but does not allow Specialists)
Summary	<i>New Event - Equestrian, gain Morale, Horsemanship skill and Herding skill</i>

Name	Horsemanship 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus:

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Horsemanship +1 (example from Hor 10 to Hor 11) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Specialists: There are no Horsemanship specialists. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Horsemanship</i>

Name	Knights
DL	8
Pre-Req	Heraldry in One Tribe in Clan (Art research) Squire (Horsemanship research) Leadership 10 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Combat Effectiveness: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Combat Effectiveness – Offensive: Knights assigned to the Cavalry Combat Assignment have a Combat Effectiveness of x2.4 instead of x1.0 that a normal Warrior has. Combat Effectiveness - Offensive modifies the amount of Potential Casualties generated during a phase of Combat. Knights only gain this Combat Effectiveness bonus during the Melee phases and only when assigned as Cavalry. ○ Combat Effectiveness – Defensive: Knights have the standard Combat Effectiveness – Defensive of 1.00. It gains no benefits to resisting Potential Casualties. Combat Effectiveness – Defensive modifies the amount of Potential Casualties applied to this troop type during a phase of Combat. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Training: 1 Gold must be paid to convert 1 Warrior into 1 Knight. This may be done on any month of the year. For each Knight trained, a Warrior will be removed and a Knight added. • Annual Payment: 1 Gold must be paid per year in month 1 per Knight in a Unit. This is sent to 1263 via Transfer. If funds are not available, the Knighthood will lapse for those who are short. Only 2/3rds of Elite Troops that are not paid return to being Warriors. The other 1/3rd of unpaid Elite Troops are lost completely. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activities: Warriors are converted to Knights and once converted may do nothing else but be a Knight and perform military based activities (such as Defence,

	<p>Scouting, Security, Pacification, etc).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fielding in Combat: Only 1/3rd of a unit's Knights may be fielded in each Combat. This is separate from the 1/3rd limit of Warriors. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grand Fathered: If you already have Knights completed, contact the GM to gain Squire research automatically completed. • In Progress: If you are already in progress of research Knights, you may continue to do so even without Squire or Leadership 10 being completed. Additionally, if you are at DL 8 or 9, contact the GM to have him complete the research topic at DL 8. Additionally, if you are at DL 9, you may contact the GM to have him complete the research and add Squire at DL 2 / 4.
Summary	<i>New Population Type - Knights, each Knight is expensive but kills a lot of people.</i>

Name	Squire
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Knights (Horsemanship research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Army Factor: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Cavalry troops (any troop type assigned to Cavalry) from Units from a Tribe that has Squire research completed gains an Army Factor – Offensive Modifier of +0.1. ○ This stacks with Home Guard / Army as appropriate. Army Factor increases the Potential Casualties caused by those troops. +0.1 is equivalent to 5% more damage caused. • Army Factor – Defense: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Cavalry troops (any troop type assigned to Cavalry) from Units from a Tribe that has Squire research completed gains an Army Factor - Defense modifier of -0.05. ○ Army Factor - Defense is a modifier that is used to decrease Potential Casualties received. Squire basically reduces incoming Potential Casualties to the Tribe's Cavalry troops by 5%. <p>Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Bonus: +0.1 Army Factor and -0.05 Army Factor Defense for all Troop Types assigned to Cavalry combat assignment.</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Hunting

Name	Expert Trackers
DL	5
Pre-Req	Trackers (Hunting research) Seeking 10 (Group C skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Veteran Trackers (Hunting research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Seeking Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Tribe (or any of its units) that has completed Trackers research gains an additional +10% to their Seeking returns. This brings the bonus from Trackers and Expert Trackers to a combined +20%. • Hunting Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Tribe (or any of its units) that has completed Expert Trackers research gains a +5% bonus to their Hunting returns. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: The Player will need to automatically add the extra Seeking output to their transfers. The player will need to automatically add 5% extra people to their orders. • TN2020: The code automatically adds the extra Seeking and Hunting percentage with no additional activity from the player.
Summary	<i>Seeking Bonus, +10% yield (20% total). Hunting Bonus, +5% yield</i>

Name	Hunting 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Hunting +1 (example from Hunt 10 to Hunt 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Restrictions: N/A Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specialists: There are no benefits to having Specialists in this skill at this time. There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Hunting, Specialists</i>

Name	Hunting Dogs
DL	6
Pre-Req	*See Herding
Recipe	*See Herding
Leads To	N/A
Description	*See Herding
Summary	<i>Allows converting dogs into hunting dogs to increase hunting output</i>

Name	Mongol Hunt
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Mongol Hunt 2 (Hunting research)</u>
Description	Requires at least 1000 Hunters - increases Hunt by 1.2 (that is, 1000 Hunters will hunt as if they are 1200). 1.2 affects people not equipment (that is, if you are using 100 traps with 1000 people the MH has the effect of 100 traps with 1200 people). For the purposes of the Spreadsheet you multiply ordinary Hunters by 1.2, insert this figure into Hunters, then add implements. The current code base automatically adds in the extra 20% extra base hunters. You no longer need to add ‘virtual’ workers.
Summary	<i>+20% output from Hunting</i>

Name	Mongol Hunt 2
DL	4
Pre-Req	<u>Mongol Hunt (Hunting)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Requires at least 1000 Hunters - increases Hunt by 1.4 (that is, 1000 Hunters will hunt as if they are 1400). 1.4 affects people not equipment (that is, if you are using 100 traps with 1000 people the MH2 has the effect of 100 traps with 1400 people).

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	For the purposes of the Spreadsheet you multiply ordinary Hunters by 1.4, insert this figure into Hunters, then add implements. The current code base automatically adds in the extra 40% extra base hunters. You no longer need to add ‘virtual’ workers.
Summary	<i>+40% output from hunting</i>

Name	Trackers
DL	5
Pre-Req	Seeking 10 (Group C skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Expert Trackers (Hunting research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Seeking Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Tribe (or any of its units) that has completed Trackers research gains +10% to their Seeking returns, rounded up. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: The Player will need to automatically add the extra Seeking output to their transfers. • TN2020: The code automatically adds the extra Seeking percentage with no additional activity from the player.
Summary	<i>Seeking Bonus, +10% yield</i>

Name	Trappers
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Hunters may use up to 10 traps/snares each. Can also use 10 Improved Traps and 2 Advanced Traps.
Summary	<i>Allows workers that are hunting to use more traps than normal.</i>

Name	Varminting Crops
DL	3
Pre-Req	Farming 10 (Group A skill)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>The act of hunting vermin to aid pest control with a focus on the fields of crops.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Farming +2 (example from Farm 10 to Farm 12) • Siege Sanitation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Reduces the effects of Bio-War when besieged by 3% (stacks with all other Varminting research topics). <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: This does not allow Farming Specialists. That requires Farming 11. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Farming, BioWar resistance</i>

Name	Varminting Village
DL	3
Pre-Req	Sanitation 10 (Group C skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>The act of hunting vermin to aid pest control with a focus on villages.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Same Tribe - Sanitation +2 (example from San 10 to San 12) • Siege Sanitation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Reduces the effects of Bio-War when besieged by 3% (stacks with all other Varminting research). <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: This does not allow Sanitation Specialists. That requires Sanitation 11. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Sanitation, BioWar resistance</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Varminting Pasture
DL	3
Pre-Req	Herding 10 (Group A skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>The act of hunting vermin to aid pest control with a focus on pastures.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Same Tribe - Herding +2 (example from Hrd 10 to Hrd 12) • Siege Sanitation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Reduces the effects of Bio-War when besieged by 3% (stacks with all other Varminting research). <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: This does not allow Herding Specialists. That requires Herding 11. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Herding, BioWar resistance</i>

Name	Veteran Trackers
DL	5
Pre-Req	Expert Trackers (Hunting research) Seeking 11 (Seeking research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Seeking Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Tribe (or any of its units) that has completed Trackers research gains an additional +10% to their Seeking returns. This brings the bonus from Trackers, Expert Trackers and Veteran Trackers to a combined +30%. • Hunting Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Tribe (or any of its units) that has completed Veteran Trackers research gains a +5% bonus to their Hunting returns. This brings the bonus from Expert Trackers and Veteran Trackers to a combined +10%. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: The Player will need to automatically add the extra Seeking output to their transfers. The player will need to automatically add 5% extra people to their orders. • TN2020: The code automatically adds the extra Seeking and Hunting percentage with no additional activity from the player.
Summary	<i>Seeking Bonus, +10% yield (30% total). Hunting Bonus, +5% yield (10% total)</i>

Intelligence

Name	Battlefield Intelligence
DL	4
Pre-Req	<u>Field Intelligence (Intelligence research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Battlefield Intelligence provides data that any General within the same clan can take advantage of. In other words, possession of the Generalship skill is required to make use of this topic.</p> <p>The benefit is one-half of the user's Generalship skill (rounded up).</p> <p>The benefit times 1% reduces the user's casualties and increases the casualties of the opposing force.</p> <p>For example, a force led by a General with GShip=7 reduces its own casualties by 4% and increases the casualties of its opponents by 4%. These casualty adjustments combine with all other casualty adjustments.</p> <p>For example, the 4% reduction above combines with the 50% reduction offered by a 10' Stone Wall + Moat to provide a total reduction = 54%..</p> <p>Note: As with all Fortification Values, the final Fortification Value after all positive and negative modifiers does have a maximum limit.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Advanced scouting provides boosts to Ldr and Horsemanship</i>

Name	Field Intelligence
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Battlefield Intelligence (Intelligence research)</u>
Description	<p>A unit dispatching 4 scout parties with a minimum of 5 mounted scouts per party using a Field Intelligence order gains +2 Leadership and +2 Horsemanship for any combat that takes place in or immediately after the scouts are assigned.</p> <p>Using Field Intelligence Requires at least Leadership 6 and Scouting 6.</p> <p>Field Intelligence is the gathering of Intelligence in the battlefield and the application of it in combat. It allows a Clan to identify any weakness in their opponent's forces,</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>terrain advantages and other opportunities that could be used to their advantage.</p> <p>Scouts used for Field Intelligence orders do not deliver a scouting report. They are not concerned with the general terrain, mines and other units. Their focus is on specific advantages for combat. This could be a specific hill or defensive hollow within a hex rather than information on the whole hex.</p> <p>Scouts using the Field Intelligence order would not need to list directions as the GM would not run a scouting report for them. The result is a decrease in workload for the GM.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Advanced scouting provides boosts to Ldr and Horsemanship</i>

Name	Hire Mercenary Guard
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Hire Mercenary Guard sources and recruits Mercenaries from the local population. They cost 10 silver per turn (as per normal Mercenaries). Up to 200 Mercenaries may be recruited per year by means of this research.</p> <p>Courier Elements</p> <p>Each Courier Element/Element may deploy up to 100 Mercenary Guards (shown in status as Mercenaries).</p> <p>Mercenary Guard attached to couriers fight at the Morale and Leadership and Healing skill of the unit they attached to and at Com 6, Hor 6, Arc 6. The can be assigned to Security or Suppression as many as are in the unit.</p> <p>When assigned to defense in a unit performing a courier contract they can be assigned as defenders on a 1 to 1 warrior to defender ratio and the total defenders can exceed the 1/3 ratio if attacked while performing a courier mission. Eg a Courier Element with 60 Warriors present and 80 Guards may deploy to combat 20 Warriors (1/3) and 60 Guards (assuming these have been assigned to Defense).</p> <p><u>Elements and other units (normal)</u> Act as normal Mercenaries</p>
Summary	<i>Courier units may hire mercenaries as guards for silver</i>

Name	Intelligence 11
------	------------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Intelligence +1 (example from Int 10 to Int 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having Specialists in this skill at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Intelligence, Specialists</i>

Name	Native Operative
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Upon completion of Native Operative the Tribe with this topic recruits a group of locals to gather information about various skills from Category A, B and C. The recruits are purely an intelligence gathering unit, drawing information about skills from the local network. These locals form a tribe that consists of 10 Inactives.</p> <p>The Native Operative tribe can attempt skills as per any normal tribe, including using a teacher at normal payment rates.</p> <p>The Native Operative tribe incurs the monetary cost of a normal tribe.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It can move only by using the Follow Order. • It may not accept transfers of population. • it can perform no activities • it can only be populated with inactives (10) • it cannot hold goods and must be assigned a GT • it cannot work on Intelligence skill • it cannot conduct research <p>It may, on any turn, transfer any of its skills to another tribe in the clan as a BM transfer – provided the receiving tribe has a tribe (must be a tribe) in same the hex.</p>

	<p>This new skill level replaces the current skill level for that skill in the receiving Tribe.</p> <p>In return for the transfer of this knowledge, the Native Operatives are paid 50 rare commodities (of any type other than coffee or tea). This amount is transferred to usage.</p> <p>There is a Limit of one Native Operative tribe per clan.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Upon completion of this research, contact the GM to create the extra tribe. 2. The maximum number of Tribes that a Clan may have is 10. Creation of extra tribes through this research counts against this limit. Be aware that this may restrict your options for International NPC Tribes.
Summary	<i>Gain a specialty tribe dedicated to learning skills and transferring them to other tribes</i>

Name	Organized Intelligence Analysis (OIA)
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Allows any ONE Tribe of the Clan (this tribe must have INTELLIGENCE Skill = 10) to also ask ONE question per year about another player clan. The tribe with OIA need not be the same tribe as the tribe that asks the questions. Only questions with short simple answers are permitted. For example, what is the population of 0888? – Answer is “99,999”. All the stated limitations of Intelligence apply to this extra question. For example, for a site which is 20 hexes away the answer given should be within 2 hexes of the actual location. The question will be vetted by the GM.</p> <p>Rationale – Gathering Intelligence (e.g. the Intelligence Skill) is valuable in and of itself. However, this value can be greatly enhanced by an organized effort (e.g. the Research Skill) to analyze the various clues and hints that are gathered with the Intelligence Skill. Developing this research topic represents training the researchers (that do the analysis) to work with the intelligence gathers and to develop their abilities to “put the puzzle pieces together” to gain useful data about others clans.</p> <p>Restriction / Questions:</p> <p>Use of OIA requires that the question be asked about a specific Clan or unit belonging to a specific Clan.</p> <p>Use of OIA requires <u>specific</u> questions versus overly broad questions. Questions about skills, items, research topics, resources, must be limited to a single Skill, item or resource. Questions about population must be limited to a single number.</p>

	<p>Questions about research topics must be specific to a skill.</p> <p>Examples of allowed questions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) How much steel does Tribe 0123 have? (Specific resource) 2) How many swords does Tribe 1234 have? (Specific item) 3) What is the skill level of the Combat skill in Tribe 2345? (Specific skill) 4) What Combat skill research topics has Tribe 3456 completed? (Specific skill) 5) Does Clan 456 have a unit at a Gold Mine? (Specific resource) 6) Did Clan 456 attack me this turn? (Specific Clan, specific information) <p>Examples of questions that are too broad and not allowed:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) What mines are Clan 567 mining this turn? (Not specific resource) 2) What mines are Tribe 5678 mining this turn? (Not specific resource) 3) What weapons does Tribe 6789 currently have in inventory? (Not specific item) 4) What skills does Tribe 7890 have at or above level 6? (Not specific skill) 5) What Clan attacked me this turn? (No specific clan) 6) Where, or in which hex, is Clan XXX? (Question not allowed by GM) <p>Note: Where the nature of the question and the nature of the answer is not covered in the examples, the GM will exercise discretion.</p>
Summary	<i>Gain information about any other player clan.</i>

Name	Secret Path I, II, III, IV....
DL	3, 3, 3, 3....
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Using local knowledge, shortcuts are found through a range of hexes, even those that are usually impassable.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Formation: Once Secret Path research has been completed, at any time, a unit from this Tribe may form a Secret Path between any two hexes within 50 MP of each other. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The 50 MP requirement is in both directions. ○ MP calculations are performed as if the climate is FINE. ○ Impassable terrain such as Oceans, Lakes, Alps, HSM, etc cost 15 MP for these calculation purposes. Rivers and Canals cost 15 MP for the path to cross in addition to the terrain the path is moving into. • Rapid Movement: Any unit that knows the start and ending hex may utilize the secret path. A unit may move from one end of the path to the other end of the path with a single movement phase. This is accomplished by using the GOTO

	<p>movement type.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wagons: Wagons are able to use the path no matter what terrain it is. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Distance: At least one hex of the Secret Path must be within 20 hexes of a unit from the Tribe with this research. • Map: Player must provide a map of the path and supply an MP count for both directions. • Special Transfer Request: Player must complete a Special Transfer Route Request via appropriate spreadsheet. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Movement is only allowed between the two end points. A unit may not start or end elsewhere on the path. • Permanent: Once set, the Secret Path is permanent and may not be changed. • Spammable: This research topic may be taken as many times as desired. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There are little to no administration based tasks that would require Specialists.
Summary	<i>Create a path for rapid movement between two points even across impassable terrain</i>

Leadership

Name	Alliance MOTC
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Trusted Maps (Captaincy research) Trusted Maps (Economics research) Trusted Maps (Leadership research) Federal Community of Clans (Leadership research)
Description	<p>Once completed, this research topic allows MOTC to be declared between Tribes within Allied Clans (Alliances must be established using Corps Diplomatie BEFORE Alliance MOTC can be used) as if they were all members of a single Clan. To enable an Alliance MOTC, ALL the involved tribes must know this research topic and then sacrifice the requisite commodities (as explained below) and state which other Allied tribe(s) they will be joining with in a MOTC. An Alliance MOTC between tribes within two clans requires that each tribe sacrifice 10 units of a desired commodity and an additional 10 units of another, different non-desired commodity. An Alliance MOTC between tribes from three different clans requires that each tribe sacrifice 10 units of a desired commodity and an additional 10 units each of two, different non-desired commodities; e.g. each tribe sacrifices 30 commodities (10 of a desired commodity, 10 of one non-desired commodity and 10 of another different non-desired commodity). Between four clans requires 10 units of a desired commodity and an additional 10 units each of three, different non-desired commodities and so forth.</p> <p>This sacrifice simply enables an Alliance MOTC (and this fact should be shown in each clan's turn results). Once enabled, an Alliance MOTC may be held unused indefinitely and then used when needed by simply declaring a normal MOTC except that this MOTC may involve tribes from different clans. All involved tribes must be in a common hex when the Alliance MOTC is declared. A sacrifice allows one and only one Alliance MOTC to be declared. Further Alliance MOTC declarations each require their own sacrifices.</p> <p>Alliance MOTC Limitations – When an Alliance MOTC is declared, one of the participating tribes must be specified (by all participants) as the leader. At no time can the warriors from the other Alliance MOTC participants exceed the number of <u>warriors</u> in the leader's clan. This is enforced in a three-way MOTC, by limiting each of the other two (non-leader) participants' warriors to half the number of <u>warriors</u> in the leader's clan. In a four-way MOTC, this limit is reduced to a third and so forth. <u><i>An Alliance MOTC operates as a normal MOTC. Battles skills are averaged (weighted averaging) across all warriors in the MOTC. The one exception is Generalship. If the Tribe leading the Alliance MOTC possesses the Gship skill, its benefits accrue to all as</i></u></p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<i>the General is in command of the entire MOTC.</i> Finally, all tribes (except the Leader) involved in an Alliance MOTC lose all of their Skill Attempts while the MOTC is active. Once ended, an Alliance MOTC can be reactivated ONLY by further sacrifices of commodities as described above.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Alliance mates may form Meeting of The Clan together</i>

Name	Battle Groups
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	When in Combat, a Clan that has completed researching Battlegroups may, if in a Meeting of the Clan, deploy Battlegroups consisting of Archery and/or Heavy Weapons troops from only a single Tribe (that is, your best Archers may be deployed in the Missile phase). For example, ordinarily two Tribes A and B in Meeting of the Clan would use Archers at a weighted average of A and B. Under Battle Groups the archers may be taken from the Tribe with the highest Archery (or Heavy Weapons) Skill. Note – that if you want to use more Archers than are available in one of the Tribes then a weighted average will come into play (players must calculate this).
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Removes skill averaging when multiple units are in combat.</i>

Name	Federal Community of Clans
DL	4
Pre-Req	Alliance MotC (Leadership research) Or Alliance MotC (Diplomacy research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Federal Community of Clans (Known below as the FCC) is a group of closely knit villages within a set geographic area that has enlisted the aid of the locals in exchange for assisting with their defense. Multiple clans band together for a common defense, but only in their designated territory.</p> <p>FCC Creation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Federal Capital: Once completed, this research topic allows the Clan to designate a Federal Capital. The Federal Capital must be a village owned by the Clan. The Federal Capital may not be changed once designated without dissolving the existing FCC and researching FCC again. Membership List: Once the Federal Capital is designated, the Clan with the research provides the Game Master with a list of all Clans that are to be part of the FCC. The Clan with the research becomes known as the Federal

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leader.

- **FCC Zone:** A zone of effect is created around the Federal Capital and reaches out 25 hexes. It includes land and water hexes. This is called the FCC Zone.
- **FCC Notification:** The GM will publish an announcement of the creation of the FCC within the TribeNews that includes the hex coordinates of the Federal Capital within approximately 5 hexes of deviation. This provides the other players fair notice of the risks associated with combat inside the FCC Zone, though not its exact borders.

FCC Membership Restrictions:

- **Maximum of 10 Members** (which includes the Federal Leader)
- **Members must have a Village** within 25 hexes of the Federal Capital
- **Members must not be members of any other Federal Community of Clans**
 - A Clan may only be a member of a single FCC
- **Members may be removed and added.** Any changes must meet the normal Restrictions and should be communicated to the GM.

FCC Membership Benefits:

- **Attacker Penalty:** Any Unit that initiates aggression against a Unit or Structure (Local Support Settlement, NPC Special Hex construction, Village, etc) within the FCC Zone that belongs to a member of the FCC suffers a 20% penalty to **Military** Morale for the duration of Combat.
 - Attackers are notified upon conclusion of the first combat that the combat was held within an FCC Zone.
- **Defensive Bonus:** Any Unit or Structure within the FCC Zone that belongs to a member of the FCC gains a Terrain Proficiency Bonus of +4. (This represents knowledge of local defensive locations, permanent minor defensive structures and knowledge of how to harass the enemy on home terrain)
- These two benefits affect any and all combat within a turn provided it occurs in the FCC Zone and it affects a Unit / Structure that belongs to an FCC member.
- **Federal Leader:** The Tribe that holds this research receives 5 Gold per FCC member in turn 1 of every year, based on membership roles in month 12 of the preceding year. This is effectively a tithes from the Local population that benefits from permanent defensive presence. It is the responsibility of the Federal Leader to notify the GM when this is due and include it in the orders.

FCC Miscellaneous:

- It is the responsibility of the FCC member under attack to invoke these FCC penalties / bonuses by notifying the GM when he/she receives the request for combat orders. If the GM is not notified, these penalties/bonuses will not be in force.
- If the Village at the center of the FCC is abandoned or destroyed, the FCC is discontinued and the research topic is lost, but may be attempted again.

Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Forms a territory that gives defensive bonuses</i>
Name	Generalship
DL	7
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Supply (Economics research) Music In The Field (Music research)
Description	<p>This adds a new skill (Category B) called Generalship. A Tribe that has completed the Generalship research topic may develop this skill.</p> <p>A Tribe that possesses Generalship has its Leadership skill increased by the unit's Generalship's full skill value one-half of its Generalship skill, rounded down, for all combat calculations. In addition, when two Clans are attacking the same target (or defending against two attackers) the Clan with Generalship may determine the order of attacks (that is, which Clan attacks or is attacked, first). This also applies when multiple units of a single Clan are attacking or defending. The Clan with the highest Generalship will prevail should there be more than one Clan with Generalship.</p> <p>Counters: Generalship is the only counter for Generalship. If units on more than one than one side possesses Generalship, the order of combats etc are determined exactly as if no one had Generalship. However, the Generalship increase to Leadership, as well as common Leadership (e.g. one set of battle orders issued by the general and all use the general's Leadership rating) is still retained.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - New Skill, Generalship, Increases effective Ldr skill</i>

Name	Junior Officer
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Second in Command (Leadership research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leadership Modifier: Adds +1 to the Leadership Modifier for determining Potential Casualties (PC) in Land Combat. • Leadership Skill: Adds +2 to Leadership Skill for all other uses of Leadership in Land combat (example Routing) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This is a slight increase in benefit based upon edge cases where a standard +2 to Leadership skill would not provide an actual numerical benefit to Potential Casualties based upon the Combat calculations and table lookups. By shifting from a standard +2 to Leadership skill to a +1 to Leadership modifier, it keeps the same effective bonus as before but eliminates those edge cases.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Leadership Modifier to Damage calculators and reduces Rout</i>

Name	Leadership 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Leadership +1 (example from Ldr 10 to Ldr 11) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specialists: There are no Leadership Specialists. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Leadership</i>

Name	Recruitment
DL	1, 2, 3, etc....
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Allows an additional 500 Mercenaries per research attained to your Mercenary limits.
Summary	<i>Merc Limits increased by 500.</i>

Name	Resilience I, Resilience II, Resilience III
DL	5,7,9
Pre-Req	Resilience I: N/A Resilience II: Resilience I (Leadership research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Resilience III: Resilience II (Leadership research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Unit with the Resilience research completed is capable of holding out against the enemy under even the worst outcome of combat. These Units are exceptionally hard to rout, but it comes with consequences:</p> <p>Benefits: During the beginning of a battle, a Unit may declare that it is utilizing Resilience by including it on their Combat Entry Sheet. This can be done either by an attacking or defending unit. During all Combat this turn, the Unit gains the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Temporary Military Morale Increase of 0.02 for purposes of combat this turn. 2) When determining if a Unit routes, the random die roll is made once normally. If it indicated a Rout, the dice are rerolled and checked against for each level of Resilience. If one of the die rolls comes up as a Does not Rout, the unit will not rout. The unit will only rout if all the results show a Rout. <p>b. Example: A Unit has a 55% chance of not routing. It has Resilience I. A random number is generated between 1 and 100. The results are 89. Typically, the 89 would indicate a rout (It is greater than 55), however, the Unit declared Resilience I at the start of Combat. It rerolls the random number and gets a 47. Because the 47 is below the point of Routing, the unit will not Rout this combat.</p> <p>Restrictions and Penalties:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) A Tribe may only utilize Resilience in a Unit once in a calendar year (Month 1-12) regardless of the number of Tribe elements. 2) If a unit would have Routed but a reroll from Resilience saves them, the Tribe loses 0.02 General Morale per level of Resilience research. 3) War Fatigue: Additionally, if the Unit would have Routed but a reroll from Resilience saves them, the Tribe may not initiate combat and may only declare defense in combat orders for that calendar year. 4) War Fatigue: Regardless of if Resilience was used, as long as Resilience was declared, the Tribe that the Unit belongs to must sacrifice 1 'Lot' of a desired Commodity on the next turn or suffer an additional 0.02 General Morale loss per level of Resilience.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - If you rout, you have a chance not to rout but its pricey</i>

Name	Rousing Speech
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	A combat force that has a unit with Rousing Speech has a -5% modifier to the chance of Routing.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Combat Boost - 5% less chance to run away due to a bad combat.</i>
---------	---

Name	Second in Command (SIC)
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Junior Officer (Leadership research)</u> <u>Generalship (Leadership research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Leadership Modifier: Adds +1 to the Leadership Modifier for determining Potential Casualties (PC) in Land Combat. • Leadership Skill: Adds +2 to Leadership Skill for all other uses of Leadership in Land combat (example Routing) Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Leadership Modifier to Damage calculators and reduces Rout</i>

Name	Siege Marshall
DL	6
Pre-Req	<u>Generalship 5 (Skill)</u> Engineering 7 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Historically Siege Marshals (Vauban was the most famous) were generals with tremendous skill in conducting (or opposing sieges). The hallmark of a Siege Marshall is getting the maximum benefit out of each and every possible advantage.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In and of itself, the Siege Marshal topic provides no benefit. • Siege Marshall increases two (2) other offensive siege benefits present within its tribe (or within its Clan when in MotC). <p>Specific Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Assault Troops: No Effect • BioWar: No Effect

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Catapults: 1 Catapult required per 40 yards (instead of per 20 yards) • Sappers: Bonus is increased to 7.5% and 15% • Siege Cannon: 1 Siege Cannon required per 40 yards (instead of per 20 yards) • Siegecraft: No Effect • Trebuchets: 1 Trebuchet required per 40 yards (instead of per 20 yards). <p>Note: Except as noted in the Specific benefits above, no further benefits are offered by this research topic. Should similar items or research become available in the future, Siege Marshall may be modified to take them into account (for instance, a new type of siege Engine, or battering rams, etc). In such a case, the GM should be contacted to discuss what effects Siege Marshall would have on the topic.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Gain bonuses during Sieges</i>

Name	Trusted Maps
DL	3
Pre-Req	Alliance MotC (Diplomacy research) Or Alliance MotC (Leadership research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>To Benefit from this research, a Clan must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4) Have completed Alliance MotC Research. 5) Must have a declared alliance in which at least one member has the Sea Borne Trade Routes research. 6) Must have established Diplomatic Relations with the clan that completed Sea Borne Trade Routes research. <p>Any fleet in the Tribe holding this research has their MV increased by 50% when using Sea Borne Trade Routes. If combined with other research, this bonus is additive, not cumulative.</p> <p>Note: A Fleet may only gain movement bonuses from three research topics simultaneously. Examples include, but are not limited to, Board of Trade, Fast Fleet, Trusted Maps, etc.</p>
Summary	<i>Increases fleet movement speed when using Sea Borne Trade Routes</i>

Leatherwork

Name	Blacksmith Apron
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Blacksmith Apron: People 2, Ltr 5, Leather 2, Wax 1
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refining Effective Worker Boost: A Worker with a Blacksmith Apron counts as 1.50 Workers (+0.5 AM) when performing Refining activities. • A Refiner Specialist with a Blacksmith Apron gains +0.5 AM and would count as 2.5 Workers (+1 AM from the Specialist and +0.5 AM from the Blacksmith Apron). • Metalwork Effective Worker Boost: A Worker with a Blacksmith Apron counts as 1.50 Workers (+0.5 AM) when performing Metalworking Activities. • A Metalworking Specialist with a Blacksmith Apron gains +0.5 AM and would count as 2.5 Workers (+1 AM from being a Specialist and +0.5 AM from the Blacksmith Apron). • Anvil Boost: If a worker is using an Anvil along with a Blacksmith Apron, the boost from Blacksmith Apron is increased by an additional +0.5 AM for a total of +1.0 AM. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Armour and Weapon skills: Blacksmith Apron has no effect on the effectiveness of workers when utilizing the Armour or Weapons skill. • Tribes and Clans without the Blacksmith Apron may use the Blacksmith Apron at full benefit. • Weight: 2 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item – Boost to Refining and Metalwork</i>

Name	Cavalry Saddle
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Cavalry Saddle: People 10, Leather 10, Steel 5, Coal 25

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat Skill Effective Boost: A Cavalry Force fully equipped with Cavalry Saddles gains an effective boost to Combat skill during combat of +2. • Horsemanship Skill Effective Boost: A Cavalry Force fully equipped with Cavalry Saddles gains an effective boost to Horsemanship skill during combat of +2. • Horse Casualty Reduction: A Cavalry Force fully equipped with Cavalry saddles takes 15% less Horse casualties in Combat. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stacking: This is not cumulative with Saddles. • Bonuses: If the force is not fully equipped with Cavalry Saddles, the bonus is proportionate. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 12 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Boost to Combat/Horsemanship in Combat, reduced Horse casualties</i>

Name	Harvest Bag
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Harvest Bag: People 2, Ltr 4, Leather 3
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Harvest Bag is worn over the shoulder, used to assist in harvesting cotton, grain, flax, herbs, potatoes, sugar, and tobacco (not grapes because they would be crushed). <u>Doubles the number</u> of acres harvested (that is, increases the number of effective workers by 100%). May be combined with any other harvesting implement allowed for the type of crop being harvested (e.g. scythe, machete but not Basket); however the effect is linear, not cumulative. For example, a farmer with both a scythe and a harvest bag will harvest 9 acres of grain, not 12. Thus a farmer with Scythe and Harvest Bag is shown as 3 equivalent Farmers. A Tobacco Farmer with Harvest Bag and Machete would be shown as 5 equivalent workers (not 8).</p> <p>It is incumbent on the player to show equivalent workers in Orders. Weight: 1 lb Proposed by Patrick Travers</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Harvest Bag, increases efficiency of harvesting some crops by x2</i>

Name	Leatherwork 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Leatherwork 11 Allows training of Leatherwork Specialists
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Leatherwork, allows specialists</i>

Name	Whip
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Whip: People 1, Ltr 3, Leather 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	A Warrior with a whip controls 50% more Slaves.
Summary	<i>Increases number of slaves an Overseer may control.</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Literacy

(Books may not be written about these topics)

Name	Ghost Writer
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Allows one Tribe to aid another tribe of the SAME CLAN in writing books (BUT NOT reading books)</p> <p>Allows a tribe with a HIGHER Literacy skill to aid another tribe of the SAME CLAN to write (but not read) books.</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Both tribes must be in the same hex 2) Only the Tribe itself counts; Elements may not be used for this. For example, 4777 and 3777 must be together in the SAME hex for 3777 to use Ghost Writer to help 4777. 3) Max improvement is doubling the skill of the tribe being aided. For example, Tribe 4777 has Lit = 4, Ghost Writer can improve this to Lit =8. 4) Max improvement can go no higher than 10. For Example, Tribe has Lit = 6, Ghost Writer improves this to 10. 5) Books requiring Scrolls, Artifacts, Relics, etc. CANNOT benefit from Ghost Writer <p>Proposed by S Simmons</p>
Summary	<i>Allows other Tribes to increase their Literacy skill level for book writing.</i>

Name	The Great Library
DL	7
Pre-Req	Head Librarian (Research research)
Recipe	1 Great Library: Lit 10, Res 10, Eng 10, Stn 8, People 30k, Stone 150k, Parchment 1k, Lamps 20, Exotic Timber Table 1
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Building the Great Library: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ General Morale: In addition to any bonus from building any Wonder per the Wonders Rule, the Tribe Building the Great Library (and only that one Tribe) raises the General Morale of the tribe by 0.05.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

- **Publicity:** The Great Library is announced as per standard Wonders rules but will also include a list of all books in the Great Library. This list must be updated no less often than the first month of each year to be included in the Clan / Tribe News.
- **Book Storage:** The Clan that controls the Great Library may stock it with books by transferring the books to the Great Library. See TN Editions below. A thorough list of all books held by the Great Library is updated on the Clan / Tribe News at least once per month. New books may be added to the Great Library over time. Books may not be removed from the Great Library.
- **Book Usage:**
 - The presence of a valid unit per the Requirements below, belonging to a Tribe from any other Clan, allows the Tribe to which the unit belongs, to access the Great Library for the turn.
 - The Tribe may use ONE available book in the Great Library provided it has Skill Level 10 in the skill that the research topic belongs to.
 - Once a Tribe starts using a book from the Great Library, it continues to use this book until either:
 - the unit using the Great Library leaves the hex,
 - the unit using the Great Library completes the Great Library.
 - The unit suspends or abandons the research topic by notifying the GM.
- **Occupancy:** Units inside the Great Library, such as those reading the books, are immune to any sort of hostile action by any third party. If the attacker has successfully assaulted the Village containing the Great Library and caused a rout, they may attack units inside the Great Library normally.

Requirements:

- **Maintaining the Great Library:**
 - **Staff:** In addition to standard maintenance for all Wonders, 10 Actives, 20 Locals and 10 Inactives/Locals must be allocated to working the Library each turn.
 - **Costs:** Silver 10,000 (Salaries) and Parchment 500 (Practice and Organization) must be spent each year (on month 1 to usage) to maintain the Library.
 - **Failure to pay** these costs results in the Library being shut down until the costs are paid.
- **Utilizing the Great Library (By owning Clan):** Any valid unit, or an actual Tribe, from a Tribe in the Clan that owns the Great Library may use books from the Great Library normally. No cost is associated with such a use.
- **Utilizing the Great Library (By other Clans):** Other Clans that wish to access the Books in the Great Library must maintain an Element, Garrison, Courier or Agent in the same hex location as the Great Library. Movement of this unit outside of that hex means it may no longer access the Great Library.
 - **Maximum Size:** A unit utilizing the Great Library must contain zero (0) Warriors (or any other specialized combat troop type), no more than 20 Actives, no more than 20 Inactives and absolutely no other types of population. Elements containing

	<p>Slaves, Hirelings or any other type of specialist or non-standard population or units will be barred from the Great Library.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Admissions Fee: The unit utilizing the Great Library must pay a rental of 6 Gold per DL on the first turn it starts utilizing that book. 50% of this fee (3 Gold per GL) goes directly to the Tribe that owns the Great Library, the rest to usage. Rental Fee is charged only once per book per Clan use and once paid, the unit may continue using the book without further charges until it leaves the Great Library or completes, Abandons or suspends the research topic. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Minimum Fortifications: Must be built inside a village with at least 120 yards of 10' stone wall. • Book Usage: A Tribe may only use one (1) book per turn from the Great Library, even if it has multiple units present. • Book Usage: A Tribe using a book from the Great Library must have level 10 in the skill in question. <p>Notes: N/A</p> <p><u>Wonder: The Great Library counts as a Minor Wonder. See Wonder rules in the Global Rules section.</u></p>
Summary	<i>Minor Wonder, Allows use of a collection of books inside the Library.</i>

Name	Haiku
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Completion of Haiju adds 0.05 to General Morale.</p> <p>Unlike other Literacy topics, Haiku may have books be written about the topic.</p> <p>Haiku may be taken multiple times in the same Tribe. Once Haiku is completed, contact the GM to have the Morale added and the topic removed.</p>
Summary	<i>Gain Morale, lots of it.</i>

Name	Literacy 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Literacy +1 (example from Lit 10 to Lit 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having Specialists in this skill at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Literacy, Specialists</i>

Name	Mercenary Training
DL	6
Pre-Req	Sensai in Clan (Literacy research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A class of up to 300 mercenaries can be intensively trained to improve their combat skills. This training requires the presence (in the Clan) of a Sensai. A Sensai can work with any Tribe in the Clan. This training lasts 3 months (3 consecutive turns). A group of untrained mercenaries (all skills = 0) will be raised to skills = 2 after three months of training in a particular area. A second class can raise their skills to 4, a third to 6 and so forth, until skill = 10 is reached. Mercenaries do benefit from combat research in a Tribe. For example, in a Tribe that knows Junior Officer the Mercenaries in this Tribe will gain the +2 Leadership offered by the Junior Officer research topic.</p> <p>The skills that are trained are Combat, Leadership, Horsemanship, Archery, Heavy Weapons, (and with further Sensai research) Captaincy and Mariner. In situations where Mercenaries are involved that require other skills (such as Leadership or Tactics, the mercenaries' skills are taken to be at the level of the Tribe minus 4. (Mercenaries lack the discipline of normal Tribe Warriors and having a lot of them to organise will have the effect of reducing Leadership and Tactics levels)</p> <p>When training mercs, the owning Chief must keep track of the skills and levels held by various groups of Mercs</p> <p>Only one class of mercenaries can be trained at a time and as stated above, the maximum size of the class is 300 – exception, a Sensai Dan 1 is allowed to simultaneously train two classes, each of 300. A class must consist of only one type of mercenary, for example a class may NOT contain both regular and Japanese mercenaries. The gain in skills as described above is the only benefit. All other rules pertaining to the use of Mercenaries</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>still apply – see the Mandate section 3.11.</p> <p>The Sensai must be paid for each class trained. This is: 50 Gold, 1 Scroll</p>
Summary	<i>Allows Mercenaries to be trained to raise skill levels.</i>

Name	Scroll
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Scrolls 5: People 1, Parchment 100, Coin 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>This Scholar tribe gains the ability to create 5 Scrolls.</p> <p>Special Ink is required for the Parchments but may be purchased from locals once at the cost of 100 Coin. This is rolled into the recipe above. No special ink item exists.</p> <p>Once the 5 Scrolls are made, the research is removed from the Scholar tribe and may be attempted again.</p>
Summary	<i>Gain ability to create 5 scrolls.</i>

Name	Sensai (Master)														
DL	2														
Pre-Req	Scroll														
Recipe	*See Below														
Leads To	Sensai Dan 1 (Literacy research)														
Description	<p>There are <u>five</u> separate areas in which the Sensai may work. A single Sensai per Clan covers all Tribes and may work with more than one Tribe at a time. For example at Archery11 a Tribe using Sensai Master of Archery may immediately attempt to research Archery13 and is completed at DL4 (cf DL7 under normal progression). The fee is paid upon completion. The player must indicate to the GM when the required DL has been achieved.</p> <p>Prerequisite Lvl 11 in the Skill in question.</p> <table><tr><td>Master of Archery</td><td>13</td><td>DL4</td><td>50 Gold</td></tr><tr><td>Master of Security</td><td>13</td><td>DL4</td><td>30,000 Silver</td></tr><tr><td>Master of Combat</td><td>13</td><td>DL4</td><td>100 Frankincense</td></tr></table>			Master of Archery	13	DL4	50 Gold	Master of Security	13	DL4	30,000 Silver	Master of Combat	13	DL4	100 Frankincense
Master of Archery	13	DL4	50 Gold												
Master of Security	13	DL4	30,000 Silver												
Master of Combat	13	DL4	100 Frankincense												

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Master of HvyWeapons	13	DL4	100 Jade
Master of Horsemanship	13	DL4	100 Diamonds

Allows the skill to operate at level 13.

Prerequisite

Lvl13 in the Skill in question.

Master of Archery	15	DL5	75 Gold
Master of Security	15	DL5	45,000 Silver
Master of Combat	15	DL5	150 Frankincense
Master of HvyWeapons	15	DL5	150 Jade
Master of Horsemanship	15	DL5	150 Diamonds

Allows the skill to operate at level 15.

Sensai can work in combination with War College (WC bonuses apply after Sensai adjustments). Players should tell the GM what their Combat or Horsemanship skills are for the purposes of each battle, thus it's up to each player to provide the correct data to the GM. If the player doesn't he/she loses all benefit of this research topic.

Elite Troops

A Sensai Master may teach elite troops two skill levels per year. Troops of different nationality must be trained separately that is, not at the same time. However, a Master of Archery could teach Arc levels to one nationality of elite troop while Master of Combat might teach another.

Master of Archery	10 Gold per level
Master of Security	6,000 Silver per level
Master of Combat	20 Frankincense per level
Master of HvyWeapons	20 Jade per level
Master of Horsemanship	20 Diamonds per level

Mercenaries

A Sensai may also train Mercenaries (the Mercenary Training topic is approved by Peter but not yet published). A Sensai, however, is limited to training a maximum of 300 Mercenaries at a time. A clan may recruit a second Sensai, thus increasing the number of Mercenaries that may be simultaneously trained. The second Sensai is recruited by simply repeating the Sensai topic a second time, including expending a second scroll. Recruitment of a third Sensai is not permitted.

Multiple Sensais are possible, one for each of the five skills.

Upon completion of the Research, the Scroll is destroyed/lost and is sent to Usage

	(1263) via transfer.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Allows easier raising of combat related skills but at a cost</i>

Name	Sensai Dan 1
DL	7
Pre-Req	Sensai (Literacy research) Scroll
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Sensai Dan 2 (Literacy research)
Description	Allows the next two progressions (to Lvl 17 and 19) Upon completion of the Research, the Scroll is destroyed/lost and is sent to Usage (1263) via transfer.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Allows easier raising of combat related skills higher at a cost.</i>

Name	Sensai Dan 2
DL	7
Pre-Req	Sensai (Literature research) Scroll
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Sensai Dan 3 (Literacy research)
Description	Provides a Sensai with a second skill from the following list: Leadership, Siegecraft, Spying or Tactics.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost – Provides a Sensai with a second skill.</i>

Name	Sensai Dan 3
DL	7
Pre-Req	Sensai Dan 2 (Literacy research) Scroll
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Provides a Sensai with a third skill from the following list: Leadership, Siegecraft, Spying or Tactics.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost – Provides a Sensai with a third skill.</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Maintain Boats

Name	Amphibious Warfare I
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Amphibious Warfare II (Maintain Boats research)
Description	Allows an increase of 25% to the total people (people space – which can be converted in order to transport animals) that can be carried. For example, a Longship could carry 125 people maximum (this also applies to units from other Clans being transported).
Summary	<i>25% more people may be carried on boats.</i>

Name	Amphibious Warfare II
DL	4
Pre-Req	Amphibious Warfare I (Maintain Boats research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Allows an increase of 50% to the total people that can be carried. For example, a Longship could carry 150 people maximum (this also applies to units from other Clans being transported).
Summary	<i>50% more people may be carried on boats</i>

Name	Maintain Boats 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Maintain Boats +1 (example from MtnB 10 to MtnB 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specialists: There are no benefits to having Specialists in this skill at this time. There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Maintain Boats, Specialists</i>

Name	Shipboard Animal Maintenance
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Tribes (and their fleets and elements) that know Animal Maintenance are allowed to pack twice as many animals into the same space when aboard vessels.</p> <p>Benefit: Aboard vessels, animals carrying capacities are: Goat = 0.5 person; cattle = 2.5; horse = 4, elephant = 6.</p> <p>A vessel may carry animals in both people space and in cargo space (Goat = 250; Cattle = 1,250; Horse = 2,000; Elephant = 3,000). Each vessel in the fleet requires twice as many people performing the Maintain Boats activity (unless you have MB10).</p>
Summary	<i>100% more animals maybe carried on boats.</i>

Name	Waxy Seal
DL	3
Pre-Req	Paraffin Wax (Refining research)
Recipe	1 Paraffin Refinery: Eng 5, Stn 5, People 70, Log 100, Stone 100 20 Candles: Wax 2, People 1, Paraffin Wax 1, String 1
Leads To:	Waxy Seal (Maintain Boats research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Naval Combat Boost: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ships with a coating of Paraffin Wax applied are 25% less likely to be wrecked during Naval combat. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paraffin Wax must be applied in Month 01 of each year. The ship is protected for the following 12 months. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each Small ship requires 1 Paraffin Wax Each Medium ship requires 2 Paraffin Wax Each Large ship requires 4 Paraffin Wax.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ships whose bodies are coated with Paraffin Wax are resistant to corrosion and rust, resulting in sturdier, more durable boats.
Summary	<i>Naval Combat Boost: Reduces the number of ships lost in combat.</i>

Mariner

Name	Disciplined Marines
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Disciplined Marines provides a bonus in attack and defense and against missiles during naval combat.</p> <p>Adds +4 to Mariner skill.</p> <p>Increases the effectiveness of Shields by 25% against Ranged attacks (8% goes to 10%, 18% goes to 22.5%) in Naval Combat</p>
Summary	<i>Naval Combat Boost – Increases Naval Combat Skill and effectiveness of Shields</i>

Name	Fighting Seamen
DL	5
Pre-Req	Fleet (Mariner research) Diplomacy 4 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Description	<p>15% of Actives in fleet elements from the unit(s) with the research may participate in naval combat as Warriors.</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> These Actives participating as Warriors may only be used during defensive combats, eg. When your fleet has been attacked. They may not be part of a Locating War Party.
Summary	<i>Naval Combat Boost - Allows limited Actives to fight as Warriors.</i>

Name	Fleet
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Naval Coordination (Mariner research)</u>
Recipe	1 Dockyard, 100 Person, Eng 4, Logs 200
Leads To:	<u>Fighting Seamen (Mariner research)</u> <u>Naval Veterans Class I (Mariner research)</u>
Description	Army Factor:

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Naval Units from Tribes with Fleet research topic completed gains an Army Factor increase of +0.20 (which coupled with Naval Coordination is an effective +0.40) • Army Factor is a modifier that is used to increase Potential Casualty generation. Fleet basically increases outgoing Potential Casualties by another 20% on top of Naval Coordination. • <p>Army Factor – Defense:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Naval Units from Tribes with Fleet research topic completed gains an Army Factor Defense decrease of +0.10. • Army Factor Defense is a modifier that is used to decrease Potential Casualties received. Naval Coordination basically decreases incoming Potential Casualties by 10% with Fleet reducing it by a further 10%. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A Dockyard (200 logs, Eng4 - Logs are installed at 2/person. Can only be built once Fleet research is completed) is required per 50 non-crew person capacity for ships in fleet elements in the Tribe with the research. If the Fleet in full is not supported by Dockyards then the Fleet bonus does not apply in combat.
Summary	<i>Naval Combat Boost - Increases Fleet Factor to 1.4. (+40% Damage), Less Incoming Damage.</i>

Name	Mariner 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Increases Mariner skill to 11.</p> <p>Prerequisite for Mariner 12.</p> <p>Naval Combat Specialists do not exist.</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Mariner, does NOT allow specialists</i>

Name	Mariner 12
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To:	N/A
Description	Increases Mariner skill to 12. Mariner (Naval Combat) Specialists do not exist.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Mariner, does NOT allow specialists</i>

Name	Naval Coordination
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Fleet (Mariner research)
Description	<p>Army Factor:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Naval Units from Tribes with Naval Coordination research topic completed gains an Army Factor increase of +0.20. Army Factor is a modifier that is used to increase Potential Casualty generation. Naval Coordination basically increases outgoing Potential Casualties by 20%. <p>Army Factor – Defense:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Naval Units from Tribes with Naval Coordination research topic completed gains an Army Factor Defense decrease of +0.10. Army Factor Defense is a modifier that is used to decrease Potential Casualties received. Naval Coordination basically decreases incoming Potential Casualties by 10%.
Summary	<i>Naval Combat Boost - Increases Army Factor to 1.20 (+20% Damage), Defense to 0.90 (-10% incoming damage).</i>

Name	Naval Veterans Class I
DL	5
Pre-Req	Fleet (Mariner research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>The Veterans Class I topic allows 15% of a fleet units's Inactives (in a Tribe with the research) to fight in Naval Combat using ONLY ranged weapons (missile weapons and/or heavy weapons). These Inactives do not fight in Melee phases but are valid targets for casualties in Melee Phases. To qualify as Veterans Class I, 15% of the Inactives in fleet elements AND AN EQUAL NUMBER OF normal WARRIORS must train (as an activity and do nothing else) three months every year and each training month must fall in a different season (for example, cannot do all the training in the winter). Players are responsible for keeping records of this</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Inactives include older warriors who are experienced, but too old to stand in the line of battle. However, they are still capable of wielding missile weapons or serving heavy weapons, especially if they keep “in training”. They may be deployed only in a defensive mode – eg when your unit has been attacked. They may not be part of a Locating War Party.
Summary	<i>Naval Combat Boost - Allows limited Inactives to fight using ranged weapons</i>

Name	Professional Sailor
DL	4
Pre-Req	<u>Expert Sailors (Sailing research)</u> Navigation 10 (Skill) Captaincy 10 (Skill) Sailing 10 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Effect is 1 professional sailor = 1.5 for crewing purposes. That is, crew requirements are reduced by 33% <u>Proposed by Darren Thacker</u>
Summary	<i>Reduces the crew size needed on boats</i>

Metalwork

Name	Advanced Trap
DL	4
Pre-Req	Improved Trap (Metalwork research) OR Improved Trap (Furrier research)
Recipe	1 Advanced Trap: People 2, Mtl 10, Iron 2, Coal 8
Leads To	N/A
Description	An Advanced trap is a continued evolutionary refinement of the Research topic Improved Trap and functions much as a standard trap. One Hunter/Furrier may use 1 Advanced Trap (with no standard Traps or Improved Traps) – this improves Hunting by 1.0 (i.e. one hunter counts as two). Weight: 1 lb
Summary	<i>New Item - Advanced Trap, increases hunting output</i>

Name	Anvil
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Anvil: People 10, Mtl 10, Iron 100, Coal 500
Leads To	Smith Hammer (Metalwork research) Tongs (Metalwork research)
Description	Metalworking Activity A Worker with an Anvil counts as 1.5 workers (+0.5 Effective Workers) when performing Armour making, Metalwork or Weapon making activities. Anvils may be used with other implements. NOTE: Until coding supports the use of the Anvil, players are responsible for calculating and monitoring the use of effective workers. Weight: 100 lb
Summary	<i>New Item - Anvil, increases metalwork, armour and weaponmaking output</i>

Name	Blade Shears
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Blade Shears: People 2, Mtl 4, Iron or Steel 2, Coal 10

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Metalworking activity</p> <p>One worker using Blade Shears counts as 2 workers (+1 AM) when shearing Sheep or Angora Goats.</p> <p>Weight: 3 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Blade Shears, increases shearing sheep/angora goats output</i>

Name	Bronze Statue
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	20 People, Mtl 8, Art 6, Bronze 1k, Coal 200, Silver 200
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A new Trade good.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: The units, and Tribe, of this Tribe may craft Bronze Statues as an Art or Metalwork activity. • Fair: Bronze Statues sell at Fair and possibly Trade Towns. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Metalwork: Metalwork skill level in this Tribe must be 6 or higher. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <p>Weight: 1000 lb</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Bronze Statue, Sell these at the Fair</i>

Name	Chisel
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Chisel: People 1, Mtl 3, Iron 1, Coal 4
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A worker with a Chisel doubles his quarrying output (to 10 stones) and may also use a Mattock (the combination nets 15 stones per worker). A worker may also use a Chisel to double output with the skills Stonework and Art (stone items only). In the latter case players will need to show, for example, 1 worker with Chisel as 2 workers.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Weight: 1 lb
Summary	<i>New Item - Chisel, increases Quarrying output</i>

Name	Improved Trap
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Improved Trap: People 1, Mtl 3, Iron 1, Coal 6
Leads To	Advanced Trap (Furrier research) Advanced Trap (Metalwork research)
Description	An Improved Trap functions much as a standard trap, but allows a 15% bonus instead of 10% bonus. <u>Standard limit of 5 traps per hunter apply.</u> 1 Hunter/Furrier may use up to 5 Improved Traps (with no standard Traps) – this improves Hunting by 0.15 per IT or 0.75 per 5 Its.
Summary	<i>New Item - Improved Trap, increases Hunting output</i>

Name	Knife
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Knife: People 1, Mtl 3, Iron 1, Coal 6
Leads To	N/A
Description	Metalwork Activity A person using a Knife doubles skinning, gutting and boning (that is, allows SGB twice during Activities). Farmers using knives can harvest double the number of acres (players need to show a farmer with a knife as equivalent to 2 farmers when submitting orders). Weight: 1 lb
Summary	<i>New Item - Knife, increases skinning, gutting, bonus and harvesting output</i>

Name	Kegs
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Keg: People 2, Mtl4, Log 1, Coal 8, Iron 5
Leads To	N/A
Description	Holds 400 lbs. Weighs 20lbs

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>New Item - Kegs, like Barrels but holds more and is lighter.</i>
---------	---

Name	Machete
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Machete: People 2, Mtl 4, Iron 3, Coal 15
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Metalwork Activity</p> <p>Long, heavy, slightly curved knife mounted on a sturdy wooden handle wrapped with strips of leather, used to assist in harvesting tobacco. A farmer with a machete harvests four acres (instead of one). Please give equivalent workers if using Machetes. For example, 100 workers with 100 Machete = 400 equiv workers.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Machete, Increases efficiency of your tobacco harvesters.</i>

Name	Metalwork 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Metalwork +1 (example from Mtl 10 to Mtl 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Metalwork, Specialists</i>

Name	Mining Ladder
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	People 15, Wd3, Mtl3, Log 4, Iron 25, Coal 150

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>(Also Under Engineering, Mining and Woodwork)</p> <p>A Mining Ladder provides a Bonus to Mining output equal to +100% to ten (10) miners and a Bonus to Digging output (Clay, canals, sand, moats, etc) equal to +100% to ten (10) diggers. This is cumulative with other implements (Picks, Shovels, Ore Carts, Seam Wedges, etc). This bonus is additive, not compounded.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>5 Miners with 1 Mining Ladder would count as 10 Miners 10 Miners with 1 Mining Ladder would count as 20 Miners 15 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders would count as 30 Miners 20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders would count as 40 Miners 20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders and 20 Picks would count as 60 Miners 20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders, 2 Ore Carts and 20 Picks would count as 80 Miners</p> <p>These wood and metal ladders and ramps are used to for more advanced vertical mining and to facilitate the movement of personnel and ore up mine shafts when they occur due to following veins. These would not be standard wood ladders or ramps but would have iron reinforcement to handle the added weight of the ore and wagons. We have called it Mining Ladders research to shorten the name but it would really be both ladders and ramps.</p> <p>1 Mining Ladder weighs 50 lbs.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Mining Ladder, increases output of up to 10 miners</i>

Name	Saw
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Saw: People 3, Mtl5, Iron 5, Coal 40
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Metalwork Activity</p> <p>Saws multiply logging rates x 4. <u>Cannot</u> be used with Adze.</p> <p>A Forester with no tools cuts 4 Logs a Forester with Adze cuts 8 Logs a Forester with Saw cuts 16 Logs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Saw, Increases output of forestry action for Logs, x4</i>

Name	Seam Wedges
DL	4

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Seam Wedge: People 1, Mtl 2, Iron 5, Coal 15
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Metalwork Activity</p> <p>1 Person adds 50% to mining with Pick or Shovel.</p> <p>Weight: 1 lb</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Seam Wedges, Increases output of a miner.</i>

Name	Scraper (Metal)
DL	1
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Scraper: People 1, Mtl1, Iron1, Coal 4
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Metawork Activity</p> <p>Doubles rate for bark stripping</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Scraper, Increases output of forestry action for Bark, x2</i>

Name	Smith Hammer
DL	7
Pre-Req	<u>Anvil (Metalwork research)</u>
Recipe	1 Smith Hammer: Mtl 10, People 2, Iron 8, Coal 40, Leather 2
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Metalwork activity) of Smith Hammer. • Productivity Boost (Armour, Metalwork, Weaponsmith): A Worker with a Smith Hammer counts as 2 Workers (+1 Effective Worker) when performing Armour, Metalwork or Weapons activity. • Stacks: Stacks with all other Armour, Metalwork or Weapons implements / buildings. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anvil Required: Bonus from Smith Hammer is only effective if also using an Anvil. If no Anvil is used by that worker, then no bonus is provided. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight: 5lbs • Combat 1.0 Module (Current): No effect at this time. • Combat 2.0 Module (To be implemented): Effects as above.
Summary	<i>New Item – Smith Hammer, increases Mtl, Armour and Weapon Activities</i>

Name	Tongs
DL	4
Pre-Req	Anvil (Metalworking research)
Recipe	1 Tong: People 1, Steel 1, Coke 5
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Metalworking Activity</p> <p>A Worker with a Tong counts as 1.5 workers (+0.5 Effective Workers) when performing Armour making, Metalwork or Weapon making activities. This benefit is only available if the worker is also using an Anvil. Thus, a worker with Anvil and Tongs counts as 2 effective workers. A worker with only Tongs and no Anvil counts as 1.0 effective workers.</p> <p>Tongs may be used with other implements.</p> <p>NOTE: Until coding supports the use of the Anvil, players are responsible for calculating and monitoring the use of effective workers.</p> <p>Weight: 2 lb</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Tongs, increases metalwork, armour and weaponmaking output</i>

Name	Water Tank
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Water Tank: People 4, Mtl 6, 40 Metal (Bronze, Brass, Tin, Copper), 80 Coal
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Water Tank increases the capacity of a village to withstand a siege. Sanitation skill is important to avoid disease when water from a Water Tank is needed.</p> <p>The capacity of a Water Tank is 1,000 lbs supply capacity (1,000 lbs = 10 barrels).</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Water tanks are portable and may be transported by Barges, medium and large ships. Weight: 50lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Water Tank, like a barrel but holds a lot more and is lighter comparatively</i>

Name	Wire Mill
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Wire Mill: Logs 500, Steel or Iron 500 120 Wire: People 10, Mtl 5, Stel 120
Leads To	N/A
Description	A Wire Mill requires 500 logs, and 500 steel or Iron to construct. Used by up to 100 people. 10 people using a Wire Mill can produce can turn 120 steel into 120 Wire at Mtl5 .
Summary	<i>New Item - Wire, used for other purposes</i>

Milking

Name	Milking 11, 12...
DL	5,5...
Pre-Req	Milking 11: N/A Milking 12: Milking 11 (Milking research) Milking 13...
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Increases Milking skill by 1. Milking skill at 11 or higher allows Specialists to be trained.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Milking, allows Specialists</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Milling

Name	Increased Output Milling 10%, 50%, 100%
DL	Increased Output 10%: 4 Increased Output 50%: 4 Increased Output 100%: 4
Pre-Req	Increased Output Milling 10%: None Increased Output Milling 50%: Increased Output Milling 10% Increased Output Milling 100%: Increased Output Milling 50%
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Increased Output Milling 50% (Refining research) Increased Output Milling 100% (Refining research)
Description	<p>Increased Milling Output by 10% / 50% / 100%</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activity AM Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Refining: +10% / +50% / +100% ○ When performing the Milling Activity, each worker gains +0.10, +0.50 or +1.0 AM. That is, when performing Milling activities, each worker counts as 1.10, 1.50 or 2 workers as appropriate. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Editions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: Assign extra people to the milling process. If you deploy 100 people to perform milling, you would actually assign 110 / 150 / 200 equivalent workers on your turn orders. • TN2020: The code will automatically apply this. No need to do anything special. • Stacking Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard bonus stacking rules apply. A specialist (1 AM normal worker + 1 AM from being a specialist) that is also subject to Increased Output Milling 100% (+1 AM) would perform the work of 3 workers (1 AM Normal + 1 AM Specialist + 1 AM IOM100%) and not 4 workers (it would not double a specialist from 2 to 4).
Summary	<i>Increases efficiency of milling</i>

Name	Milling 11
------	-------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Milling +1 (example from Mil 10 to Mil 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train specialists in this skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Milling, Specialists</i>

Name	Oilmill
DL	3
Pre-Req	Windmill (Milling research) Flax (Farming research)
Recipe	1 Oilmill: People 500, Eng 10, Wd 4, Stn 4, Logs 500, Stones 1000, Iron 500, Coal 1000, Millstones 2
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A method of Milling that bruises and crushes oil bearing seeds, olives, etc then presses them to extract oil. Working in an Oilmill grinds Flaxseed and presses it into Oil. The remaining, pulpy flesh is used as animal feed.</p> <p>1 miller extracts 1 Oil + 10 Fodder each month from 10 Cotton (5 Flax) using 1 Jar. An Oilmill requires 20 Millers to keep it supplied with Flax and to remove the Oil and Fodder.</p> <p>Oilmills may only be operated the same month as Flax is harvested. This simulates farmers harvesting the whole plant instead of the fibres (when harvesting flax, 1 flax converts to 2 Cotton) and the fibre being lost during the production of (Lineseed) oil.</p> <p>Oilmills are restricted to 10 per site. The total number of Windmills plus Oilmills are restricted to 100 per site. (Windmills + Oilmills must be less than or equal to QTY:100 total)</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>May be built under Joint Project rules.</p> <p>May be built for and used by other clans. A Unit from another Clan must have Milling 10 to operate the Oilmill.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Oilmill, Allows extraction of Oil from Cotton/Flax</i>

Name	Sawmill
DL	6
Pre-Req	<p>Milling 10 (Group C skill)</p> <p>Forestry 4 (Group A skill)</p>
Recipe	1 Sawmill: People 300, Eng 6, Wd 4, Stn 4, Logs 250, Stones 625, Iron 500, Coal 4000
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A new method of milling logs, with the power coming from water so fewer people can cut may more logs.</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Max Sawmills: A site is restricted to 100 Sawmills. • Terrain: The site must be on a hex that allows Forestry activities that provide logs (Forest, Jungle, etc) • River: The site must be on a hex that has at least one Hexside as a River or Canal. <p>Bonuses:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Max Users: 100 People per Sawmill • Production Boost: Workers utilizing a Sawmill produce x8 the number of Logs they normally would. A worker may not utilize an Adze or Saw, though may utilize research topics that increase Logs per Person (5 Logs / Person, 6 Logs / Person, etc). <p>Other Clans:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sawmills may be built for other tribes, but that Tribe must have Milling 10 and Forestry 4 or better to gain the bonus.
Summary	<i>New Building - Sawmill, increases output of forestry action to gain logs, x8</i>

Name	Windmill
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Windmill: People 500, Eng 10, Wd 4, Stn 4, Logs 500, Stones 1000, Iron 500, Coal 1000, Millstones 2, Materials installed at normal rates
Leads To	Oilmill (Milling research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>A new method of Milling. Although initial construction costs are significant with the power coming from wind not animals fewer people can mill much more grain. Each Windmill grinds 8000 grain into 12000 flour each month and requires 40 millers keep it supplied with grain and remove the flour.</p> <p>The total number of Windmills plus Oilmills are restricted to 100 per site. (Windmills + Oilmills must be less than or equal to QTY:100 total)</p> <p>Milling using Windmills and using Grain Hoppers require separate Orders showing these items are being used - else normal Milling will be assumed. May be built under Joint Project rules.</p>
Summary	<p><i>New Building - Windmill, Turn grain into flour at an enhanced rate.</i></p>

Mining

Name	Appropriate Mining Tool
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	A miner may use both a Pick and a Shovel in the same turn. Note: Coded
Summary	<i>Allows the use of both a pick and a shovel when mining.</i>

Name	Geology I, Geology II, Geology III...
DL	1, 2, 3
Pre-Req	Geology I: Mining 11 (Mining research) Geology II: Geology I (Mining research) Geology III: Geology II (Mining research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Geology I: Geology II (Mining research) Geology II: Geology III (Mining research) Geology III: Geology IV (Geology research)
Description	<p>The effect of gaining a Geology topic is to add levels to your Mining Skill.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Geology 1: +1 Level to Mining (ex. Min 11 to Min 12) ○ Geology 2: +3 Level to Mining (ex. Min 12 to Min 15) ○ Geology 3: +5 Level to Mining (ex. Min 15 to Min 20) • New Skill – Geology (Group C): Once Geology 1 research topic has been completed, the Tribe may learn a new skill called Geology. It is a Group C skill. Geology skill is purely a skill to access Geology research topics Geology 4 and beyond. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Books may be written.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Mining, New Skill: Geology</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Hammer Mill
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Hammer Mill: People 11, Wd 5, Eng 6, Logs 20, Iron 5, Coal 10, Leather 2
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>The Hammer Mill (or Stamp Mill) is a hydraulic or manually operated series of weighted “pistons” which pulverize various ores into finer pieces, and sift out more unusable rock, for more efficient refining, and portage of raw materials.</p> <p>Each Hammer Mill can service 20 AMs assigned to Mining OR Refining, allowing 2 Ams to do the work of 3 (identical to the effect of Scaffolds for Engineering and Shipbuilding, so it is, essentially, a “Scaffold” for Mining and Refining). Hammer Mills may be used by other Clans.</p> <p>For Mining purposes, the additional Ams would be shown as “Effective Workers” in orders.</p> <p>For Refining purposes, the additional Ams would be shown as “Effective Workers” in orders, and would require additional Smelters to cover the increased Ams.</p> <p>If operated on a river hexside, cattle or horses need not be available, as the mill would be hydraulically powered via river current. If operated on a hex with no river hexsides, 2 Horses or Cattle are required to operate.</p> <p>Hammer Mills are items and not buildings. They can be traded.</p> <p>Weight: 2000 lbs</p> <p>Proposed by Chris S.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Hammer Mill, increases output of 20 miners.</i>

Name	Mining 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Geology (Mining research)</u>
Description	<p>Mining Skill to 11.</p> <p>Allows training of mining specialists.</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Mining by +1, allows specialists</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Mining Ladder
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	People 15, Wd3, Mtl3, Log 4, Iron 25, Coal 150
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>(Also Under Engineering, Mining and Woodwork)</p> <p>A Mining Ladder provides a Bonus to Mining output equal to +100% to ten (10) miners and a Bonus to Digging output (Clay, canals, sand, moats, etc) equal to +100% to ten (10) diggers. This is cumulative with other implements (Picks, Shovels, Ore Carts, Seam Wedges, etc). This bonus is additive, not compounded.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>5 Miners with 1 Mining Ladder would count as 10 Miners</p> <p>10 Miners with 1 Mining Ladder would count as 20 Miners</p> <p>15 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders would count as 30 Miners</p> <p>20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders would count as 40 Miners</p> <p>20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders and 20 Picks would count as 60 Miners</p> <p>20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders, 2 Ore Carts and 20 Picks would count as 80 Miners</p> <p>These wood and metal ladders and ramps are used to for more advanced vertical mining and to facilitate the movement of personnel and ore up mine shafts when they occur due to following veins. These would not be standard wood ladders or ramps but would have iron reinforcement to handle the added weight of the ore and wagons. We have called it Mining Ladders research to shorten the name but it would really be both ladders and ramps.</p> <p>1 Mining Ladder weighs 50 lbs.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Mining Ladder, increases output of 10 miners.</i>

Name	Ore Cart
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Ore Cart: People 12, Wdw 3, Log 10, Iron 15, Coal 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>An Ore Cart provides a bonus to Mining output equal to +100% to ten (10) miners. This is cumulative with other implements (Picks, Shovels, Mining Ladders, Seam Wedges, etc). Each Ore Cart requires it be pulled by 2 Cattle or 1 Elephant when used in Mining.</p> <p>Example:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>5 Miners with 1 Ore Cart would count as 10 Miners 10 Miners with 1 Ore Cart would count as 20 Miners 15 Miners with 2 Ore Carts would cost as 30 Miners 15 Miners with 2 Ore Carts and 15 Picks would count as 45 Miners</p> <p>Ore Carts may also be used in place of Wagons with the same capacity and rules. Note: Ore Carts are not coded for Movement – if you are relying on Ore Carts to move you need to show this in a note in MV Orders.</p> <p>Weight: 300lb</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Ore Cart, increases output of 10 miners.</i>

Name	Salt Panning (See Salting)
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Completion of this research creates a Salt Mine in any one Prairie Hex that the Clan chooses.
Summary	<i>Turns a Prairie Hex into a Prairie Hex with a salt mine.</i>

Name	Seam Wedges
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Seam Wedge: People 1, Mtl2, Iron 5, Coal 15
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Metalwork Activity</p> <p>1 Person adds 50% to mining with Pick or Shovel.</p> <p>Weight: 1 lb</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Seam Wedges, increases output of a miner</i>

Mobilisation

Name	Local Guard I, II, III, IV, V
DL	2,3,4,5,6
Pre-Req	All: Local Support Settlement of Town or City Local Guard II: Local Guard I (Mobilisation research) Local Guard III: Local Guard II Local Guard IV: Local Guard III Local Guard V: Local Guard IV
Recipe	1 Guard Barracks (GBarr): People 100, Eng 3, Stone 500
Leads To	<u>Local Guard Training I (Mobilisation research)</u>
Description	<p>Once a Local Support network has been established, then the Defenders that patrol the territory begin to get familiar with the surrounding lands. Every level of Local Guard increases their Terrain Proficiency.</p> <p>At Level I, they gain Terrain Proficiency 1 in their settlement's hex. At level II, their Terrain Proficiency is increased to 3. At Level III, their Terrain Proficiency is increased to 5. This Terrain Proficiency is only in their settlements hex. Further research increases this by +2 TP per level of research, to a maximum of TP of 9 at Local Guard V.</p> <p>To utilize this bonus in combat, the Settlement must have enough Guard Barracks available. Guard Barracks are built in the local support settlements that host the Defenders. 1 Guard Barracks is good for 100 Defenders. If there are not enough Guard Barracks, the bonus to the Defenders from that Settlement is proportional to the number of Guard Barracks. If there are 300 total defenders and only enough barracks for 200, then the Bonus is reduced to 2/3rds, rounded up, of the full bonus.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows increasing of Local Support Guards Terrain Proficiency</i>

Name	Local Guard Training I, II, III
DL	6, 7, 8
Pre-Req	All: <u>Local Guard I (Mobilisation research)</u>
Recipe	1 Guard Training yard (GTYard): People 100, Eng 3, Stone 500
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Local Support network with Guard Training allows its Defenders to gain in combat skill over the years. Initially, the Defenders starts off with all skills at 0.</p> <p>Upon completion of Guard Training I topic, Guards controlled by the Clan's Local Support settlements have their Combat and Archery set to</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Skill Level 3. Guard Training II sets it to Skill Level 6 and Guard Training III sets it to Skill Level 9.</p> <p>To utilize this bonus in combat, the Settlement must have enough Guard Training Yards available. Guard Training Yards are built in Local Support settlements. 1 Guard Training Yard is good for 100 Defenders. If there are not enough Guard training yards, the bonus is reduced proportionately, rounded up. If there are 3000 total Defenders and Home Guard Training I is complete giving a +3 to skills, and 1500 worth of Militia training yard, then the +3 skill bonus is reduced to +1.5, rounded up to 2.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows increasing of Local Support Guards Combat and Archery skills</i>

Name	Mobilisation 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Raises Mobilisation Skill to 11
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Mobilisation, does not allow specialists</i>

Music

Name	Bagpipes
DL	4
Pre-Req	Military Band (Music research)
Recipe	1 Bagpipes: People 1, Sew5, Bladders 2, Flute 1
Leads To:	
Description	Enhances the performance of the Military Band. Military Morale is raised an additional 0.02 (to 0.06) if the players are each equipped with Bagpipes. Make under Sewing. Weight: 6lbs
Summary	<i>Combat Boost, New Item - Bagpipes, increases Combat Morale</i>

Name	Great Work
DL	5
Pre-Req	*See Art
Recipe	*See Art
Description	*See Art
Summary	<i>Convert Cultural skill points into morale.</i>

Name	Military Band
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Bagpipes (Music research)
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Combat Boost: Military Morale – When a Military Band is active during a combat, all units from the same Clan gain +0.04 Military Morale for the duration of that combat. Requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Active Band: To utilize a Military Band during a combat, a unit participating in the battle that belongs to the Tribe with Military Band research must assign Actives to participate in the Defence. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimum Band Size: 20 Actives Maximum Band Size: 30 Actives

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Instruments: Each member of the Military Band must be equipped with an instrument including, but not limited to, drums, horns, flutes, trumpets, harps and lutes. Any combination of instruments is acceptable and they may all be one type of instrument if desired. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Military Band does not affect units from other Clans participating in the same battle, even if they are on the same side. • A Unit may only gain the benefit from one Military Band during a single battle regardless of how many Military Bands may be active, even if they are from different Tribes. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Band Size: There is no benefit currently for Band Size greater than 20 Actives. • TN Classic: Leave 20-30 Actives unassigned and put a Comment in the Comment section of your turn orders stating something to the effect of: “Unit 0012e5 has 20 unassigned Actives acting as a Military Band. They are using X,Y,Z instruments.” • TN 2020: Assign Actives to the Activity: Military / Military Band.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost, Increases Combat Morale</i>

Name	Music 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Music +1 (example from Mus 10 to Mus 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Music specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are few benefits to having specialists in this skill at this time. • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Music, Specialists</i>

Name	Music in the Field
DL	7

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	Military Band (Music research) Generalship (Leadership research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Music in the Field is a further development of the Military Band which allows instantaneous enactment of pre-defined commands such as <i>Left Wing will Charge</i>, <i>Recall skirmishers</i>, etc.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> For Land Combat, All units (via Battle Groups or Meeting of the Clan) gain the following for the duration of Combat in which they meet the requirements: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> +1 to effective Leadership skill +2 to effective Tactical skill A further +0.04 Military Morale for combat purposes For Naval Combat, All units (via Battle Groups or Meeting of the Clan) gain the following for the duration of Combat in which they meet the requirements: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> +1 to effective Captaincy skill +2 to effective Tactical skill A further +0.04 Military Morale for combat purposes <p>Requirements:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In order to gain Music in the Field Benefits, a Unit must have 5 Warriors allocated to utilizing Music in the Field for every 100 Warriors participating in the battle. These extra warriors do not count against the 1/3rd limit. *See example. Each Warrior allocated to gain Music in the Field must be equipped with a Drum. <p>Example:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> A unit with 900 Warriors may assign up to 300 Warriors to a single Combat. This is the max that can participate in a single battle ($900 * 1/3 = 300$). To utilize MitF, the Unit should assign an additional 15 Warriors to the Combat but they will not fight, they merely beat the drum. <p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Increasing Leadership skill levels has a decreasing effectiveness in regards to increasing Leadership Modifier as the Leadership skill increases. Leadership Modifier increases always affect Potential Casualties.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Ldr, Tact and Combat Morale</i>

Name	Spring Arts Festival Music
DL	* See Art

Pre-Req	* See Art
Recipe	* See Art
Leads To	Inter Spring Arts Festival Music (Music research)
Description	* See Spring Arts Festival Art
Summary	<i>Host a Festival event during fair to raise Morale</i>

Name	Inter Spring Arts Festival Music
DL	8
Pre-Req	Spring Arts Festival Music (Music research) Administration 10 (Group B skill)
Recipe	1 Amphitheatre: People 2k, Eng 8, Stone 10k, Cloth 1k, Silver 5k
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>An upgrade to the Spring Arts Festival Music so that its available to more people.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Visitors: Tribes from other Clans may participate in your Spring Arts Festival Music. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On Location: To participate, the Tribes from other Clans must have a unit with WA (doesn't count Inactives) population in the hex with your Tribe and the Amphitheatre. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No Hunting: Units from other Clans participating in your Inter Spring Arts Festival Music may not hunt during the Fair turn. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>New Building – Amphitheatre, expands Festival to other Clans.</i>

Navigation

Name	Astral Navigation 1, Astral Navigation 2, Astral Navigation 3
DL	Astral Navigation 1 – 2 Astral Navigation 2 – 3 Astral Navigation 3 – 4
Pre-Req	Astral Navigation 1 – N/A Astral Navigation 2 – Astral Navigation 1 (Astronomy/Navigation research) Astral Navigation 3 – Astral Navigation 2 (Astronomy/Navigation research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Once Nav Skill is at 10, Astral Navigation adds +2 to Nav Skill (making the 10 an effective 12). Astral Navigation2 (DL3) would add +4 (making the 10 an effective 16). Astral Navigation3 (DL4) would add +6 (making the 10 an effective 22) etc. AN3 is limit.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Navigation</i>

Name	Heart of Oak
DL	5
Pre-Req	Navigation 11 (Navigation research) OR Sailing 11 (Sailing research) OR Seamanship 11 (Seamanship research)
Recipe	N/A
Description	A Fleet with Heart of Oak gains a 1% advantage (Damage done to its opponent is increased) per point of difference when the sum of its Nautical Skills (Nav/Sail/Sea) exceeds the sum of the Nautical Skills of an opposing fleet. For example, a fleet with Nav/Sail/Sea of 10/11/12 versus a fleet with 6/6/6 increases the damage it does to the 6/6/6 fleet by 15% (10+11+12 = 33 vs 6+6+6 = 18). Nautical Skills (Nav/Seail/Sea) now affect Naval Combat, not just Naval Movement. The Royal Navy proved on many occasions, superior Nautical Skills provided decisive advantages in fleet vs fleet combat.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Naval, Increases damage done</i>

Name	Navigation 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Heart of Oak (Navigation research) Heart of Oak (Sailing research) Heart of Oak (Seamanship research)
Description	<p>Increases Navigation skill level by +1 to 11.</p> <p>Specialists are not allowed</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Navigation, does not allow specialists</i>

Politics

(Books may not be written on these topics)

Name	Banqueting Hall
DL	4
Pre-Req	Pol 10 (Skill) Government level 1 or Higher (Politics research)
Recipe	1 Banqueting Hall: Stone 5000, Logs 500, Gold 20, Silver 10000, Copper 500, Cloth 200, Pewter 1000
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Banqueting Hall is built by the occupying tribe as a means of encouraging the locals to join their Tribe and also as a means of raising Morale providing a feast for the people of the Tribe as well as Locals. The Banqueting Hall is impressively built and decorated in fine wrought materials and decor so as to impress the Locals.</p> <p>A feast is normally held in the last long month of winter (12) to enliven the long nights and to bring joy when it is coldest. It allows the hosting Tribe a General Morale boost (+0.01) plus to recruit a number of Actives according to the amount of food laid on (max 10,000 provs, @ 1 Active per 100 provs will join your Tribe as of 12/800).</p> <p>Note – if a Banquet (see Banquet) is also held by any Tribe in the Clan using the Banquet Hall, the effect of Banquet and Banqueting Hall is cancelled and replaced by.</p> <p>The host Tribe may invite one guest Tribe from either inside or outside the Clan.” The guest is subject to Morale increase.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Banqueting Hall, yearly increase of Morale and gaining of people.</i>

Name	Boat People
DL	4
Pre-Req	Government Level 1 (Politics research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Boat People allows you to take in Immigrants (Recruits) as if any Ocean or Lake hex under your control is a land hex.
Summary	<i>Yearly allows recruits from controlled water hexes</i>

Name	Capital
------	----------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	8
Pre-Req	Government Level 2 (Politics research) Daimyo (Politics research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Militia Training (Politics training)
Description	<p>Once a tribe, with a Politics 10 Village, has completely researched Capital, the tribe may declare its Politics 10 Village as its Capital, once the following prerequisites are met:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Politics 10 Village must contain a Courthouse as defined in the rules. Courthouse (Eng7, Wood3, Stn4, 12,000 stones, 500 logs, installed at normal rates). 2. The Politics 10 Village must have at least San8. 3. The Politics 10 Village must have sufficient water sources (Wells, Jetty, Cistern, taking into account its Sanitation level) to maintain its population during a siege. <p>These conditions must be maintained to obtain the benefits of a Capital.</p> <p>Benefit: The political benefits for States with a Capital are increased to the levels shown below:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A Military Morale bonus of 20% vs. invaders (+ 10% standard for States) 2. Taxation yields twice much as for a standard State (number of collectors per hex is the same) for the 12 hexes around the inner six (and any beyond). 3. The number of population (which includes Actives, Hirelings, Locals and Mercenaries) that joins the Politics 10 Village, once per year, is tripled. 4. All Trade is tripled. 5. The number of Militia available to the Home City is doubled. <p>The political benefits for Nations with a Capital are increased to the levels shown below:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A Military Morale bonus of 30% vs. invaders (+ 20% standard for states) 2. Taxation yields twice much as for a standard Nation (number of collectors per hex is the same) 3. The number of actives that joins the Capital Politics 10 Village, once per year, is tripled 4. All Trade is quadrupled. 5. The number of Militia available to the Home City is doubled. <p>The benefits of the Capital do combine with the benefits of a Castle. A doubling for the Castle becomes a tripling (not quadrupling) when a Capital contains a Castle. For example, Castle increases tithes by 100% Capital increased tithes by 100%. Assume silver tithes are 2,000 per month. Castle makes them 4,000. Capital makes them 6,000.</p> <p>When multiple States join together in Nationhood, the treaty of Nationhood must specify which State's Politics 10 Village will become the Nation's Capital (a Nation</p>

	<p>may have only one Capital). Other State Capitals become cities that retain the same benefits as being a capital of a state.</p> <p>Counters: Destruction of the Capital by an enemy clan causes all Capital benefits to be lost. The state/nation then reverts to the standard benefits for a state or for a nation.</p> <p>Players are responsible for keeping precise figures. If you cannot do this do not bother with this research.</p> <p>Castles may not be built for other Clans. A Clan may only have one Castle.</p>
Summary	<i>Designate a Capital, Increases the bonus of States and Nations</i>

Name	Castle (Details may be modified)
DL	6
Pre-Req	25' Stone Wall (Engineering research) in same any Tribe in the clan. as the Tribe attempting Castle
Recipe	1 Castle: Pol10 , Eng10, Stones 120000, Logs 2000, Bronze/Iron 500, Lead 500, Gold 50. Normal installation rates of materials apply.
Leads To	Fortress (Politics research) Great Wall (Politics research) Island Fortress (Engineering research) Island Fortress (Stonework research) Mission (Politics research) Palace (Politics research)
Description	<p>A Castle is essentially a fortified or strengthened building (acts as a 30' Stone Wall for the purposes of Siege and Assault) and capable of housing up to 6000 people and all Goods held by the Clan occupying the site (apart from Animals). If you have more than 6000 people in the site you can opt to house them behind lesser fortifications but doing so will mean likely lowering your Defensive Factor. Stables (via research) may be incorporated into the Castle to house Horses and Dogs. The effect of a Castle is to double/increase any advantages that Statehood/Nationhood confer.</p> <p>The Castle is <u>impervious</u> to Catapults and Trebuchets (Siege Cannon will do damage as per vs 30' Wall). Researched Siege Equipment does normal damage.</p> <p>At the end of any turn the Defender may opt to use the Castle rather than the external walls as their fortified defense (effectively sacrificing x-6000 people to the attacker). In this sense the first Castle maybe symbolic but it is a prerequisite for many useful research options).</p> <p>Since the attacker is deemed to be inside the outer walls no Village type Activities like</p>

	<p>Milling, Refining etc may be done (Baking is an exception), nor are external Activities, such as Hunting, Mining etc possible (Armour and Weapons may be made – common sense dictates what is possible). All herd is lost unless incorporated stables are present.</p> <p>See also “Locals and Cultural Support” in the Mandate. This research counts as 2 Hamlets for supporting additional Towns once a second Town has already been formed. These virtual Hamlets do not require Longhouses to support them. 20 Administrators are required to support each Hamlet.</p> <p><u>Only one Castle</u> may be built in a hex. A Castle increases the number of Special Hexes that a Clan may build in.</p> <p>Players should give their Castle a name – this will become the name of the hex.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Castle, Increases Local Support, Trade Multiplier and Defense</i>

Name	Daimyo
DL	8
Pre-Req	Government Level 2 (Politics research) Palace (Politics research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Capital (Politics research) Palace Renovation Gardens (Politics research) Terracotta Army (Pottery research)
Description	<p>A Clan may have only one Daimyo. The celebration of the Daimyo costs 20,000 silver.</p> <p>Benefit: The Home City gains the following benefits from a Daimyo: A Military Morale bonus of 15% (of existing Morale) vs invaders – that is, combat within a Home City controlled hex. (This combines with the Morale bonus for State or Nation status).</p> <p>Once per year a number of Inactives drawn from the local population will join the Home City. 10 Inactives per controlled hex – in addition to previous immigrants bonuses. This occurs on the same turn that the population increases for Governing Levels via immigrants.</p> <p>If the Home City is involved in Siege/Assault the Leadership value of each Tribe involved is increased by +4 for the duration of the combat.</p> <p>Any Tribes or Elements of a Clan containing a Daimyo gain the Morale and Leadership bonus of the Daimyo if combat occurs within a Home City controlled hex. Militia may also be assigned to the combat @ the rate of 20% of available Militia.</p>

	That is, 20% of available Militia may fight beyond the HC hex.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Morale bonus, Ldr bonus, Yearly gain of Inactvies, Militia at range</i>

Name	Doomsday Book
DL	2
Pre-Req	<u>Government Level 2 (Politics research)</u>
Recipe	1 Doomsday Book: Lit4, Gold 1, Leather 1, Parchment 10
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>The Doomsday Book allows the City to become more efficient at tax collection. A Doomsday Book must be created for each hex that will be taxed. These books must be kept in the Home City.</p> <p>Benefit: With the Doomsday Book you will be entitled to 400 Silver per controlled hex (beyond GL2) per month, due to be paid in month 12. Players will need to indicate the total amount of Silver to be paid at this time – and should not claim for hexes under the control of another City. A Castle will increase the amount of Silver collected per Tax Collector by 50%.</p> <p>The Doomsday Book was the first official census of Norman England. Among other uses, it was used for Tax Collection.</p> <p>Proposed by David Steinheilper</p> <p>Weight: 10</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Doomsday Book, increases silver tithes from controlled hexes</i>

Name	Emigration
DL	N/A
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>In the initial stages Emigration is not a research project as such.</p> <p>Players need to alert the GM when their population hits 400,000 and then monitor as it approaches 500,000.</p> <p>If ands when the overall population in a Clan reaches 500,000 all population growth for the Clan reverts back to 1% regardless of research or religious benefits. At this point Emigration becomes possible (that is, optional) whereupon you may send up to 100,000 people as migrants (via Element or sub-Tribe) to a distant place (this is done</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>automatically for the initial migration). The emigrants will establish (a second) Political center (or a first if they do not already have one). Should the settlement established by the emigrants reach 500,000 a third/second Political centre may be established, but research into “Emigration” is required to proceed to this part of the process. However, all population growth will be capped at 1% so in practice it is likely that you will need the physically transport people to do this. If your “mother” population suffers losses due to combat such that the population falls below 500,000 all applicable growth modifiers are restored until the 500,000 is reached again. This will only be applicable if attack is initiated against you (and not if you initiate an attack). Pol10 will be granted automatically in any sub-Tribe involved in the emigration and research for GL levels will need to be conducted through this sub-Tribe or its Element in the ordinary way.</p> <p>GM see ../Rules/Miscellaneous/Emigration.doc</p>
Summary	<i>Holdover from previous game, doesn't do anything yet</i>

Name	Feudal Security
DL	8
Pre-Req	Government Level 1 (Politics research) Close Order Cavalry (Horsemanship research) Courthouse (Building) Scroll (Item) Relic (Item)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>300 Local Feudal Horsemen act as remote Security forces. They are considered to occupy each politically controlled hex (extra research can increase this number). They are housed in a stone fort (500 yard 10’ wall and moat with barred gate, and Barracks) which must be built by the owning player.</p> <p>The Feudal Security is considered to have permanent Security orders. They will attempt to stop any hostile forces “raiding” the Kingdom by encountering raiders in any hex “raided through”.</p> <p>The effect is to diminish raiding forces by 300 enemy raiders per hex raided through. For example, if a Raiding party of 2000 passes through 2 controlled hexes on its way to Raiding the central State hex then the effective Raiding numbers are reduced to 1400. A hostile force occupying a controlled hex will have its numbers reduce by twice this (and includes the hex occupied). For example, a raiding party originating from a hex adjacent to the central hex will have its effective Raiders diminished by 600. Note, the Feudal Security is effective against any and all Clan Raiding regardless of the numbers of Clans involved (counter research aside).</p>

	<p>The locals will provide the provs for the Feudal Security. Note Feudal Security are independent of Militia and do not come to the defence of the State nor do they act as Suppressors. They are useful against Raids only. Upon completion players need to remind me to name the surrounding hexes 0250FS1 etc, these names will override names previously assigned to the hex.</p> <p>Upon completion of the Research, the Scroll is destroyed/lost and is sent to Usage (1263) via transfer.</p>
Summary	<i>Reduces enemy raider efficiency</i>

Name	Fortress
DL	8
Pre-Req	Castle (Politics research) Scroll (Item) Relic (Item)
Recipe	*See Castle , Gold 60 / Year
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>The Fortress requires the same materials as a Castle (that is, you can build one anywhere) and capable of housing up to 6000 people and all Goods (apart from Animals, Stables (via research) – but it does not control surrounding hexes. That is, it acts purely as a fortification. It cannot recruit Militia as a Pol10 hex does but you may deploy up to 20% of your Pol10 Militia to this hex (as a defensive force only) – leaving 80% behind. Must be built 6 hexes from your Castle. A second Fortress may be built 6 hexes from the first (a third and fourth Fortress require further research). Cannot be built in any hex under Pol control of another Clan unless a Nation is in play.</p> <p>Upon completion of the Research, the Scroll is destroyed/lost and is sent to Usage (1263) via transfer.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows castles to be built anywhere</i>

Name	Frontier Lands I, II, III....
DL	1, 2, 3....
Pre-Req	Frontier Lands 1: Government Level 2 (Politics research) Frontier Lands 2: Frontier Lands I (Diplomacy or Politics research) Frontier Lands 3: Frontier Lands II (Diplomacy or Politics research) Frontier Lands 4:....
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Frontier Lands 1: Frontier Lands II (Diplomacy or Politics research) Frontier Lands II: Frontier Lands III (Diplomacy or Politics research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

[Frontier Lands III: Frontier Lands IV \(Diplomacy or Politics research\)](#)

.....

Description

Bonus:

- **New Controlled Hexes:**

- Every Level of Frontier Lands extends the rings of Controlled hexes for a Home city by 3 Rings.
- Frontier Land controlled hexes count as Controlled Hexes for purposes of Pacification, Treaties, Nations, etc.
- Frontier Land controlled hexes **do not** count as Controlled hexes for purposes of Tithes, Recruits or Militia.

Requirements:

- **Pacification:** Each controlled hex requires Pacification just as normal controlled hexes require except that Frontier Lands require 1/10th the normal Pacifiers as regular Controlled Hexes. 0.1% Warriors assigned instead of 1% Warriors assigned.
- **Administration:** Each level of Frontier Lands counts as a level of Government Level when determining Administrators.

Restrictions: N/A

Notes:

- **TN Edition:**
 - **TN Classic:** Frontier Lands will not be shown to other players but they exist. If two or more Frontier Lands overlap, a Nation can be formed following normal rules. Both sides will need to Pacify these hexes.
 - **TN2020:** Frontier Lands will be shown to other players. If two or more Frontier Lands overlap, a Nation can be formed following normal rules. Only the final controlling side will need to Pacify these hexes.

Example: A Home City with Government Level 2 controls its hex and 2 rings of hexes around it ($1+6+12 = 19$ controlled hexes requiring $19 * 0.01 = 19\%$ of the Home City's Warriors). A Home City with Government Level 2 and Frontier Lands 2 controls its hex and 2 ring of hexes around it via Government Level 2 and then 6 rings of hexes around it via Frontier Lands 2. It has a total of 19 fully controlled hexes ($1 + 6 + 12 = 19$) that require $19 * 0.01 = 19\%$ of the Home City's Warriors. It semi-controls a further $18+24+30+36+42+48=198$ hexes (6 further rings) requiring $198 * 0.01 / 10 = 19.8\%$ of the Home City's Warriors for a total of 38.8% of the Home City's Warriors.

If later on, the Home City increases to Government Level 3, then it would have a total of $1+6+12+18=37$ fully controlled hexes (37% of the Home City Warriors) and a further $24+30+36+42+48+54 = 234$ semi-controlled hexes requiring 23.4% of the Home City Warriors for a total of 60.4% of the Home City warriors assigned to

	Pacification.
Summary	<i>Semi-lawed controlled hexes radiating out from a Home City.</i>

Name	Government Level 1 (to 5 and beyond)
DL	1, 2, 3, 4, 5
Pre-Req	Previous Government Level (Politics research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Government Level 1: Banqueting Hall (Politics research) Boat People (Politics research) Feudal Security (Politics research) Import Mission (Politics research) Local Trade Routes (Politics research) Treaty (Politics research) Government Level 2: Capital (Politics research) Daimyo (Politics research) Doomsday Book (Politics research) Island Fortress (Engineering research) Island Fortress (Stonework research) Sheriffs (Politics research) Government Level 3: Great Wall (Politics research) Marshals (Politics research)
Description	The start of the Empire (See Politics Rules)
Summary	<i>Increases the number of Controlled Hexes of a Clan's State/Nation</i>

Name	Great Wall
DL	9
Pre-Req	Government Level 3 (Politics research) Castle (Politics research) Engineering 10 (Skill) Stonework 10 (Skill)
Recipe	1 Gatehouse, 3 Watchtowers per hex side and 1 Relic to consecrate each hexside. 100,000 stones plus 3 Watchtowers per hex side for a 10' wall. 150,000 stones for 15' wall – that is, 250,000 stones total per hex side for 15' wall. Etc for higher walls.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	No differentiation for terrain. Not possible/required in hex sides bordered by impassable mountains.
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>The Player must specify, before beginning the Great Wall, the wall's start- and end-points which form a "closed loop". Must be a minimum of 6 hexes distant from <u>the main builders</u> Pol10 centre at all points (if more than one Clan is participating in construction the main builder must be specified).</p> <p>For practical purposes the Great Wall will not considered to be operative until the loop is completed/closed (once completed it may be expanded but new portions will not count til the next loop is completed etc) – a loop may include river, oceans, lakes and impassable terrain. Indeed, a completely new loop may be started beyond the existing loop.</p> <p>The GW effectively takes up a whole hex which once built becomes impassable terrain. Should the hexes externally adjacent already be named, or contain Locals etc these will need to be either renamed, destroyed or relocated. A relocation requires a 100 Gold tribute. Such hexes will be dealt with on a case by case basis.</p> <p>A GW can be built on the same hex side (that is, alongside) a river but if built "across" a river then river Travel "through" the wall is possible. A unit may build on one hex side only in the turn.</p> <p><u>Benefits</u></p> <p>Completion of the GW allows free range Herding – all Herders operating from a Home City within the loop are reduced to 10% of normal requirements as long as each of the herders are mounted (it is up to the player to note this – including other Clans affected which must also show this on their Orders).</p> <p>The HC Clan gains 10 gold and 200 Silk per hex side of Great Wall per year as tribute.</p> <p>Where two or more Clans combine to enclose an area the Gold tribute is divided equally among those Clans.. * a state of Alliance, Statehood or Nationhood must prevail.</p> <p>Effective Seeking Skill is increased +5 for units seeking inside their GW.</p> <p>Any combat conducted by the owner of the GW inside its loop gains 20% of assigned troops as additional locals. For example, 500 troops assigned to combat will be bolstered by an additional 100 (loses are in ratio) for the duration of the combat.</p> <p>Research may be proposed that demolishes a section of the wall (effectively a hex side) which will allow passage through this hex side – but the research will need to be commensurate with the research required to build the GW.</p>

Summary	<i>Mega-Project, Seeking / Herding / Defense boost, gain Gold and Silk</i>
Name	Ho Chi Minh Trail
DL	8
Pre-Req	Control of at least two “Locals” hexes Hone City cannot be in Prairie or Tundra hexes
Recipe	Ho Chi Minh Trail: People 2000, Eng7, Silver 20000, Gold 200, Relic 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>If your Pol10 centre (Home City) is placed under Siege or otherwise attacked you may move people or goods to any other of your units within 12 hexes of the Pol10 centre. This can be activated in the turn of the attack. The attacker may immediately take ownership of any Village works/site left behind.</p> <p>The Trail includes a system of underground passages at the Pol10 centre. With the assistance of Locals you are able to move people unobserved by the enemy. * 1500 in 0939, 1800 in 0940, 2100 in 0941 etc.</p>
Summary	<i>An emergency escape tunnel system to flee a siege that's going south.</i>

Name	Import Mission
DL	4, 5, 6....
Pre-Req	<u>Government Level 1 (Politics research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Upon successful completion of Import Mission, the Clan’s Home City gains an Import Mission similar to International Cities.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) The Home City becomes the Importing City. 2) The Home City must also be a Board of Trade Site (Home City hex must contain Tribe that has active Board of Trade) 3) A City, International or PC, is selected as the Exporting City. This City gains a Trade Mission text similar to that which exists for other International Cities. The mission may be accepted and transfers occur as with any normal International City trade mission. If the City is PC controlled, they may reject it and the researching clan must pick another city. 4) A Primary and Secondary Commodity are selected by the researching Clan. The amount of each is Base Commodity Quantity (from Mandate) * 4 * Hex distance from the Export City to the Import City, with a minimum of 10 Hexes. Distance is calculated based upon number of hexes from the Exporting City to the Importing City in a direct line regardless of terrain. <i>Example: 85 hexes for Gold (Qty 1) would be $85*4*1=340$ Gold to Transport. 109 hexes would be $109*4*1=436$ Gold.</i>

	<p>5) The payout for a successful Trade Mission (from Export to Import Mission) is 20% of the Commodity quantity for both Primary and Secondary commodities, Rounded Up. Example: If transporting 340 Gold, the payout to the unit delivering the goods would be $340 * 0.2 = 68$ Gold.</p> <p>6) Additionally, the Importing Clan (the one with the research) gains 10% of the Commodity quantity for both Primary and Secondary commodities, Rounded Up.</p> <p>7) A maximum of 5 Clans may be on the Import Mission at a time. A single Clan may run a single specific mission multiple times but must wait one turn between turn in and accepting the next mission.</p> <p>8) The clan with the Research may not run their own mission, only other clans.</p> <p>9) Failure to deliver the goods in a timely manner will result in a forfeiture of the mission. The Tribe with GL 1 and the Import Mission research loses 0.10 Morale while the Tribe that accepted the mission and forfeited will lose 0.15 Morale. A Clan that forfeits a mission may not accept future Trade Missions from this specific research. The time for the mission to be considered Forfeit is 4 months per 10 hexes (rounded up) of the Trade Mission distance. This forfeiture frees up the mission for future Clans.</p> <p>This research may be taken multiple times, up to three, with different commodities for each Import Mission and different Export Cities.</p> <p><i>Beijung, Whulan, Tokyo, Osake, Lugdunum, Trier; These are all well known international cities with major trade routes. Today, we take the next step forward into becoming a power in this work. Merchants will bring their wares to our gates and our tolls will increase. Our soldiers will patrol the streets and the trade routes beyond. We will see prosperity.</i></p>
Summary	Setup a trade mission from a PC City to your PC City

Name	Local Trade Routes
DL	4
Pre-Req	Politics 10 (Skill) Government Level 1 (Politics research)
Recipe	Establish: Silver 10000
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>This research allows city-states to make use of the local merchant and trade routes that are present in its vicinity to transfer goods across limited distances.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Transfers: The Clan may make up to 4 total transfers between a City and any Unit(s) within range of the Local Trade Route research. A transfer is

	<p>considered any number/quantity of different goods between two Units.</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Range: Local Transfer allows trades up to a number of hexes equal to the Government Level (GL) of the City plus 2. Range = GL + 2. Range is not affected by terrain, water hexes, rivers, impassable terrain or weather. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ <i>For example: A City with a GL of 1 would have a Range of 3.</i> ○ <i>For example: A City with a GL of 2 would have a Range of 4.</i> ○ <i>For example: A City with a GL of 5 would have a Range of 7.</i> ● Other Clans: Units from other Clans may be traded to/from but only if that Clan also has a City that is Government Level (GL) 1 or higher. ● War: Local Trade Routes cannot be used if the sender or receiver is under Siege or DEVA. <p>Performing the Local Trade Route transfers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One off Trades / Trades between mobile units: For Trades between mobile unit(s), a comment to the GM that includes the Transferring Unit, the Target Unit, the Goods and Quantity to be traded and the reason the trade can happen (<i>Local Trade Route</i>) should be used. ● Fixed location Trades: For Trades between two fixed locations within range of the Local Trade Routes, it is recommended that the player fill out and turn in the Special Trade Route spreadsheet (specific hexes) so that trades can be used using the Automated Order transfer tab and would not require GM involvement once established.
Summary	<i>Allows the creation of short range special transfer routes.</i>

Name	Logistics 1
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Logistics1 is a Group B Skill. It allows 1% per Logistics level of Militia available to the Home City to defend any hex under the control of the Home City that falls under attack within the “A” zone (generally 10 hexes away). Costs 5 Silver per Militiaman deployed. It is incumbent upon the player to show that the attack in question occurs within a controlled hex.</p> <p>Logistics2 and beyond will enable joint Militia to defend with respect to attacks vs zones further from the Home City. Costs 10, 15 Silver per Militiaman deployed etc.</p>
Summary	<i>New Skill - Logistics, allows Militia to defend in other controlled hexes</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Marshals
DL	3
Pre-Req	<u>Government Level 3 (Politics research)</u> <u>Sheriffs (Politics research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Marshals work like Pacifiers and Sheriffs, except more efficiently. One Marshal will replace three Sheriffs. Marshals must be equipped with Shields, Full Plate, Swords, Spears and Horsebows. If better armor or weapons are obtained they may be used. (For example, Lance may replace Spear.) Marshals must be mounted on Horses with Saddles. Marshals are housed in a Hall of Justice, 100 Marshals to each Hall. Marshals are considered to always be on defense and will automatically contribute to the number of defenders assigned.</p> <p>If the Politics 10 city is under siege, the Sheriffs may be dismounted and assigned to any of the defensive positions. Fluted Plate may be substituted for Full Plate during combat.</p> <p>Counters: Loss of Governing Level 3</p>
Summary	<i>Reduces number of Pacifiers needed for State</i>

Name	Militia Training
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Capital (Politics research)</u>
Recipe	Yearly: Silver 1 per Militia each Year (12 months after completion)
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>(see also Training)</p> <p>Once a tribe researches Militia Training, its Home City may initiate the training of Militia.</p> <p>One year after the MT the military skills of Militia increases to (Arc3, Hor3). A year after this Archery and Horse are increased to 6. Etc to a maximum of 12. Players are responsible for prompting the GM, for showing costs etc.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Militia's combat skills</i>

Name	Mission
DL	4 (First) 5 (Second) etc.
Pre-Req	<u>Castle (Politics research)</u>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	1 Mission: People 3260, Eng 7, Wd 3, Mtl 3, Stn 4, Stones 15k, Logs 500, Brass 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	Mission raises General Morale by 0.02. A mission must be at least 12 hexes from the Castle and cannot be built where a Village already exists. Once per year (at least 12 months after the Mission is built) the Castle owner may contribute up to 8,000 Silver to the local community in return for 80 Inactives joining any unit present at the Mission site. Note that a Mission may be offered to some Clans without the research but in this case there is no control over where it may be built and it is unlikely that the number of Missions offered will be more than one.
Summary	<i>New Building - Mission, Build away from City to gain people yearly</i>

Name	Palace (may be modified)
DL	6
Pre-Req	<u>Castle (Politics research)</u>
Recipe	1 Palace: Eng10, Stone 50k, Logs 5k, Silver 10k, Carpet 50, Tapestries 50, Statues 5, Sculptures 20, Gold 150, Diamonds 50
Leads To	<u>Daimyo (Politics research)</u> <u>Palace Renovation Gardens (Politics research)</u>
Description	<p>The home of the Daimyo. One per State. See also “Locals and Cultural Support” in the Mandate. This research counts as 4 Hamlets for supporting additional Towns once a second Town has already been formed. These virtual Hamlets do not require Longhouses to support them. 20 Administrators are required to support each Hamlet. It also attracts a one-off contingent of Elite Troops.</p> <p>Global Announcement: Upon completion of a Palace, a Global Announcement must be made in the Tribe News and Clan News.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tribe News: The Player must remind the Game Master to put the announcement in Tribe News. Tribe News announcement will merely contain that “Clan ### has completed a major technological and cultural milestone, the construction of a Palace. • Clan News: The Player must add a
Summary	<i>New Building - Palace, allows Daimyo research and counts as Local Support settlements</i>

Name	Palace Renovation Gardens
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>Palace (Politics research)</u> <u>Daimyo (Politics research)</u>
Recipe	PRG: Eng10, Stone 80k, Logs 8k, Silver 50k, Iron 1k, Gold 50, Tigers 2, Sculptures 10, Relics 2

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>The Palace Gardens are, among other things, a place for the Daimyo to rest, relax and entertain guests or even do a bit of recreational hunting. Built within the safety of the Palace walls and taking up an area of 1000 000 square yards the Palace Gardens provide the Daimyo with a variety of entertainment options.</p> <p>The Palace Gardens contain many smaller building such as stages for Prerequisites performances, enclosures for the Tigers and quarters suitable for guests such as visiting a Daimyo his entourage (up to 600 people). To accrue the benefits the garden must be maintained in pristine condition and staffed, there must be artisans available to perform at any time and the number of Tigers must be maintained at 10 or more.</p> <p>Basic garden Prerequisites 200 actives per month Herding of Tigers 1 herder per animal Artisans At least 20 performers (from a Tribe with a completed research topic in a cultural skill per month) Security as per pacifying a controlled hex (if sheriffs or marshals are used they do not require horses)</p> <p><u>Benefits:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A further Military Morale bonus of 10% (of existing Morale) vs invaders – that is, combat within a controlled hex (see Politics). This combines with the Morale bonus for State or Nation or Daimyo status. 2. Once per year a number of Inactives drawn from the local population will join the Home City. 10 Inactives per controlled hex – <u>in addition</u> to previous/other immigrants bonuses. This occurs on the same turn that the population increases for Governing Levels via immigrants. 3. Having Palace Gardens provides an alternative method of obtaining a treaty. Rather than having to research a treaty the Daimyo of another state can be invited to visit. Together, in the tranquil environment of the Palace Gardens the two Daimyo's are able to work out the details of a treaty there and then. Daimyo is a prerequisite. 4. Once the Gardens are established (with Tigers) locals will be attracted to surrounding areas. The result will be the immediate offer to build two Local structures (see Locals). 5. A one off of 1000 Hirelings will be attracted to the Home City. <p>Proposed by Mark Ryan</p>
Summary	<i>Increases State and Nation bonuses</i>
Name	Political Route
DL	8

Pre-Req	Home City established in Clan Home City at Government Level 2 Board of Trade established in Clan
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Political Route: Once a Clan completes Political Route research topic, it may form 1 Political Route. Once a Political Route is formed, the research topic is removed but may be researched again. Political Routes are preset and maintained routes similar to Trade Routes but instead of trade, they provide communication and assistance between two cities allowing the utilization of Treaties in order to form a Nation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Formation: A Political Route forms between two Home Cities at a maximum route distance as below. It may go across fords, mountains, rivers, Alps, passes and one hex of water (lake or ocean) at a time. Route Distance: A route may be a maximum distance, in hexes, equal to 15 Hexes per Government Level of the Home City with the lowest Government Level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Example: A Home City with GL 2 and a Home City with GL 3 may have a route between them at a maximum distance of $2 * 15 = 30$ hexes. Map: Players will need to provide a map to the Game Master and show the route and specify the exact hex coordinates of the route. The GM will verify that the route does not pass through a hex controlled by another Player's Home City that is not part of the alliance / nation. Once set, the route may not be changed without retaking the research topic. Route Effect: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nation Forming: Once the route is set and pacifiers are assigned, the two cities may work towards forming a Nation through standard Treaty rules. Controlled Hexes: Uncontrolled hexes between the researcher's Home City and the target Home City along the Political Route are considered to be Controlled by the research holding clan's Home City. Each controlled hex from Political Route adds to the normal Home City Controlled Hexes. Restrictive: These Controlled Hexes do not produce Tithes, provide Militia, Actives or other benefits outside of allowing Treaties. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Completion Payment: Upon formation of the Political Route, each Clan must consume 20 "Lots" of one of that Clan's desired commodities. Annual Payment: Each turn, on Month 1, each Clan must consume 5 "Lots" of one of that Clan's desired commodities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Failure to Pay: All bonuses are suspended until desired commodity debt is

	<p>paid.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pacification: Controlled Hexes formed by a Political Route requires normal pacification and follows all normal pacification rules. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Failure to Pacification: All bonuses are suspended until pacification is reassigned. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Other Controlled Hexes: A Political Route may not go across non-allied Controlled Hexes. • Unallied Controlled Hexes: If an unallied City grows and has Controlled EHxes which now overlap this Political Route, all bonuses are lost until Control of the Hexes is resolved either through removal of the interloper, use of a treaty or other method of Alliance is made. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Multiple Routes: This research may be taken multiple times at the same • Frontiers exist around every Kingdom and Nation. Wise rulers seek out others to ally with and work towards the pacification of these frontiers. This usually requires a firm iron fist to squash bandits. Dedicated routes to those allies become essential.
Summary	<i>Different route to forming a Nation</i>

Name	Politics 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Politics +1 (example from Pol 10 to Pol 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Politics specialists. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Politic Specialists may act as Governors. Each Politics Specialist counts as 2 Governors. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Politics, Specialists</i>
---------	---

Name	Posse
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	For each 5 warriors assigned to Security a Local may be added if and when required.
Summary	<i>Gain additional free people for Security assignment</i>

Name	Sheriffs
DL	4
Pre-Req	<u>Government Level 2 (Politics research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Marshals (Politics research)</u>
Description	<p>Sheriffs work like Pacifiers, except more efficiently. One Sheriff will replace three Pacifiers. Sheriffs must be equipped with Shields, Helms, Chain, Breastplate and Trews or better. No Bronze, Ring or Scale armor is allowed. Minimum weapons must be both Swords and Spears. Any type of bows may be used. If better armor or weapons are obtained they may be used. (For example, Lance may replace Spear and Full Plate may replace component pieces.) Sheriffs must be mounted on Horses with Saddles. Sheriffs are housed in a <u>Hall of Justice (10,000 Stones, Eng9 and may be built with the attainment of Sheriff)</u>. 100 Sheriffs to each Hall. If the Politics 10 city is under siege, the Sheriffs may be dismounted and assigned to any of the defensive positions.</p> <p>Counters: Loss of Governing Level 2</p>
Summary	<i>Reduces the number of Pacifiers required in State</i>

Name	Treaty
DL	3
Pre-Req	<u>Government Level 1 (Politics research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Treaties formally define control of disputed Political territories (that is, the point at which two or more States become <u>overlapping States</u>). Each new treaty must be researched separately. Either party can develop treaties and must be announced by

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

each party to the treaty in the same turn (like Truces). The terms must be preerquisit within 2 turns of development. The treaty will become operational following the turn in which both parties accept the terms of the treaty (expending 6 parchement each). If any party formally rejects the treaty at any stage after the terms are preerquisit, it is destroyed. A Treaty need not address all hexes in dispute, but if it does, this aim needs to be specified at the time of researching, and the hexes specified. The terms of a treaty may not be extended to encompass territories either not in dispute or omitted at the time the research was successful.

Breaking Treaties:

Terms may be renounced in several ways. One party can research a new Treaty and, if agreed between the parties, this can replace the old one. One party could leave the area (or the game) abandoning their State. Otherwise, Research could be performed to declare an existing Treaty invalid with respect to one or more Territories, which would then return them to disputed status.

Summary	<i>Creates a Treaty when Controlled Hexes overlap allowing formation of a Nation</i>
---------	--

Pottery

Name	Advanced Pottery
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	2 Ewers: People 1, Silver 5 each 2 Jars: People 2, Silver 10 each 2 Urns: People 4, Silver 10 each
Leads To	N/A
Description	Clay and Coal consumption remain the same.
Summary	<i>Allows more efficient but expensive creation of pottery</i>

Name	China
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 China: People 2, Kaolin 4, Coal 20, Silver 10, Requires Kiln
Leads To	N/A
Description	Commodity
Summary	<i>Allows the creation of China, a Desired Commodity.</i>

Name	Crown Molding
DL	5
Pre-Req	Art 10 (Group C skill)
Recipe	10 Crown Molding: People 1, Pot 10, Art 10, Portland Cement 10, Clay 10, Refined Sand 10, Water 40
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Item – Crown Molding: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Decorative form of plaster for use in the most prestigious new buildings. ○ Crown Molding is installed at a rate of 2 per worker. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting Recipe Ingredients: Some of the components are only generated via research topic based recipes. While the creator of Crown Molding does not need to know those topics, it will need access to the components. • Use of Crown Molding: As of the release of this topic, there are no public uses of Crown Molding.
Summary	<i>New Item – Crown Molding, a sub-component for future prestigious buildings.</i>

Name	Molding
DL	4
Pre-Req	Design 6 (Group ? skill) Architecture 3 (Group C skill)
Recipe	5 Molding: People 1, Pot 10, Design 6, Architecture 3, Portland Cement 10, Clay 20, Refined Sand 20, Water 40
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Item –Molding: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Decorative form of plaster for use in the most prestigious new buildings. ○ Molding is installed at a rate of 2 per worker. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting Recipe Ingredients: Some of the components are only generated via research topic based recipes. While the creator of Molding does not need to know those topics, it will need access to the components. • Use of Molding: As of the release of this topic, there are no public uses of Molding.
Summary	<i>New Item –Molding, a sub-component for future prestigious buildings.</i>

Name	Pottery 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Pottery 12 (Pottery research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus:

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Pottery +1 (example from Pot 10 to Pot 11) ◆ Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Pottery based specialists <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Pottery, Specialists</i>

Name	Pottery 12
DL	5
Pre-Req	Pottery 11 (Pottery research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Pottery +1 (example from Pot 11 to Pot 12) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Pottery</i>

Name	Terracotta Army
DL	9 8
Pre-Req	Daimyo (Politics research)
Recipe	1000 Terracotta Warriors: Eng8, Art 10 Rel10, Stones 10k, Logs 1k
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A leader such as a Damiyo desires security in the afterlife befitting his stature. The stones and logs are for the housing for the terracotta army and are installed at 5 stones and 2 logs per person.</p> <p><u>Benefits:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The terracotta army is a clear physical symbol of the leaders belief in religion

	<p>and the afterlife and naturally this effects the entire population. Completion of the terracotta army by a clan allows a combat bonus of +6 Combat when in combat if the Terracotta warriors are present.</p> <p>Proposed by Mark Ryan Weight: 100 lbs each</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - New Item - Terracotta Warriors, increases Combat skill in combat</i>

Quarrying

Name	6 Stones / Person
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>7 Stones / Person (Quarrying research)</u>
Description	<p>Each quarrier can quarry 6 stones. Please note, the module will automatically upgrade Tribe quarrying figures. However, this may not happen with Elements and will need to be done manually – you need to refer to this ONLY when the first attempt at Qry with new figures is done.</p> <p>Mattocks and other implements use 6 Stones as the base number instead of 5. A Craftsmen with 6 Stones / Person and a Mattock would quarry 12 stones.</p>
Summary	<i>Quarrying provides 6 stones per person</i>

Name	7 Stones / Person
DL	6
Pre-Req	<u>6 Stones / Person (Quarrying research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>8 Stones / Person (Quarrying research)</u>
Description	<p>Each quarrier can quarry 7 stones.</p> <p>Mattocks and other implements use 7 Stones as the base number instead of 5. A Craftsmen with 7 Stones / Person and a Mattock would quarry 14 stones.</p>
Summary	<i>Quarrying provides 7 stones per person</i>

Name	8 Stones / Person
DL	7
Pre-Req	<u>7 Stones / Person (Quarrying research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>9 Stones / Person (Quarrying research)</u>
Description	<p>Each quarrier can quarry 8 stones.</p> <p>Mattocks and other implements use 8 Stones as the base number instead of 5. A Craftsmen with 8 Stones / Person and a Mattock would quarry 16 stones.</p>
Summary	<i>Quarrying provides 8 stones per person</i>

Name	9 Stones / Person
DL	8

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	8 Stones / Person (Quarrying research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	10 Stones / Person (Quarrying research)
Description	Each Quarrier can quarry 9 stones. Mattocks and other implements use 9 Stones as the base number instead of 5. A Craftsmen with 9 Stones / Person and a Mattock would quarry 18stones.
Summary	<i>Quarrying provides 9 stones per person</i>

Name	10 Stones / Person
DL	8
Pre-Req	9 Stones / Person (Quarrying research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Each Quarrier can quarry 10 stones. Mattocks and other implements use 10 Stones as the base number instead of 5. A Craftsmen with 10 Stones / Person and a Mattock would quarry 20 stones.
Summary	<i>Quarrying provides 10 stones per person</i>

Name	Extra Quarrying Tools
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	A person sent Quarrying produces 5 Stones, and if equipped with a Mattock they produce +5 Stones (10 in total; in effect working as two people). A Tribe that knows Extra Quarrying Tools understands that by providing extra tools; and training; they can get better returns on quarrying. If equipped with a Shovel in addition to a Mattock; they will produce an extra +5 Stones (15 in total; in effect working as <u>three people</u>). The bonus is only effective when a person is equipped with both tools. You must show Quarriers as equivalent workers, for example, 100 workers using 100 Mattocks, 100 Shovels and 100 Wheelbarrows are shown as 400 Quarriers (the Wheelbarrows adding an equivalent 100 to the 300).
Summary	<i>Allows Quarriers to use a shovel in addition to a Mattock</i>

Name	Greater Masons
DL	4

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	Master Masons (Quarrying research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	A Tribe with this research knowledge has a better understanding of the nature and preparation of quarried stone; as a result they gain a 50% bonus towards production of Stones (this replaces the bonus gained under Master Masons). Effectively 1000 people will do the work of 1500 people.
Summary	<i>Increases quarrying yields by a total of 50%</i>

Name	Inactive Quarriers
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Inactives can perform up to one-third of the Quarrying activities labour. If not doing this they “work” for the public service. Inactives in major quarrying operations perform menial tasks such as leading carts and oxen, cleaning paths, fetching water and sharpening tools. Would require coding from Jeff. Until this is done Chief, please add Actives/Warriors and Inactives into a single figure in Activities (showing the Inactives in notes).
Summary	<i>Allows normally useless Inactives to work as <u>Quarriers</u></i>

Name	Limestone
DL	6
Pre-Req	Scouting 6 (Group B skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Resource (Limestone): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Limestone is a special type of stone used in specific building construction. ○ Limestone may be quarried by any Clan that finds a hex containing Limestone, no research required. ○ Limestone is quarried at the same rate as normal Stone and is affected by all Quarry research topics and implements that normally affect stone. • New Hex (Limestone): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Upon completion of Research: When a Tribe completes Limestone research, the Player should contact the GM to have a new Limestone hex placed. ○ Location: The Limestone hex will be approximately 12-15 hexes distant from both the Tribe that completed the research and the Clan’s main village, home village and home city.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Terrain: The new Limestone deposit must be placed on terrain that is either Hills or Mountains and the hex must not have a water hexside at the time the Limestone is added to the hex. The hex may not already have a mine. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There are little to no administration based tasks that would require Specialists.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Administration, Specialists</i>

Name	Masons
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Master Masons (Quarrying research)</u> <u>Quarry Blocks (Quarrying research)</u>
Description	A Tribe with this research knowledge has a better understanding of the nature and preparation of quarried stone; as a result they gain a 10% bonus towards production of Stones. Effectively 1000 people will do the work of 1100 people. Needs to be shown as an equivalent number of workers. For example, 1000 workers with 1000 Mattocks = 2200 equivalent workers.
Summary	<i>Increases quarrying output by 10%</i>

Name	Master Masons
DL	4
Pre-Req	<u>Masons (Quarrying research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Greater Masons (Quarrying research)</u>
Description	A Tribe with this research knowledge has a better understanding of the nature and preparation of quarried stone; as a result they gain a 25% bonus towards production of Stones (this replaces the bonus gained under Masons). Effectively 1000 people will do the work of 1250 people.
Summary	<i>Increases quarrying out by a total of 25%</i>

Name	Quarrying 11
-------------	---------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Quarrying +1 (example from Qry 10 to Qry 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Quarrying specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Quarrying, Specialists</i>

Name	Quarry Blocks
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Masons (Quarrying research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Quarrying Activity</p> <p>Units with access to this research have the knowledge to cut larger blocks of stone from mountains and cliff faces. These quarry blocks measure 2’ x 2’ x 5’ instead of the standard 1 cubic foot dimensions of normal stone blocks.</p> <p>1 Worker produces 1 Quarry Block. Implements that affect Quarrying affect Quarry Block output. Research affects Quarry Blocks as well with the exception of the # Stones / Person research (such as 6 stones / person, 7 stones / person, etc).</p> <p>1 Worker with a Mattock and Chisel would produce 3 Quarry Blocks.</p> <p>1 Quarry Block replaces 20 stone for any project that requires at least 2,000 stone, including Walls, Towers and larger buildings. If using Quarry Blocks in a building, the building must be completely built out of Quarry Blocks.</p> <p>Prior to starting an Engineering project that will use Quarry Blocks, notify the GM so that the updated recipe may be added to the database.</p> <p>Weight: 2,000 lbs</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Create Quarry Blocks instead of Stone.</i>
---------	---

Name	Quarry Ladder
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Quarry Ladder: People 15, Wd3, Log 4, Iron 25, Coal 150
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Each Quarry ladder (implement) doubles the base output of 10 people performing Quarrying and Digging (Clay, canals, sand, moats, etc.. Does not stack with Mining Ladders) activities before implements. Quarry Ladders can be used in conjunction with other tools, but increases are additive and are not compounded. For example, 1 Quarrier with both a Mattock and a Quarry Ladder produces his base output x 3 (not x 4).</p> <p>These wood and metal ladders and ramps are used to for more advanced vertical quarrying and to facilitate the movement of personnel and stone up the quarry pit. These would not be standard wood ladders or ramps but would have iron reinforcement to handle the added weight of the stone and wagons. We have called it Quarry Ladders research to shorten the name but it would really be both ladders and ramps.</p> <p>1 Quarry Ladder weighs 50 lbs.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Quarry Ladder, increases stone output for 10 quarriers</i>

Rangers

Name	Ranger 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Ranger +1 (example from Ranger 10 to Ranger 11) <p>.</p> <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no ranger specialists at this time. • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Ranger</i>

Name	Ranger IV, V, VI
DL	4,5,6....
Pre-Req	Ranger IV: Ranger Skill Level 10 (Group C skill), Ranger III (Scouting research) Ranger V: Ranger IV (Ranger research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Ranger IV: Ranger V (Ranger research) Ranger V: Ranger VI (Ranger research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Ranger 4: +6 Level to Scouting (ex. Sct 19 to Sct 25) ○ Ranger 5: +6 Level to Scouting (ex. Sct 25 to Sct 31) ○ Ranger 6: +6 Level to Scouting (ex. Sct 31 to Sct 37) ○ • Additional Skill Level Bonus: Every research topic of Ranger 7 or higher adds an additional +6 Scouting levels.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Scouting</i>

Refining

Name	Coke
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	15 Coke: People 1, Coal 20
Leads To	Steel (Refining research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Resource (Coke): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Coke may be used by any Clan regardless of completion of this research topic provided they have an application for Coke. ○ Efficiency: Coke is more efficient than coal for use for refining, armour and weapon production. 1 Coke is the equivalent of 2 Coal. Items listed under notes will require silver as well. ○ Steel: Coke is required for Steel production. The production of Steel requires the completion of the Steel (Refining research) research topic. • New Activity (Refining / Coke / None): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Completion of this research topic gives the Tribe the ability to use a refining activity to turn coal into Coke. ○ This is a Refining activity and requires Refineries / Smelters similar to a normal refining activity. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Items capable of using Coke: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Conventional Items: Breastplate, Helm, Shield, Chain, Sword ○ Research Items: Bascinet, Fluted Plate, Full Plate, Greaves, Heavy Fluted Plate, Heavy Full Plate ○ Refining: Copper, Iron, Steel (Required)
Summary	<i>New Item - Coke, Allows creation of coke, more efficient Coal, allows Steel research</i>

Name	Hammer Mill
DL	<u>5</u>
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	<u>1 Hammer Mill: People 11, Wd 5, Eng 6, Logs 20, Iron 5, Coal 10, Leather 2</u>
Leads To	<u>N/A</u>
Description	The Hammer Mill (or Stamp Mill) is a hydraulic or manually operated series of weighted “pistons” which pulverize various ores into finer pieces, and sift out more

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>unusable rock, for more efficient refining, and portage of raw materials.</p> <p>Each Hammer Mill can service 20 Ams assigned to Mining OR Refining, allowing 2 Ams to do the work of 3 (identical to the effect of Scaffolds for Engineering and Shipbuilding, so it is, essentially, a “Scaffold” for Mining and Refining). Hammer Mills may be used by other Clans.</p> <p>For Mining purposes, the additional Ams would be shown as “Effective Workers” in orders.</p> <p>For Refining purposes, the additional Ams would be shown as “Effective Workers” in orders, and would require additional Smelters to cover the increased Ams.</p> <p>If operated on a river hexside, cattle or horses need not be available, as the mill would be hydraulically powered via river current. If operated on a hex with no river hexsides, 2 Horses or Cattle are required to operate.</p> <p>Hammer Mills are items and not buildings. They can be traded.</p> <p>Weight: 2000 lbs</p> <p><i>Proposed by Chris S.</i></p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Hammer Mill, increases output of 20 miners or refiners</i>

Name	Increased Output
DL	Increased Output 10%: 4 Increased Output 50%: 6 Increased Output 100%: 8
Pre-Req	Increased Output 10%: None Increased Output 50%: Increased Output 10% Increased Output 100%: Increased Output 50%
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Increased Output 50% (Refining research) Increased Output 100% (Refining research)
Description	Increased Refining Output by 10% / 50% / 100% Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activity AM Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Refining: +10% / +50% / +100% ○ When performing the Refining Activity, each worker gains +0.10, +0.50 or +1.0 AM. That is, when performing Refining activities, each worker counts as 1.10, 1.50 or 2 workers as appropriate.

	<p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Editions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: Assign extra people to the Refining process. If you deploy 100 people to perform Refining, you would actually assign 110 / 150 / 200 equivalent workers on your turn orders. • TN2020: The code will automatically apply this. No need to do anything special. • Stacking Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard bonus stacking rules apply. A specialist (1 AM normal worker + 1 AM from being a specialist) that is also subject to Increased Output Refining 100% (+1 AM) would perform the work of 3 workers (1 AM Normal + 1 AM Specialist + 1 AM IOM100%) and not 4 workers (it would not double a specialist from 2 to 4).
Summary	<i>Increases efficiency of refiners.</i>

Name	Paraffin Wax
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Paraffin Refinery: Eng 5, Stn 5, People 70, Log 100, Stone 100 20 Candles: Wax 2, People 1, Paraffin Wax 1, String 1
Leads To:	Waxy Seal (Maintain Boats research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Building (Paraffin Refinery): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ One Paraffin Refinery holds up to 100 Smelters. ○ 1 Smelter may be used by 10 Workers. ○ Maximum 10 Paraffin Refineries in a Hex. • New Resource (Paraffin Wax): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Paraffin Wax is an advanced resource. ○ Paraffin Wax may be used by any Clan regardless of completion of this research topic provided they have an application for the Paraffin Wax. • New Activity (Refining / Paraffin Wax / None): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Completion of this research topic gives the Tribe the ability to use a refining activity to turn coal and into Paraffin Wax. ○ This is a Refining activity and requires Paraffin Refineries / Smelters. • New Activity (Waxworks / Candle / Paraffin): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ 1 Worker produces 20 Candles using 1 Paraffin Wax and 1 String.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Future Research: Future research may be permitted that allows the use of Paraffin Wax in the manufacture of Glansgarn Fabric (Weaving), Crayons (Art), Cosmetics (Fashion & Design), Lava Lamps (Glasswork) and Surfboards (Woodwork).
Summary	<i>New resource (Paraffin Wax), new building (Paraffin Refinery), new activity (Refining / Paraffin Wax).</i>

Name	Portland Cement
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	5 Portland Cement: 1 AM, Limestone 10, Clay 5, Coal 10
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Resource (Portland Cement): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Portland Cement is an advanced resource. ○ Portland Cement may be used by any Clan regardless of completion of this research topic. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>New resource (Refined Sand), new activity (Refining / Refined Sand).</i>

Name	Refined Sand
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	15 Refined Sand: People 1, 20 Sand, 5 Coal
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Resource (Refined Sand): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Refined Sand is an advanced resource. ○ Refined Sand may be used by any Clan regardless of completion of this research topic. • New Activity (Refining / Refined Sand / None):

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Completion of this research topic gives the Tribe the ability to use a refining activity to turn coal and regular sand into Refined Sand. ○ This is a Refining activity and requires Refineries / Smelters. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>New resource (Refined Sand), new activity (Refining / Refined Sand).</i>

Name	Refining 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Refining +1 (example from Refining 10 to Refining 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Refining specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Refining, Specialists</i>

Name	Saltpetre Refining
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Saltpetre Refinery: 70 AM, Eng5, Stn5, Logs 100, Stone 100, Standard Installation Rates
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Saltpetre Refinery can service up to 100 cattle.</p> <p>Uses Refining Skill for limits.</p> <p>1 person can gather 10 Saltpetre from 2 cattle per turn, that is, 50 people can refine</p>

	Saltpetre per standard refinery.
Summary	<i>New Building - Saltpetre Refinery, turn Cattle poop into Saltpetre</i>
Name	Steel
DL	8
Pre-Req	Coke (Refining) in same Tribe
Recipe	Steel 15: People 1, Iron 20, Silver 15, Coke 10
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Coded</p> <p>Better Armour and Weapons – Steel to Iron is like Iron is to Bronze. Working with Steel requires 1 skill level higher than working with Iron (and some Gold and Silver to pay for expertise and materials).</p> <p>At this stage some steel items are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Armour: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Chain (Silver 30), ○ Breastplate (Gold 1, Silver 40), ○ Helm (Silver 15), ○ Shield (Silver 15), ○ Full Plate (Gold 2, Silver 50), ○ Fluted Plate (Gold 2, Silver 40), ○ Bascinet (Silver 20) ○ Greaves (Silver 20) • Weapon: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Sword (Gold 2, Silver 20), ○ Sword – Scimitar (Gold 2, Silver 20) ○ Spear (Silver N/A) <p>Arrows currently not coded, but coming</p> <p>The Romans could make Steel around 900 AD.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows creation of steel weapons(cuts through armour) and armour (stops weapons)</i>

Research

Name	Colleges
DL	6
Pre-Req	University (building)
Recipe	<p>1 College: People 1,200, Res 10, Eng 8, Stn 4, Stone 5k, Log 400, Silver 100k, Scroll 1, Parchment 200, Candles 50, Tobacco 200</p> <p>Per College Annually: Silver 100k, Scroll 1, Parchment 200, Candles 50, Tobacco 200</p>
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Allows a Tribe to construct College buildings as an addition to an existing University building that already exists in the village.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ New Building: College <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The Tribe gains the ability to build Colleges in a Hex that has a University. ○ When a College is constructed, the Player must select which type of College is completed. One College building is required for each College. ◆ Skill Level 10 Auto-Success: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Tribe gains Skill Level 10 in a skill after 10 consecutive unsuccessful Primary skill checks instead of 12. ○ This applies to all Tribes that belong to the Clan in the Village that the University and College building reside. ○ This applies to all skills that belong in the appropriate College. See List below. ◆ Research DL 0 Auto-Success: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A Tribe gains Difficulty Level 0 in a research topic after 6-10 consecutive research attempts instead of 12. ○ This applies to all Tribes that belong to the Clan in the Village that the University and College building reside. ○ This applies to all research topics in skills that belong in the appropriate College. See list below. ◆ Research DL 0 Increased Chance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Once all 7 Colleges have been built at a University, Tribes attempting to gain DL 0 in a research topic gain +10% to their chance of success. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ TN Classic: Players need to prompt the GM when this first applies. ▪ TN 2020: This is automatically coded and will not need manual intervention. ○ This applies to all Tribes that belong to the Clan in the Village that the University and all 7 College buildings reside.

- **War College:** A War College building may be built whenever the College research topic OR the War College research topic has been completed. To build a War College, Colleges research is not required to be completed if the Clan already has War College research topic completed.

Requirements:

- **Specific College:** Each Specific College requires its own building to be built to function.
- **Annual Upkeep:** Every year, Annually on month 1, each college requires a unit at the College to consume the following:
 - ⊖ Silver: 100k
 - ⊖ ~~Scroll: 1~~
 - ⊖ Parchment: 200
 - ⊖ Candles: 50
 - ⊖ Tobacco: 200
- **Failure to Pay:** If the Annual Upkeep is not consumed, the College will lie fallow for the year. It may be restarted the next year with the Annual Upkeep being paid.

Restrictions:

- Colleges may be built for other Clans.
- Other Clans may not utilize Colleges without the Research being completed in their Clan.

Notes:

- The College research topic needs to be completed only once to build all 7 colleges.
- See Below for a list of colleges and their skills:

College of Fine Arts	College of Industrial Arts	College of Agriculture & Mining	College of Liberal Arts
Excavation	Armour	Agriculture	Diplomacy
Jewelry	Bonework	Boning	Horsemanship
Pottery	Fletching	Bushlore	Intelligence
Weaving	Furrier	Curing	Politics
Woodwork	Leatherwork	Dressing	Rowing
Triball	Metalwork	Fishing	Sailing
Archaeology	Salting	Forestry	Seamanship
Art	Sewing	Gutting	Understanding
Cooking	Weapons	Herding	Research
Dance	Shipwright	Hunting	
Glasswork	Slavery	Mining	
Literacy	Baking	Quarrying	
Music	Brickmaking	Skilling	

	Stonework	Firecontrol	Tanning	
		Refining	Apiarism	
		Shipbuilding	Distilling	
			Farming	
			Milling	
			Seeking	
	College of Business	College of Science and Engineering	War College	
	Administration	Apiology	Archery	
	Banking	Architecture	Captaincy	
	Courier	Siege Equipment	Combat	
	Economics	Apothecary	Generalship	
	Garrison	Geology	Field Marshall	
	Mobilization	Healing	Leadership	
	Logistics	Heaving Weapons	Mariner	
	Maintain Boat	Navigation	Scouting	
	Sanitation	Torture	Security	
	Supervision	Alchemy	Siegecraft	
		Astronomy	Spying	
		Engineering	Tactics	
		Veterinary Medicine		
Summary	<i>New Building – College, Boost to DL 0 and Level 10 advancement.</i>			

Name	Golden Age
DL	2
Pre-Req	University (Building) Library (Building) – In same space as University Scroll (Item)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Your tribe begins a Golden Age in art, history, science and culture resulting in a large expenditure of money but through the Golden Age, it will gain much knowledge.</p> <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settled: May only be attempted by a tribe in a village (not a nomadic tribe) • Silver Cost: For the duration of all DL attempts, the Tribe must manually send Silver 300 to usage (1263) each turn. • Gold Cost: Once DL0 is reached, the Tribe must manually send Gold 10 to usage(1263) each turn

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Benefit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Category A Skill: Upon completion of Golden Age research, the Tribe may increase a single Category A skill by 1 Skill Level to a maximum of skill level 8. • Category B Skill: Upon completion of Golden Age research, the Tribe may increase a single Category B skill by 1 Skill Level to a maximum of skill level 8. • Category C Skill: Upon completion of Golden Age research, the Tribe may increase a single Category C skill by 1 Skill Level to a maximum of skill level 8. • Research Topic Boost: Upon completion of Golden Age research, the Tribe may increase two other research topics that are already at or above DL0 by 1 Difficulty Level (DL) but may not complete those Research Topics via Golden Age. <p>Thus, a Golden Age allows a substantial one-off benefit, but no permanent benefits. Only one Tribe per Clan may research Golden Age at a time – but once completed may be researched again.</p> <p>Many ancient and medieval societies enjoyed Golden Ages that were marked by a flowering of the arts & sciences from Athens under Pericles to the Franks under Charlemagne. Historically, almost every Golden Age was supported by large expenditures to encourage the arts & sciences, hence the 300 silver per turn requirement.</p> <p>No Books</p> <p>Upon completion of the Research, the Scroll is destroyed/lost and is sent to Usage (1263) via transfer.</p>
Summary	<i>Complete to get a one time boost to 3 skills and 2 research topics, expensive</i>

Name	Head Librarian
DL	2
Pre-Req	<u>Librarian (Research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>With Head Librarian, a further increase of 10% is added to the Librarian topic (ie effectively a 20% chance becomes a 40% chance).</p> <p>The Head Librarian must be in the same hex as the Library and the unit attempting to read/write a book.</p>

	Head Librarian represents the limit of the Librarian topic.
Summary	<i>Boost to reading/writing books</i>

Name	Improved Teachers I, II, III
DL	Improved Teachers I: 3 Improved Teachers II: 6 Improved Teachers III: 9
Pre-Req	Improved Teachers I: Tribe performing research must be a Scholar tribe. Improved Teachers II: Improved Teachers I (Research research) Improved Teachers III: Improved Teachers II (Research research)
Recipe	1 Study Hall: People 1500, Eng 5, Stn 4, Stone 5k, Log 1k, Parchment 1k, Silver 100k
Leads To:	Improved Teachers I: Improved Teachers II (Research research) Improved Teachers II: Improved Teachers III (Research research) Improved Teachers III: N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Higher Level Teaching: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Each level of Improved Teacher increases the maximum level of Group A skills that can be attempted via “Teachers” rule in the Mandate by +1. ○ Improved Teachers I: Maximum skill level attempted by a Teacher skill advancement attempt is increased to 8. ○ Improved Teachers II: Maximum skill level attempted by a Teacher skill advancement attempt is increased to 9. ○ Improved Teachers III: Maximum skill level attempted by a Teacher skill advancement attempt is increased to 10. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Study Halls: There must be 1 Study Hall in the hex per level of Improved Teachers being used. (If one or more tribes is attempting a level 9 Group A skill via Teacher skill advancement attempts, then 2 Study Halls are required). • Universities: There must be at least 3 Universities (Uni 3) in the hex when any level of Improved Teachers is being used otherwise Tribes are not allowed to Teacher skill advancement attempts higher than skill level 7. • Libraries: There must be at least 10 Libraries (Lib 10) in the hex when any level of Improved Teachers is being used otherwise Tribes are not allowed to Teacher skill advancement attempts higher than skill level 7. • Scholar in Attendance: For a Tribe to use Improved Teachers, the Tribe must be in a village where a Scholar with Improved Teachers skill • Increased Cost: In addition to the normal costs associated with Teacher skill advancement attempts, there are additional costs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Skill Level 8: An additional 3,000 Silver and 100 Parchments are required per advancement attempt. ○ Skill Level 9: An additional 6,000 Silver and 200 Parchments are required per advancement attempt.

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Skill Level 10: An additional 8,000 Silver and 300 Parchments are required per advancement attempt. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Group A Skills Only: There is no rule change regarding what skills a Teacher may teach. A Tribe is still limited to Group A skills. • Study Hall Location: Study Halls may only be built in villages hosting a Scholar tribe. • Multiple Improved Teachers: There is no benefit for multiple Scholars to have Improved Teachers research topic in the same location. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AutoComplete: As Teacher attempts are a Tertiary attempt and not a primary skill attempt, there is no auto-completion of Skill Level 10 after 12 attempts. • Study Halls may be built for other Clans but may not be used by Clans that do not have the appropriate Improved Teachers research.
Summary	<i>Skill Advancement Boost, higher skill levels allowed for Teachers.</i>

Name	Librarian
DL	1
Pre-Req	Researcher (Research research) Library (Building)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Head Librarian (Research research)
Description	<p>The Scholar is now also considered a Librarian and acts as the administrator of the Library to make it run more efficiently. As a result, the bonus of a Library is increased.</p> <p>With Librarian, 10% is added to the chances of reading/writing a book (ie a 20% chance becomes a 30% chance) by any Tribe from the same Clan and in the same hex as the Library and Librarian.</p> <p>The Librarian must be in the same hex as the Library and the unit attempting to read/write a book.</p>
Summary	<i>Boosts to reading / writing books</i>

Name	Research 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Research +1 (example from Research 10 to Research 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Research specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having specialists in this skill at this time. • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Research, Specialists</i>

Name	Research Team
DL	6
Pre-Req	University (Building) Library (Building) – In same space as University Scroll (Item)
Recipe	N/A
Description	<p>Once a Tribe has completed Research Team, it gains the ability to initiate a subsequent research project <u>once its prerequisite topic has reached DL1</u>. For example, the research topic “Steel” has “Coke” as its prerequisite. Normally Coke must be completely researched before any attempt to research Steel can be started. Research Team allows Steel to be attempted once Coke has reached DL1. One topic at a time may be dealt with in this way.</p> <p>Rationale: Research is often done in teams. A “scientist” team focuses upon making new discoveries. An “Engineer” team focuses on turning the new scientific discoveries into something that can be used. Once a discovery is made, the “scientists” go on to attempt a new set of discoveries while the “Engineers” turn the existing discovery into something practical. In game turns, once DL1 is reached, the scientists go on to the next research topic while the Engineers complete the research topic. For example, a Tribe that knows Research Team that also has two (or more) partial topics (For example, Steel DL7/8 and Home Guard DL1/3) could start only ONE new topic early, (e.g. Steel allows Superior Weapons to be started early OR Home Guard allows Army to be started early).</p> <p>Upon completion of the Research, the Scroll is destroyed/lost and is sent to Usage (1263) via transfer.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows commencing advanced research topics before required topics completed</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Researcher
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Scholar (Research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Librarian (Research research)</u>
Description	<p>Can only be researched by Scholar Tribe. On completion of Researcher, the Scholar Tribe can transfer research under the same physical conditions as Scholar. Each transfer, though, requires a scroll to be transferred to usage.</p> <p>Upon completion of the Research, the Scroll is destroyed/lost and is sent to Usage (1263) via transfer.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows a scholar to research other skill topics and transfer those topics to another tribe</i>

Name	Scholar
DL	3, 3, 3, ...
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Researcher (Research research)</u>
Description	<p>Upon completion of Scholar, a new Tribe is formed. This Tribe represents the new Scholar and consists of 1 Active and Research 10 (the Parent Tribe keeps its Res 10 as well). This Tribe may do no activity except Meditation. The Scholar Tribe can move only by using the Follow order (ie it must always be attached to another unit). It may not accept Transfers of Population (without additional research). The Scholar Tribe attempts skills in the same way as any other Tribe.</p> <p>It may, at the end of a turn, transfer any of its skills to another Tribe of the same Clan – not an Element – provided the receiving Tribe has a unit in the same hex as the Scholar. This new skill level replaces the current skill level for that skill in the receiving Tribe. The transfer requires the Scholar to be at a Library or to be in possession of a Scroll. Skills cannot be transferred to the Scholar Tribe.</p> <p>Once a Scholar transfers a skill to another Tribe, that skill is removed from the Scholar's list of known skills. It may learn the skill again but it starts over at skill level 0.</p> <p>The Scholar can attempt research topics in any skill that it has a level 10 for, but cannot transfer the research. It cannot itself research Scholar. It can only use its Research 10 for topics that have Scholar as its prerequisite. It cannot, for example, use Research 10 to build a university or to research Research Teams. The Scholar may not transfer Research 10 skill to another tribe.</p>

	<p>The Scholar research topic may be repeated in the same tribe.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Upon completion of this research, contact the GM to create the extra tribe and to have the research removed so it can be researched additional times. 2. The maximum number of Tribes that a Clan may have is 10. Creation of extra tribes through this research counts against this limit. Be aware that this may restrict your options for International NPC Tribes.
Summary	<i>Gain a specialty Tribe of 1 person that can learn skills and transfer them to other tribes</i>

Name	War College
DL	7
Pre-Req	University (Building) Library (Building) – In same space as University
Recipe	Maintenance: Gold 10 / Year
Leads To	<u>Battlefield Medicine (Healing research)</u>
Description	<p>This research topic is valueless unless <u>the Tribe</u> (WC developed in one Tribe cannot service the whole Clan) has already developed Generalship or Military Orders.</p> <p>A War College represents a deliberate and systematic study of warfare and the training of a tribe's military leadership in how best to conduct warfare. The prerequisite of Generalship insures that the tribe has possesses permanent military leaders that can then benefit from the training provided by a “War College”.</p> <p>Benefits: <u>Generalship</u> – For land battle calculation purposes only:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Leadership = Leadership + Generalship + Generalship (Generalship research) (War College research)</p> <p>Combat = Combat + (Generalship/2) Horsemanship = Horsemanship + (Generalship/2) Tactics = Tactics + (Generalship/2) All other Generalship benefits and restrictions are unchanged</p> <p>Note: Only Tribes, and its sub-units, with the War College research gain the benefits of a War College.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Apply Generalship to most other combat skills.</i>

Rowing

Name	Rowing 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Rowing +1 (example from Rowing 10 to Rowing 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Rowing specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having specialists in this skill at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Rowing, Specialists</i>

Name	Two Hex Ferry
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Once completed, this research topic allows a ferry to operate across two hexes of Ocean and/or Lake. All ferrying rules apply as written, except that it cost 16 MP's per ferry trip (crossing two hexes) rather than 8 MP's per trip (crossing only one hex).
Summary	<i>Ferries may operate over 2 hexes of water instead of just 1.</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Sailing

Name	Expert Sailors
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Professional Sailors (Mariner research)</u>
Description	<p>+3 Seamanship and +3 Navigation skills.</p> <p>Expert sailors does not become active unless you are already at skill 10 of Navigation and 10 of Seamanship. Players need to let me know when they achieve this if they do not have 10's in both at the time the research is completed.</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Seamanship and Navigation</i>

Name	Fast Fleets
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Fast Fleets allows any Fleet (that knows this topic) whose normal sailing MP = 100 MPs or more per turn to move along a TR (Trade Route) at twice the normal TR speed; e.g. at 160 MPs per turn instead of 80.</p> <p>Fleets with high scores in SAIL, SEA and NAV can sail more than 100 MPs per turn. For example, a fleet with Longships (base sailing rate = 40 MP) and skills of 10 in each of SAIL, SEA and NAV, will sail 130 MPs per turn. This means that in many cases it will be faster for such Fast Fleets to sail normally, rather than using a TR.</p> <p>Fast Fleets increases fleet movement along TR (Trade Routes) only, as described below. It does not affect any other sort of movement.</p> <p>Note: A Fleet may only gain movement bonuses from three research topics simultaneously along a Sea Borne Trade Route. Examples include, but are not limited to, Board of Trade, Fast Fleet, Trusted Maps, etc.</p>
Summary	<i>Increases Fleet movement along Sea Borne Trade Routes</i>

Name	Heart of Oak
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Navigation 11 (Navigation research)</u>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	OR Sailing 11 (Sailing research) OR Seamanship 11 (Seamanship research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Fleet with Heart of Oak gains a 1% advantage (Damage done to its opponent is increased) per point of difference when the sum of its Nautical Skills (Nav/Sail/Sea) exceeds the sum of the Nautical Skills of an opposing fleet. For example, a fleet with Nav/Sail/Sea of 10/11/12 versus a fleet with 6/6/6 increases the damage it does to the 6/6/6 fleet by 15% (10+11+12 = 33 vs 6+6+6 = 18).</p> <p>Nautical Skills (Nav/Sail/Sea) now affect Naval Combat, not just Naval Movement. The Royal Navy proved on many occasions, superior Nautical Skills provided decisive advantages in fleet vs fleet combat.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Naval combat damage is increased</i>

Name	Raincatching
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Activity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Gather / Rain: A Tribe or one of its units with Raincatching may use Gather Rain to fill up a portion of its water containers each turn while at sea. ○ Amount Gained: 25% of all container capacity in the fleet is filled with water. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cloth in Inventory: In order to gain the water, a fleet must have 5 Cloth per ship/boat in the fleet. If there is a lack of enough cloth, then the rain is gathered proportionate to the amount of cloth the fleet has versus what is required. • Crew Use: 2 crew members per ship/boat must be used to catch rain and may perform no other work. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weather: This can be done in any weather and weather does not affect the quantity of water gained through Raincatching.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TN Classic: The Player is responsible for calculating the amount of water capacity and transferring it from 1263 to the fleet unit that holds the containers. A Comment will be made explaining what is occurring. • TN 2020: Gather / Rain will be a fully coded activity that a player may use by assigning 2 people per Ship to this activity. The water will be automatically added.
Summary	<i>Ability to gather water during fleet operations without being on land.</i>

Name	Sailing 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Heart of Oak (Navigation research) Heart of Oak (Sailing research) Heart of Oak (Seamanship research)
Description	<p>Allows Specialists. Specialists double production in the chosen field. 1 Specialist Sailor performs the work of 2 when assigned as crew members of a fleet. Players must show assigned Specialists as effective workers.</p> <p>On completion, the tribe gains an additional +3 to Sailing (Sailing 10 becomes Sailing 14 instead of Sailing 11).</p> <p>Sailing Specialists may Fish and Hunt.</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Sailing, allows specialists</i>

Name	Two Hex Ferry
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Once completed, this research topic allows a ferry to operate across two hexes of Ocean and/or Lake. All ferrying rules apply as written, except that it cost 16 MP's per ferry trip (crossing two hexes) rather than 8 MP's per trip (crossing only one hex).</p>
Summary	<i>Ferries may cross two hexes of lake or ocean instead of 1</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Salting

Name	Salting 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Skill Level Bonus:<ul style="list-style-type: none">○ Salting +1 (example from Salting 10 to Salting 11)• Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Salting specialists. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Specialists: There are no benefits to having specialists in this skill at this time.• There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Salting, Specialists</i>

Name	Salt Panning
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	The effect is to create a Salt mine in any one Prairie hex that the Clan chooses. This cannot be an existing Village site nor can Villages be built in this site.
Summary	<i>Clan may turn a nearby Prairie hex into a Prairie hex with a salt mine</i>

Sanitation

Name	BioWar													
DL	8													
Pre-Req	N/A													
Recipe	N/A													
Leads To	N/A													
Description	<p>BioWar allows a force that's besieging an enemy village to hurl diseased carcasses, rotten offal and the like into the village under siege. A high Sanitation skill is needed by the besieger in order to handle such diseased material safely without infecting itself.</p> <p>Each turn that a village is under siege by a force that knows BioWar, there is a chance that the Village's SAN rating is reduced.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Village Information</th><th>Chance</th><th>Effect</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Palisade</td><td>66%</td><td>Village's SAN rating reduced by 1.</td></tr> <tr> <td>10' or 15' Stone Walls</td><td>50%</td><td>Village's SAN rating reduced by 1.</td></tr> <tr> <td>20' or 25' Stone Walls</td><td>33%</td><td>Village's SAN Rating reduced by 1</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When a Village under Siege has its SAN rating reduced to BELOW zero (-1 or lower), it loses the ability to produce new potable water within its walls. This means that all wells are considered polluted and thus cease to produce potable water.</p> <p>However, a jetty into a source of fresh water (Lake or River) is NOT affected by BioWar. Existing water supplies (cisterns, containers, etc) are not affected. The existing supplies (and Fresh water Jetties) allow resistance to continue. However, if and when they are exhausted, the Village under siege surrenders.</p> <p>If and when a siege is broken, the Village's SAN rating immediately returns to full normal value (e.g. equivalent to its full, unreduced SAN skill).</p>		Village Information	Chance	Effect	Palisade	66%	Village's SAN rating reduced by 1.	10' or 15' Stone Walls	50%	Village's SAN rating reduced by 1.	20' or 25' Stone Walls	33%	Village's SAN Rating reduced by 1
Village Information	Chance	Effect												
Palisade	66%	Village's SAN rating reduced by 1.												
10' or 15' Stone Walls	50%	Village's SAN rating reduced by 1.												
20' or 25' Stone Walls	33%	Village's SAN Rating reduced by 1												
Summary	<i>Slowly reduce target siege victim's Sanitation rating forcing a surrender</i>													

Name	Camp Sanitation
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Any active or warrior or slave within the tribe (or any of its element) may serve as

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	sanitation workers for other tribes/elements of the Clan in the same hex. Assuming that 3999 knows Camp Sanitation, this is ordered:				
	Activity	Commodity	Quantity	People	Note
	Sanitation	Sanitation Worker	-	xxx	0999, 1999e1 and 2999
	Notes identifies the other tribes/elements being supported. Xxx identifies the number of sanitation workers which must equal 0.5% of the total population of the tribes/elements/fleets being supported. Note that neither the supporting tribe (element) or the tribes/villages/elements/garrisons being supported are allowed to move and that all involved must be in the same hex. All involved must belong to the same clan.				
	Benefit: The supported tribes/elements, for all intents and purposes, have the same Sanitation skill as the Tribe supplying the sanitation workers (useful when under Siege). Supported tribes also benefit from sanitation research topics known by the supporting Tribe. This does not effect population growth. Players need to indicate if changes occur as a result of completing the research.				
Summary	All units of the Clan share the same Sanitation as this Tribe				

Name	Cleanliness
DL	5
Pre-Req	Healing 10 (Group B Skill) Sanitation 10 (Group C skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Improves population growth (0.5%) in all units from the Tribe with this research.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Increased Population Growth: A Tribe, and its units, with the Cleanliness research topic gain an improved population growth equal to 0.5%, similar to Hospital, Medicine 1 and Sewers. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Boosts population growth</i>

Name	Sanitation 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Sanitation +1 (example from Sanitation 10 to Sanitation 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Sanitation specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Sanitation, Specialists</i>

Name	Sewers
DL	8
Pre-Req	Sanitation 6 (Group C skill) Eng 10 (Group C skill) Home City established University (Building)
Recipe	Sewers: People 1250, Eng 9, San 6, Stn 8, Stones 5000, Logs 500
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Engineering / Stonework activity</p> <p>Sewer Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2) Water Access: Note: Sewers may only be built at sites adjacent to water (River, Lake, Ocean) or Swamps. <p>Benefits: Sewers serve all Tribes of one clan in the site.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3) Siege Protection: Sanitation skill is increased by 4 during Sieges. This does not allow Specialists (that would require Sanitation 11 research). 4) Population Boost: Improves Population growth (0.5%) similar to Hospital. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Sewers may not be built in Autosheet and must be built using the GM Comments and the Player must transfer the material to usage (1263) when building a Sewer. <p>Sewers may be built for other Clans but they require the Sewers research to utilize.</p>

Summary	New Building - Sewers, Increases population gain		
Name	Siege Sanitation		
DL	6		
Pre-Req	N/A		
Recipe	N/A		
Leads To	N/A		
Description	Siege Sanitation counters BioWar by modifying the Effect Table as shown below:		
	Village Information	Chance	Effect
	Palisade	17%	Village's SAN rating reduced by 1.
	10' or 15' Stone Walls		
	20' or 25' Stone Walls	8%	Village's SAN rating reduced by 1.
	30' or higher Stone Walls	0%	Village is immune to BioWar
Summary	Counters BioWar		

Scouting

Name	Expanded Scouting
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Allows a Tribe to employ 16 Scouting Parties if and only if 12 of these parties use the same scouting orders as last turn and these orders are marked in red as required. The four scouting parties that can be changed from turn to turn must all come from <u>one single</u> unit of the Tribe. The remaining 12 scouting parties that must remain the same must come from two other different units of the tribe.</p> <p>Note there will need to be ONE month a year when the player sets up (or resets) his scouting parties for the rest of the year. On this ONE month, new orders can be issued to all scouting parties.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows 16 Scouting parties in tribe instead of 8.</i>

Name	Extra Movement 1
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Extra Movement 2 (Scouting research)
Description	<p>Scouts may move an extra 2 MV points. May not be used for Locating (that is, units with this research may NOT Locate). Can be used for Raiding.</p> <p>Note: when Elements are created this modifier needs to be added manually – so you will need to let me know.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows scouts to move farther</i>

Name	Extra Movement 2
DL	4
Pre-Req	Extra Movement 1 (Scouting)
Recipe	N/A
Description	<p>Scouts may move an extra 2 MV points (that is, 4 all up). May not be used for Locating (that is, units with this research may NOT Locate). Can be used for Raiding.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows scouts to move even farther</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Ranger 1, 2, 3....
DL	1,2,3
Pre-Req	Ranger I: N/A Ranger II: Ranger 1 (Seeking research) Ranger III: Ranger II (Seeking research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Ranger I: Ranger II (Seeking research) Ranger II: Ranger III (Seeking research) Ranger III: Ranger IV (Ranger research)
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Ranger I: +1 Level to Scouting (ex. Sct 10 to Sct 11) ○ Ranger II: +3 Level to Scouting (ex. Sct 11 to Sct 14) ○ Ranger III: +5 Level to Scouting (ex. Sct 14 to Sct 19) • New Skill – Ranger (Group C): Once Ranger 1 research topic has been completed, the Tribe may learn a new skill called Ranger. It is a Group C skill. Ranger skill is purely a skill to access Ranger research topics Ranger 4 and beyond. Requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ranger 4,5,6... research topics: Once Ranger Skill Level 10 is reached, the Tribe may research Ranger 4 and higher. Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Scouting, New Skill: Ranger (Group C)</i>

Name	Scout Post
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Scout Post: People 2k, Eng 6, Sct 6, Stn 6, Stone:10k, Cloth:100, Lamp:6 Upkeep: Yearly / 8 Oil + 8 Cotton
Leads To	N/A
Description	A Scout Post is a building that provides additional support to scouting groups and command chains that are part of a garrisoned unit. This research provides the Tribe that holds the research the ability to build Scout Posts in villages that have at least one garrison from the Clan. One garrisoned unit in that village gains the ability to operate additional scouting groups that may not be changed each month. Benefit:

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>One Garrison at the village with the Scout Post, from the same Clan, gains 8 additional scout groups which may Patrol or Locate. These Scout Groups do not count towards the standard limit of the Tribe.</p> <p>Requirements:</p> <p>A Scout Post must be built in a village that is occupied by a Garrison of the same Clan.</p> <p>A Scout Post requires a yearly upkeep of 8 Oil and 8 Cotton</p> <p>The 8 bonus Scout Groups provided by the Scout Post may only be changed once per in-game Calendar year (813, 814, etc).</p> <p>The Garrison operating the Scout Post needs to have at least Scout 6 skill level.</p> <p>The Garrison unit that gains the extra scout groups may only use those 8 scout groups and not any further from other sources. (It cannot send out 9 or more scout groups).</p> <p>Scout Posts may not be built or operated by other Clans, but may be operated by other Tribes.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Scout Post, Allows Units at a Scout Post to have their own 8 Scout Groups</i>

Name	Scout Veterans
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Scouting +2 (example from Sct 10 to Sct 12) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: This Tribe may not begin to train Scouting based specialists
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Scouting</i>

Name	Scouting 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Scouting +1 (example from Scouting 10 to Scouting 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Scouting specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having specialists in this skill at this time. • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Scouting, Specialists</i>

Name	Site Survey I
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Site Survey II (Scouting research)</u>
Description	<p>A detachment of scouts can identify the best part of the hex in which to build your civilization (the Scouts act on behalf of the Clan*). This allows them to get a very accurate 'feel' for the hex they plan to build fortifications on. Once they have finished researching, they may begin to survey the hex. This would entail measuring the height of hills, digging to find underground rock ledges, etc.</p> <p>Notes:</p> <p>1-this research retrospectively “updates” a fortification already built.</p> <p>2-the bonuses only apply to the Clan with SS research (that is, you cannot build the Fortification for another Clan). It applies to all units in the Clan.</p> <p>3-This bonus applies to villages, Home City and Local Support Settlements that belong to the Clan with the research topic.</p> <p>The net effect is to increase the defensive bonus of the site by 10%.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Fortification Bonus increased by 10% for all Clan villages.</i>

Name	Site Survey II
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Site Survey I (Scouting research)</u> Tactics 4 (Group B skill)
Recipe	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Having used Site Survey I to identify the best part of the hex in which to build your main Village and thoroughly surveyed the hex in question – measuring the height of hills and depths of valleys, digging to find underground rock veins and ledges, etc, - your clan may not study how to use the terrain to defend the hex and others like it.</p> <p>Notes: These bonuses only apply to the Clan with Site Survey research (that is, you cannot build the Fortification for another Clan to gain the benefits).</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Military Morale: When <u>defending</u> the hex with the Home Village/City, all units within the Clan gain +0.03 Military Morale for the duration of that battle. • Terrain Proficiency: The Clan gains +2 Terrain Proficiency for the Terrain Type that the Home Village/City is located.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Morale boost / Terrain Prof when defending Home City</i>

Seamanship

Name	Heart of Oak
DL	5
Pre-Req	Navigation 11 (Navigation research) OR Sailing 11 (Sailing research) OR Seamanship 11 (Seamanship research)
Recipe	N/A
Description	<p>A Fleet with Heart of Oak gains a 1% advantage (Damage done to its opponent is increased) per point of difference when the sum of its Nautical Skills (Nav/Sail/Sea) exceeds the sum of the Nautical Skills of an opposing fleet. For example, a fleet with Nav/Sail/Sea of 10/11/12 versus a fleet with 6/6/6 increases the damage it does to the 6/6/6 fleet by 15% ($10+11+12 = 33$ vs $6+6+6 = 18$).</p> <p>Nautical Skills (Nav/Seail/Sea) now affect Naval Combat, not just Naval Movement. The Royal Navy proved on many occasions, superior Nautical Skills provided decisive advantages in fleet vs fleet combat.</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Increases Naval Combat damage</i>

Name	Seamanship 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Heart of Oak (Navigation research) Heart of Oak (Sailing research) Heart of Oak (Seamanship research)
Description	Raises Seamanship skill to 11.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Seamanship, does not allow specialists</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Seeking

Name	Bush Lore 1, 2, 3....
DL	1,2,3
Pre-Req	Bush Lore I: N/A Bush Lore II: Bush Lore 1 (Seeking research) Bush Lore III: Bush Lore II (Seeking research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Bush Lore I: Bush Lore II (Seeking research) Bush Lore II: Bush Lore III (Seeking research) Bush Lore III: Bush Lore IV (Bush Lore research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Bush Lore I: +1 Level to Seeking (ex. Seek 10 to Seek 11) ○ Bush Lore II: +3 Level to Seeking (ex. Seek 11 to Seek 14) ○ Bush Lore III: +5 Level to Seeking (ex. Seek 14 to Seek 19) • New Skill – Bush Lore (Group C): Once Bush Lore 1 research topic has been completed, the Tribe may learn a new skill called Bush Lore. It is a Group C skill. Bush Lore skill is purely a skill to access Bush Lore research topics Bush Lore 4 and beyond. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bush Lore 4,5,6... research topics: Once Bush Lore Skill Level 10 is reached, the Tribe may research Bush Lore 4 and higher. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	Skill Level Increase – Seeking , <i>New Skill: Bush Lore (Group C)</i>

Name	Elephants
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>This research allows Seeking of Elephants during Spring 01.</p> <p>Players with this research should utilize the Seeking spreadsheet “Rich Seeking A” section for determining Elephants gained through this research topic.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Elephants: equal 60 provs, 6 skins, 12 gut, 12 bones. Requires 2 people to skin, 1 to gut, 1 to bone.</p> <p>They require 50lbs water, 12 fodder when these are required, for example, in siege, desert, snow etc. Elephants: carry 1000 unriden (800 ridden by 1 person – or 3 people may ride with no gear)</p> <p>Uses 10 yards space during siege. 1 herder herds 5.</p> <p>Elephants may carry (one) Ballistae/Wagons. However, a single elephant may carry only one of these items.</p> <p>Note: Elephants may not carry Wagons/Ballistae into terrain not normally accessible to these items.</p> <p>If you run out of provs you will eat any animals in the following order: Goats, Cattle, Horses and Elephants.</p>
Summary	<i>Yearly allows seeking of Elephants</i>

Name	Exotic Seekers
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Exotic Seekers II (Seeking research)
Description	<p>Seekers can be allocated to seek out exotic and unusual goods according to normal Seeking rules.</p> <p>Seekers of the exotic will find some unknown amount of a random exotic good. Players may choose 4 exotic items in addition to normal Seeking. Players need to indicate in their Transfer summary from the Seeking table.</p>
Summary	<i>Seeking Boost - Gain some quantity of 4 exotic items. Work with GM to determine.</i>

Name	Exotic Seekers II, III
DL	<p>Exotic Seekers II: 2</p> <p>Exotic Seekers III: 6</p>
Pre-Req	<p>Exotic Seekers II:</p> <p>Exotic Seekers (Seeking research), Experienced Seekers (Seeking research)</p> <p>Exotic Seekers III: Exotic Seekers II</p>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Exotic Seekers II: Exotic Seekers III (Seeking research)
Description	<p>Seekers can be allocated to seek out exotic and unusual goods according to normal Seeking rules.</p> <p>Increases the number of exotic items that the Clan may find through Seeking. Exotic Seekers II adds +2 (for a total of 6 exotic items) and Exotic Seekers III adds a further +2 (for a total of 8 exotic items).</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Players need to indicate Exotic Seeker finders in their Transfer summary from the Seeking table.
Summary	<i>Seeking Boost - Gain more exotic items.</i>

Name	Experienced Seekers
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Exotic Seekers (Seeking research)
Description	Knowing the likely places to look increases Seeking efficiency. Any tribe that is Seeking the same items in the same hex as the previous year and has completed experience Seekers research will get double the seeking return they would normally get. Works before any other Modifiers. Works with Rich Seeking special hexes.
Summary	<i>Seeking Boost - Gain twice what you received last year, this year, if you seek same place</i>

Name	Seek Herbs
DL	*See Healing
Pre-Req	*See Healing
Recipe	*See Healing
Leads To	*See Healing
Description	*See Healing
Summary	<i>Seeking Boost - Allows seeking of more herbs</i>

Name	Seek Population
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	*See Healing
Description	When performing Seeking of Actives, a Tribe with Seek Population gains a number of Inactives equal to the number of Actives gathered through Seeking.
Summary	<i>When you seek and gain Actives, you also gain some Inactives.... At least they breed.</i>

Name	Seeking 11
DL	5

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Seeking +1 (example from Seek 10 to Seek 11) • Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Seeking based specialists <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is little seeking based tasks that would require Specialists. Seeker specialists would only be usable once per year.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Seeking, Specialists</i>

Security

Name	Bodyguards
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Any unit that wants to have bodyguards will have to assign at least 10 Warriors to this duty to gain some protection from assassination attempts. Bodyguards must number at least 10 Warriors in any unit assigned (more may be assigned but only 10 will count). These bodyguards will not be available for normal combat but must have the same equipment as the rest of the unit. Any sort of assassination attempt against a unit with Bodyguards assigned receives a 20% penalty. So a assassination attempt at 50% would be reduced to 40%.</p> <p>Bodyguards can make use of up to at least 10 Guard Dogs (at least 1 each). 10 Bodyguards with 10 Guard Dogs provides a further 20% reduction. That is, 10 Bodyguards with 10 Guard Dogs reduces the attempt by 40%. So an assassination attempt at 50% would be reduced to 30%.</p> <p>One Tribe in the Clan may deploy Bodyguards to other Tribes in the Clan.</p>
Summary	<i>Protects against Assassination.</i>

Name	Fast Response Security I
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Fast Response Security II (Security research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Security Activity Personnel Assignment: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ 10% of assigned Defenders act as Security in addition to Defenders. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Get an automatic Security detail when declaring defense</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Fast Response Security II
DL	5
Pre-Req	Fast Response Security I (Security research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Security Activity Personnel Assignment: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A further 10% of assigned Defenders act as Security in addition to Defenders. Along with Fast Response Security I, 20% of assigned Defenders will act as Security in addition to Defence. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Get more security detail when declaring defense</i>

Name	Fast Response Suppressors
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Security Activity Personnel Assignment: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ 50% of population assigned to Suppression activities may participate in Combat, offensive or defensive. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Some of your Suppressors can assist in combat.</i>

Name	Security 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Leads To:	Security Patrol (Security research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Security +1 (example from Sec 10 to Sec 11) • Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Security based specialists <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Security, Specialists</i>

Name	Security Patrol
DL	5
Pre-Req	Security 11 (Security research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Temporary Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Security +2 (example from Sec 11 to Sec 13) ○ Security is only an effective +2 during Security Operations and has no effect on suppression or any other activity. • Effectiveness: Security Specialists count as an extra individual when performing security activities with the research Security Patrols completed. Normally, 1 Security Specialist counts as 2 Warriors assigned to Security. With Security Patrol, 1 Security Specialist costs as 3 Warriors assigned to Security. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists Only: Only Security Specialists assigned to Security activities gain the Security Patrol bonus. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Units are able to plan and execute unscheduled Security Patrols using Security Specialists • Security Patrols work well when guarding a specific site (such as a village). But large areas, such as an entire hex, cannot be covered by security patrols, hence the exclusion of suppression.
Summary	<i>Security Boost, Your security forces count double and are a bit more skilled.</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Sewing

Name	Brocade
DL	5
Pre-Req	Sewing 10 (Skill)
Recipe	10 Brocade: People 2, Wv 4, Sew 10, Silk 10, Cotton 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Brocade may be sold for Gold (and other valuable commodities) at NPC towns (not at Fair). 2 people using 10 Silk and 100 Cotton produce 10 Brocade (which will sell for around 5 Gold). Only 2 people per Tribe with Sew10 may produce Brocade each month. The development of the Loom will improve efficiency markedly.</p> <p>Weight: 10lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Brocade, Sell it at fair....for gold.</i>

Name	Command Tent
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Command Tent: People 10, Sew 10, Cloth 10, Log 2, Iron 1, Coal 5, Silk 2
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Command Tents are designated locations for leaders to plan out and command in the lead up to battles and also during large scale battles. The use of Command Tents can increase Leadership Modifier and Tactics skill.</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting: Allows crafting (Via Armour activity) of Command Tent. • Leadership Modifier boost: All participants on the side using Command Tent gain a +1 to Leadership Modifier. • Tactics Skill boost: If a unit participating in the Combat has the Command Tent research topic completed, then all participants on their side gain +2 to Tactics skill for the duration of the combat. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sufficient Command Tents: 1 Command Tent is required for every 100 Warriors participating in the Combat. Bonuses from Command Tents is reduced proportionately if fewer Command Tents are available. • Spoils: If a unit utilizing Command Tents is routed and the Enemy is not, then when calculating Spoils, 100% of Command Tents utilized are captured by the Enemy. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Other Clans/Tribes: Any unit / tribe / clan may utilize Command Tents but the Tactics Skill boost bonus only applies if one of the participating units has the Command Tent research topic. • Weight: 200 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item – Command Tent – Temporary Ldr and Tac skill increase in Combat.</i>

Name	Medicine Tent
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Medicine Tent: People 3, Sew 7, Cloth 5, Log 2, Iron 1, Coal 5
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Medical Tents are part of the Battlefield Support roles' equipment. They are large tents where trained and untrained healers may work despite the chaos outside or inclement weather.</p> <p>Requirements: One Medic Tent is required per 100 Warriors participating in a battle. If there are not enough tents, then no bonus is provided.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Healing Skill: Adequate Medic Tents provides a +2 to the averaged Healing skill value for this combat. 2. Battlefield Medicine: Additionally, if the Tribe using the Medical Tent has Battlefield Medicine, then a further +2 to the averaged Healing skill value is provided for this combat. 3. Barber Surgeons: Increases the Inactives gained by 5%. <p>Notes: Medical Tents may be used without the Medical Tent research topic but it only provides the +2 to the averaged healing skill.</p> <p>Weight: 100 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - New Item - Medical Tent, Bonus to Healing and Barber Surgeons</i>

Name	Sewing 11
-------------	------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Sewing +1 (example from Sewing 10 to Sewing 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Sewing specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Sewing, Specialists</i>

Shipbuilding

Name	Barge Poles
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Barge Pole: People 4, Wd 6, Mtl 4, Logs 1, Iron 10, Bones 10
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Barge Poles are highly decorative but functional poles used by barge-hands (Barges) to move through swamp as if it were water.</p> <p><u>A Barge with one Barge Pole per Crewmember</u> may treat a Swamp hex as Lake and Swamp hex sides as River for the purposes of barge movement (ferrying) and Special Barge Movement. Each hex of Swamp counts as 2 lake hexes for movement costs and each Swamp hexside counts as 2 river hexsides.</p> <p>Barge Poles have no effect on non-barge ship movement.</p> <p>Weight: 20 lbs each</p> <p><i>The bone decorated poles help to ward off the evil spirits that congregate around the swamps while the barges traverse the fetid waters.</i></p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Barge Poles, Allows special barge movement through swamp hexsides</i>

Name	Felucca Class I, Felucca Class II
DL	6, 2
Pre-Req	Felucca Class I: N/A Felucca Class II: Felucca Class I (Shipbuilding Research)
Recipe	1 Felucca I: People 215, ShB8, Wdw8, Mtl6, Logs 250, Brass 75, Coal 300, Sheath 200, Leather 50, Rope 15, Cloth 40, Oars
Leads To	Felucca Class I: Felucca Class II (Shipbuilding Research) Felucca Class II: Feluccas Class II (Shipbuilding Research)
Description	<p>A faster version of the Longship - 58MV (Sail), 54MV (Row). Weight 18000, No ram.</p> <p>Skill Modifiers: Sail: Nav 3, Sea 2, Sail 4 Row: Nav 1, Sea 1, Row 2</p> <p>Sail: Crew 10 (8+2) Row: Crew 34 (32+2) Maximum people 40</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Base Cargo Space: 7,500 MEF 6 Damage points: Hull 30, Sails 25 Defense points: 32 Cannot carry Catapults, but may carry Ballistae</p> <p>Movement bonus only applicable for fleets composed entirely of Felucca.</p> <p>Once Felucca Class I is researched, Felucca Class II may be researched. Felucca Class II increases Felucca speed to Base 66MV (Sail) and 62 MV (Row).</p>
Summary	<i>New Ship - Felucca, they're like Longships but faster and sleeker</i>

Name	Felucca Class III, Felucca Class IV
DL	Felucca Class III: 3 Felucca Class IV: 4
Pre-Req	Felucca Class III: Felucca Class II (Shipbuilding Research) Felucca Class IV: Felucca Class III (Shipbuilding Research)
Recipe	<p>1 Felucca Class III: People 215, ShB 8, Wdw 8, Mtl 6, Logs 150, Brass 75, Coal 300, Sheath 200, Leather 50, Rope 15, Cloth 40, Oak 100</p> <p>1 Felucca Class III: People 215, ShB 8, Wdw 8, Mtl 6, Logs 150, Brass 75, Coal 300, Sheath 200, Leather 50, Rope 15, Cloth 40, Mahogany 100</p> <p>1 Felucca Class IV: People 215, ShB 8, Wdw 8, Mtl 6, Logs 150, Brass 75, Coal 300, Sheath 200, Leather 50, Rope 15, Cloth 40, Oak 100</p> <p>1 Felucca Class IV: People 215, ShB 8, Wdw 8, Mtl 6, Logs 150, Brass 75, Coal 300, Sheath 200, Leather 50, Rope 15, Cloth 40, Mahogany 100</p>
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A faster version of the Longship.</p> <p>Once Felucca Class II is researched, Felucca Class III may be researched. Felucca Class III increases Felucca speed to Base 74 MV (Sail) and 70 MV (Row) Damage Points: Hull 35, Sails 30 Defense points: 36 Crew 10 (7+3), Maximum people 45 Base Cargo Space: 8,000 Weight 16000, No ram.</p> <p>Cannot carry Catapults, but may carry Ballistae</p> <p>Once Felucca Class III is researched, Felucca Class IV may be researched. Felucca Class IV increases Felucca speed to Base 82 MV (Sail) and 78 MV (Row) Damage Points: Hull 40, Sails 32</p>

	Defense points: 40 Crew 12 (9+3), Maximum people 50 Base Cargo Space: 9,500 Weight 15000, No ram. Skill Modifiers: Sail: Nav 3, Sea 2, Sail 4 Row: Nav 1, Sea 1, Row 2 Cannot carry Catapults, but <u>may carry Ballistae</u>
Summary	<i>New Ships – Felucca Class III and Class IV, they're like even faster and sleeker</i>

Name	Frigate														
DL	8														
Pre-Req	N/A														
Recipe	1 Frigate: People 243, ShB10, Wdw9, Mtl 9, Logs 850, Brass 175, Coal, 900, Sheath 600, Leather 250, Rope 100, Cloth 150, Coin 500, Oak 50														
Leads To	N/A														
Description															
	ShipB	Wd	Mtl	Logs	Brass	Coal	Sheath		Leather	Cloth	Rope	O/P	Oak	Coin	
	10	9	9	850	175	900	600		250	150	100	N/A	50	500	
	Sail Movement						Row Movement								
	Vessel Type	MP	Nav	Sea	Sail	Crew	MP	Nav	Sea	Row	Crew	MEF	Sail	Hull	Max People
	Frigate	50	1	1	1	40+ 10	-	-	-	-	-	4	16	16	125
	Defense Points: 160														
	Cargo: 25,000														
	Combat:														
	1) Allows up to 12 Naval Cannons, of any type, to be deployed.														
Notes:															
1) Requires Jetty to Dock															
2) No Oars or Paddles are required as now Row movement allowed															
Summary	New Ship – Frigate, Master of the Sea														

Name	Shipbreaking I, II, III
-------------	--------------------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	2, 3, 4
Pre-Req	Shipbreaking I: N/A Shipbreaking II: Shipbreaking I (Shipbuilding research) Shipbreaking III: Shipbreaking II (Shipbuilding research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	Shipbreaking I: Shipbreaking II (Shipbuilding research) Shipbreaking II: Shipbreaking III (Shipbuilding research) Shipbreaking III: N/A
Description	<p>Shipbreaking allows for the conversion of ships into raw materials. This provides a means for a tribe to covert unused or unnecessary ships into raw materials for use in other projects. One example use of this would be for a fleet unit to reach a destination, convert to a standard unit, and then process the ship(s) into raw materials. This does not apply to oars and paddles.</p> <p>Some of the raw materials will be lost as scrap in the shipbreaking process. Any ship that is converted to raw materials will receive the following percentages (rounded down to the nearest whole number) based on the level of Shipbreaking:</p> <p>Shipbreaking I: Logs 75%, Metals 90%, Rope/Cloth/Leather 20%, Coal 0%</p> <p>Shipbreaking II: Logs 85%, Metals 95%, Rope/Cloth/Leather 25%, Coal 0%</p> <p>Shipbreaking III: Logs 95%, Metals 100%, Rope/Cloth/Leather 30%, Coal 0%</p> <p>Please consult Section 16: Ship Construction of the Mandate to review the raw materials per ship type. Coal used in the shipbuilding process is not recoverable. Sheathing will convert back to equal parts copper and lead to reduce the complexities of keeping track of the metal originally used for sheathing.</p> <p>Raw materials received from shipbreaking must be listed as transfers from 2263 in Transfer Orders to your unit on the turn you are breaking the ships, the ships being broken down with shipbreaking must be listed as transfers to 2263, and you must include a message to the GM as to which ships in which units are being broken on that turn.</p>
Summary	<i>Allows reducing ships back down to their components.</i>

Name	Shipbuilding 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Shipbuilding +1 (example from Shipbuilding 10 to Shipbuilding 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Shipbuilding specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having specialists in this skill at this time. Shipwright Specialists are the specialists used to actually build boats. • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Shipbuilding, Specialists</i>

Name	Trawler
DL	See Fishing
Pre-Req	See Fishing
Recipe	See Fishing
Leads To	See Fishing
Description	See Fishing
Summary	<i>New Ship - Trawler, trawlers increase the effective fishers.</i>

Name	Whaler														
DL	6														
Pre-Req	N/A														
Recipe	1 Whaler: People 160, ShB9, Wdw8, Mtl8, Logs 160, Brass 40, Coal 200, Sheath 150, Silver 3000, Leather 40, Cloth 20, Rope 50, Oars, Cauldrons 2, Longboats 6 minimum (11 maximum), Oars 6 per longboat, Spear/spetum 3 per longboat minimum														
Leads To	N/A														
Description	Increases size of catch (but not the chances). Allows processing of whales at sea based on 2 cauldrons and the peeling, flensing and blubbering skills of the tribe crewing the vessel.														
	ShipB	Wd	Mtl	Logs	Brass	Coal	Sheath	Silver	Leather	Cloth	Rope	O/P Cauldron Longboat			
	9	8	5	160	40	200	150	3000	40	20	50	Oars 30/Cauld 2/LB 6+			
	Sail Movement							Row Movement							
	Vessel	MP	Nav	Sea	Sail	Crew	MP	Nav	Sea	Row	Crew	MEF	Sail	Hull	Max

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Type														People	
Whaler	25	3	2	4	10+7	15	.5	.5	2	20+7	4	16	16	60	
<p>Defense Points: 16 Cargo: 40,000 Weight: 20,000</p> <p>A Whaler can process two whales in a turn for flensing/peeling and for blubberwork concurrently.</p> <p>A “Whaler” is a specialized vessel that sends out whaleboats (substitute longboats here) with 6 Warriors with ropes. They ride along until the leviathan is exhausted and dies (a “Nantucket sleigh ride”).</p> <p>A Whaler requires cauldrons (try-pots/tryworks) to render the oil from the whale blubber that the flenser cut into thin strips from the larger chunks peeled from the side of the whale.</p>															
Summary	New Ship - Whaler														

Shipwright

Name	Drydock
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Drydock: People 130, Eng 6, Wdw 10, Logs 250, Iron 50, Coal 200, Rope 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Description: An extension of the Shipyard, a Drydock allows more pulleys and lifts for the workers to utilize making them more effective shipbuilders.</p> <p>Creation: Building a Drydock is an Engineering activity.</p> <p>Benefit: Each worker utilizing a Drydock does the work of 1.5 effective workers (+0.5 EW) for Shipbuilding work. A Drydock may be utilized by up to 100 Workers simultaneously.</p> <p>Examples: 1 Worker, 1 Drydock = 1.5 Effective worker 2 Workers, 1 Drydock = 3 Effective workers 100 Workers, 1 Drydock = 150 Effective workers 200 Workers, 1 Drydock = 250 Effective workers</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Drydock, allows more efficient shipbuilders</i>

Name	Increased Productivity I
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Increased Productivity II (Shipwright research)</u>
Description	<p>3 workers assigned to Shipwright do the work of 4.</p> <p>Note: this research appears as ShipW 25 (pls show as this in your Orders)</p>
Summary	<i>33% increase in shipbuilding effectiveness</i>

Name	Increased Productivity II
DL	6
Pre-Req	<u>Increased Productivity I (Shipwright)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Increased Productivity III (Shipwright research)</u>
Description	2 workers assigned to Shipwright do the work of 4. ShipW 50

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>100% increase in shipbuilding effectiveness</i>
---------	--

Name	Increased Productivity III
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>Increased Productivity II (Shipwright research)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	1 worker assigned to Shipwright do the work of 4. ShipW 75
Summary	<i>300% increase in shipbuilding effectiveness</i>

Name	Shipwright 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Shipwright +1 (example from ShW 10 to ShW 11) • Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Shipwright based specialists <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shipwright Specialists are used in the construction of ships.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Shipwright, Specialists</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Siegecraft

Name	Earthworks
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reduced Casualties: During a Siege or Assault, your besieging troops reduce the potential casualties they suffer from all sources by 10%. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Your troops must be on the side that is currently undertaking a siege of an enemy village in order to receive this bonus. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Bonus: Reduced casualties for your besieging assigned troops.</i>

Name	Fill Moat-Ditch
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fill in Ditch: A Force that is besieging a Village (is successfully enforcing DEVA) may attempt to fill in a Village's ditch and remove its defensive benefits. 5 AM of labor fills in two (2) yards of ditch. Fill in Moat: A Force that is besieging a Village (is successfully enforcing DEVA) may attempt to fill in a Village's moat and remove its defensive benefits. 5 AM of labor fills in one (1) yard of moat. Implements: This activity counts as a digging activity and implements / bonuses that affect digging will be effective. Shovels provide +1 AM to output, Wheelbarrows provide +0.5 AM and so forth for other tools that increase the effectiveness of labour doing Engineering. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Work Force: Any available labor may be used (Warriors, Actives, Hirelings, Slaves, Locals, Auxiliaries, etc) however 25% of the AMs must be provided by

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Warriors (or Mercs). In essence, 1 Warrior is used to prevent three other laborers from running away.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vulnerable: The labor ordered to fill-in the moat / ditch are vulnerable to one full phase of Ranged combat. Run combat as normal but only the ranged phase occurs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ All other factors involved in combat are allowed (Drawbridge, Gatehouse, Barbican, Siegecraft, Soldiers, etc). <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Pre-Combat Activity – Fill in moats/ditches in exchange for taking ranged damage</i>

Name	Siegecraft 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Siegecraft +1 (example from Siegecraft 10 to Siegecraft 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Siegecraft specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no benefits to having specialists in this skill at this time. • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Siegecraft, Specialists</i>

Name	Sweep the Walls
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Limited Assault: A force that is besieging a Village (is successful enforcing DEVA) may order an Assault that consists of only the Ranged phase of combat in an attempt to sweep the walls of defending troops. This is conducted as a normal assault but ends immediately after the ranged phase is completed. No melee combat occurs. • Follow-up Assault: Immediately after the Limited Assault a second Ranged phase occurs in which both sides fire ranged/heavy weapons again. <p>Requirements:</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Defensive Fortifications / Abilities: Defender forces receive the full benefits of his/her defenses, except that the benefits of Moat/Ditch are not factored in as they provide no protection against ranged weapons. All other siege and/or assault factors apply such as AA and AD terrain preferences, Siegecraft, Gatehouse, etc. • Counter Assault: Prior to Sweep the Wall going into effect, the Defender may choose to emerge from behind his/her defenses with some of his forces and fight a Field Battle. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the attacker has completed and is utilizing both Fill Moat-Ditch and Sweep the Walls, the Fill Moat-Ditch may be undertaken during the Follow Up assault (2nd Ranged Phase) to take into account the reduced defenders.
Summary	<i>Pre-Combat Activity – Ranged Combat phase only.</i>

Siege Equipment

Name	Catapult
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Catapult: People 15, Seq6, Log 10, Coal 30, Iron 2, Rope 4
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>6 people to operate. Weigh 1000 lbs. Treated as Wagon in terms of MV restrictions</p> <p>The attacking force can only assign 1 Catapult per 20 yards of fortifications*. Each Catapult uses 5 stones during the combat. The effect is to reduce the defenders defensive factor bonus by 10% at HvyW0 and 20% at HvyW10.</p> <p>(see under Trebuchet for more details)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> only one piece of Siege Equipment may be assigned per 20 yards of wall. <p>Weight: 1000 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Catapult, high power siege equipment</i>

Name	Siege Equipment 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Siege Equipment +1 (example from Siege Equipment 10 to Siege Equipment 11) Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Siege Equipment specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Siege Equipment, Specialists</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Trebuchet
DL	7 5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Trebuchet: People 30, Seq 7, Logs 15, Rope 4, Iron 2, Coal 30, Stones 100, Silver 500
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>10 Warriors to operate. <u>Cannot be moved</u> from hex in which it is built; weigh 3000 lbs.</p> <p>They are a powerful indirect firing siege weapon that do damage to Walls. Each Trebuchet uses 5 stones during the combat. The effect is to reduce the defenders defensive factor bonus by 15% x (1 + HW skill/10) (or part thereof). For example, a 120 yard fortification can have a maximum of 6 Trebuchets assigned and will reduce defensive factor by 20% at HeavyWeapons 10. However, if only 3 Trebuchets are assigned the defensive factor will be reduced by 10%. Only applicable vs walls. Cannot be moved out of hex.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item, Trebuchet, high power siege equipment</i>

Name	Siege Cannon
DL	8
Pre-Req	<u>Blasting Jar(Alchemy)</u> Metalworking 8 (Skill)
Recipe	1 Siege Cannon: People 35, Seq10, Mtl8, Bronze 1250, Coal 7500, Logs 10, Gold 20
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>(*Blasting Powder is a research prerequisite for Siege Cannon, that is, the knowledge to do Siege Cannon requires knowledge of how to make Blasting Power and so Blasting Power research is required by the maker of Siege Cannons.)</p> <p>There are two types of Siege Cannons, Siege Cannon (field) and Naval Siege Cannon (naval). This research topic enables the crafting of Siege Cannon (field) only.</p> <p>The attacking force must assign at least 1 Siege Cannon per 20 yards of fortifications for full effect. Each Cannon uses 5 Cannon Balls during the combat. The effect is to reduce the defenders defensive factor bonus by 20% x (1 + Artillery skill/10) (or part thereof). For example, a 120 yard fortification can have a maximum of 6 Siege Cannon assigned and will reduce defensive factor by 40% at Artillery 10. However, if only 3 Siege Cannon are assigned the defensive factor will be reduced by 20%. Only applicable vs walls. Cannot be moved out of hex.</p> <p>Ammo:</p> <p>1) Blasting Jar (Qty 5): Base defensive factor bonus reduction is 20%</p>

2) Cannon Balls (Qty 5)

Operation Skill:

With completion comes a new skill “Artillery” (which replaces HvyW as the relevant skill). Artillery (Group B), which can be taken by only Tribes with this research topic completed. That is, only a Tribe with the Siege Cannon research may take the Artillery skill. The Artillery skill covers both Field and Naval Siege Cannons.

If the weapon is transferred to another Clan (without Artillery Skill) or in the absence of the Artillery skill, then HvyW10 is required to fire. HWpns10 = Artil0

To Fire:

1 Blasting Jar (or better), Cannon Ball (30 lead). Crew: 10

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cannon>

Weight: 2000 lbs

Summary

New Item - Siege Cannon, highly advanced siege equipment

Skinning

Name	Skinning 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Skinning +1 (example from Skinning 10 to Skinning 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Skinning specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Skinning, Specialists</i>

Name	Slaughter House
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Slaughter House: People 104, Logs 200, Iron 20, Coal 100
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Can be researched under Skinning, Gutting or Boning.</p> <p>A Slaughter House includes fencing, building and tools to increase the number of animals that can be processed by people doing skin/gut/bone. One Slaughter house requires 200 Logs, 20 Iron, 100 Coal.</p> <p>One Slaughter House is required per 100 people using it.</p> <p>People using a Slaughter House can process four times as many animals as usual.</p> <p>You would <u>assign four times as many people</u> (that is, use equivalent people) as are allowed by your levels (though they only count as quarter against your people usage). If all are equipped with Knives then the equivalent workers are eight fold. Skin10, Gut10 and Bon10 <u>are all</u> required to use the SH.</p> <p>Can assign any combination of Skinning, Gutting, Boning, SGB, SG, SB, GB activities they can do within the restrictions of their skill levels.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Slaughter House, Every Skin/Bone/Gut person counts as 4 people.</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Slavery

Name	Armiger
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	Mamluk (Slavery research)
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Army Factor: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Infantry troops (any troop type assigned to Infantry) from Units from a Tribe that has Armiger research completed gains an Army Factor – Offensive Modifier of +0.1. ○ This stacks with Home Guard / Army as appropriate. Army Factor increases the Potential Casualties caused by those troops. +0.1 is equivalent to 5% more damage caused. • Army Factor – Defense: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Infantry troops (any troop type assigned to Infantry) from Units from a Tribe that has Armiger research completed gains an Army Factor - Defense modifier of -0.05. ○ Army Factor - Defense is a modifier that is used to decrease Potential Casualties received. Armiger basically reduces incoming Potential Casualties to the Tribe's Cavalry troops by 5%. <p>Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Bonus: +0.1 Army Factor and -0.05 Army Factor Defense for all Troop Types assigned to Infantry combat assignment.</i>

Name	Mamluk
DL	8
Pre-Req	Armiger (Slavery research) Heraldry in One Tribe in Clan (Art research) Leadership 10 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combat Effectiveness: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Combat Effectiveness – Offensive: Mamluks assigned to the Infantry

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Combat Assignment have a Combat Effectiveness of x2.4 instead of x1.0 that a normal Warrior has. Combat Effectiveness - Offensive modifies the amount of Potential Casualties generated during a phase of Combat. Mamluks only gain this Combat Effectiveness bonus during the Melee phases and only when assigned as Infantry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Combat Effectiveness – Defensive: Mamluks have the standard Combat Effectiveness – Defensive of 1.00. It gains no benefits to resisting Potential Casualties. Combat Effectiveness – Defensive modifies the amount of Potential Casualties applied to this troop type during a phase of Combat. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Training: 1 Jade must be paid to convert 1 Warrior into 1 Mamluk. This may be done on any month of the year. For each Mamluk trained, a Warrior will be removed and a Mamluk added. • Annual Payment: 1 Jade must be paid per year in month 1 per Mamluk in a Unit. This is sent to 1263 via Transfer. If funds are not available, the Mamluk status will lapse for those who are short. Only 2/3rds of Elite Troops that are not paid return to being Warriors. The other 1/3rd of unpaid Elite Troops are lost completely. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activities: Warriors are converted to Mamluks and once converted may do nothing else but be a Mamluks and perform military based activities (such as Defence, Scouting, Security, Pacification, etc). • Fielding in Combat: Only 1/3rd of a unit's Mamluks may be fielded in each Combat. This is separate from the 1/3rd limit of Warriors. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Progress: If you are already in progress of research Mamluk, you may continue to do so even without Armiger being completed or Leadership 10 being completed.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Mamluks are ex-slaves who become exceptional fighters, expensive</i>

Name	Slavery 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Slavery +1 (example from Slavery 10 to Slavery 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Slavery specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Restrictions: N/A Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Slavery, Specialists</i>

Name	Overwork
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Slaves can be overworked, they need a overseer with a Whip per 10 slaves (see Leatherwork).</p> <p>Slaves will be 20% more productive. You need to show the equivalent figure in Orders, and the number of Whips. For example, 120 Slaves (for 100 plus 10 Whips). No deaths result.</p>
Summary	<i>Extra work out of the captives provided you have a whip</i>

Name	Press Gang
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press Gang: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Once per year, you may send out a gang of Scouts to act as ruffians and press into service any locals they run into. ○ Each scout may take one Slave (two with Shackles) up to a maximum of 300 Slaves. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Your scouts go out looking for voluntolds who become your forced labor crews.</i>

Name	Slave Draft
-------------	--------------------

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Human Shields: Allows slaves to be shackled to the walls and forced to act as additional defenders when a village with stone walls of any height is besieged. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Extra Defenders: Slaves up to and including 10% of the defending Warriors (including specialty troop types such as Knights, but not Militia or Guards) may be assigned as additional defenders. • Spoils: If the side utilizing Slave Draft is routed, 100% of the assigned Slaves that survive the battle may be taken as spoils by the winning side. <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shackles: Each Slave requires 2 Shackles or it has no effect on the combat. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Armaments: These slaves may only be armed with a Club and a leather jerkin, otherwise they attack by hand. They may not have upgraded armor or weapons. • Battle Types: Slave Draft only works when defending walls and may not fight in any other sort of combat besides defending the walls against siege or an assault. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Combat Boost – Extra defenders in the way of indentured shields for your walls.</i>

Spying

Name	Avoid Security
DL	5
Pre-Req	Scouting 10 (Skill) Spying 10 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Once this research is completed, scouts sent out by this Tribe (or its Elements/Fleets) gain an advantage in avoiding detection by any/all security/suppression orders given by other Clans. The Scouting & Security skill of the other clans is REDUCED by half (rounded up) of the Spy skill of the scouts' Tribe.</p> <p>For example, Tribe 9933 (with Sct=10 and Spy=10) knows Avoid Security and sends out scouts that enter a hex being suppressed by security forces from Tribe 8222. Tribe 8222 has Sct8 and Sec9. However, Avoid Security means that 8222's SCT=8 is reduced to 4 and its SEC=9 is reduced to 5, when 8222's Suppressors attempts to detect 9933's scouts.</p> <p>Rationale A Tribe that has mastered both SCT and SPY skills should be able to use its spying capabilities to enhance its scouting. Spies know how to act like local yokels, wandering minstrels, or other "innocents". This research is the training of the Tribe's warrior scouts with the spy's ability to act like an "innocent".</p> <p>Proposed by Steve Simmons</p>
Summary	<i>Helps your spies avoid the target's security forces.</i>

Name	Cross Training
DL	5
Pre-Req	Security 10 (Skill), Spy 10 (Skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A Tribe must possess both Sec=10 and Spy=10 skills before it is allowed to attempt this research. Once this research is completed, the tribe's Sec skill is raised by one-third of its current Spy skill and its Spy skill is also raised by one-third of its Sec skill (rounded normally). This research has no other effect beyond this ONE OFF boost of a tribe's Sec and Spy skills.</p> <p>For example, Tribe 5583 (with Sec=10 and Spy=10) completes Cross Training. Its Sec</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>skill is set to 13 and its Spy skill is also set to 13.</p> <p>Rationale – Spies that have also mastered SECURITY are better spies as they fully understand security and thus how to avoid the security forces of other tribes. Similarly, Security forces that have mastered SPYING know the tricks spies use and can counter them.</p> <p><i>Proposed by Steve Simmons</i></p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Your Spies and Security force both get increased based on the other</i>

Name	Identify Home City
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Should your attempt be successful your Scouts (that is, Spies) will tell you whether the target has a Home City in the hex in question.
Summary	<i>You can figure out if the village in the hex is a Home City</i>

Name	Identify Militia
DL	4
Pre-Req	Identify Home City (Spying)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Identify Militia allows you to roughly determine the number of Militia available to a particular Home City. This is achieved by means of a Scouting party entering the HC hex with orders to “Identify Militia”. The Scouting party gathers no other information and is not subject to any Suppression operating in the hex.
Summary	<i>You can figure out how large the Home City's militia is without a spying action.</i>

Name	Infiltration
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Allows an Assaulting (attacking) force to recruit locals “get behind enemy lines” thus reducing the effectiveness of defensive fortifications by 5%. It costs 10 Gold each time it is deployed.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Reduce enemy's fortification value by paying off a guard.</i>
Name	Kidnap
DL	6
Pre-Req	Spying 11 (Spying research) Spy Data 1 (Spying research)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New Scouting Mission / Operation: Kidnapping: This functions mechanically like Assassination except that the target person is not killed but instead is captured (and becomes a slave). A Kidnap attempt must penetrate both the target's Suppression and Security and the target gains full benefit of any Bodyguards, Guard Dogs, or other anti-assassination or anti-kidnapping protections. • A single can dispatch 8 scouting parties and each party can attempt a Kidnap mission, so it is possible for a total of eight successful kidnaps to occur. Each scouting group takes up 1 scouting group for the Tribe as normal. • Torture: Once a target has been Kidnapped. The Unit must succeed on a Torture test. The unit operates at a +4 to skill Level for the Torture skill. The Torture test must be made for each question asked. See Spy Data 1 below. • Number of Questions: The Unit may attempt to ask 2 separate questions similar to Spy Data 1. • Spy Data 1: Once the Kidnapping is successful and if a Torture test is successful, the Clan may utilize Spy Data I research once against the Unit (for questions related to the people, equipment, etc) or Tribe (not Clan) (for questions related to skills, research, etc) that the kidnapped target came from. All rules for Spy Data I are otherwise valid. • Target Information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Successful Kidnapping: The target of the Kidnapping gains the following information "One Active has disappeared from Unit X without a trace". No other information is provided. ○ Failed Kidnapping: The target of the Kidnapping gains the kidnappers as they are captured by the target's Suppression / Security forces like normal. ○ A roll within 5% of a failed attempt will gain info such as "Locals have seen some suspicious activity around your Village" and no Inactives will be taken. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>

	Notes: N/A.
Summary	<i>Reduce enemy's fortification value by paying off a guard.</i>

Name	OIA Defence (Organized Intelligence Analysis in Defence)
DL	5
Pre-Req	Spy Catchers (Spying research) Research 10 (Group C skill)
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Counter-Espionage Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The Chance of a spying action against a unit with this research is reduced by three times the Tribe's Spying skill. This enhances (and replaces) the bonus from Spy Catchers. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Target: This bonus only affects units belonging to the Tribe with this research. It does not affect units belonging to other Tribes in the same hex. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Intelligence Agency research has not yet been added and thus the pre-req for Spy Catchers cannot be met. Until Intelligence Agency is added, this research topic is included for informational purposes only.
Summary	<i>Reduced chance of enemy's spy actions against a Tribal target.</i>

Name	Spy Catchers
DL	4
Pre-Req	Intelligence Agency (Spying research) *Not yet fully approved
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Counter-Espionage Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ The Chance of a spying action against a unit with this research is reduced by twice the Tribe's Spying skill. <p>Requirements: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Target: This bonus only affects units belonging to the Tribe with this research. It does not affect units belonging to other Tribes in the same hex. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Intelligence Agency research has not yet been added and thus the pre-req for Spy Catchers cannot be met. Until Intelligence Agency is added, this research topic is included for informational purposes only.
Summary	<i>Reduced chance of enemy's spy actions against a Tribal target.</i>

Name	Spying 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Kidnap (Spying research)</u>
Description	<p>Allows Spying Specialists to be trained in three months (same as any other specialist). They are restricted to performing scouting missions only. No other sort of activities may be performed. They cannot be transferred outside of the tribe (or its units) that developed SPY 11.</p> <p>A Scouting Party consisting solely of Spying Specialists gets a 25% bonus in evading detection by any/all opposing Suppression/Security/Bodyguard/etc. forces whenever they are performing a scouting mission of any/all types (Patrol, Spy, Locate, Assassinate, etc.)</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Spying, allows specialists</i>

Name	Spy Data I
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>Kidnap (Spying research)</u>
Description	<p>In addition to the data normally gathered by spying (numbers of warriors assigned to defense, security, suppression) <u>two</u> additional pieces of data may be gathered (to within 10% accuracy where this is relevant). The player must specify each of these three additional pieces when the spying is ordered and he/she will receive this additional if and only if the spying mission succeeds (e.g. is not spotted by any suppression or security forces). These two additional pieces of data can be anything that can be easily answered by the GM. For example:</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>What fortifications does Unit 1789 possess? What is the population of Unit 1789? What is the Eng Skill of Unit 1789?</p> <p>And the answers could be:</p> <p>Ditch 1,500; Wooden Palisade 1,500; Wooden Towers 4 2,173 8</p> <p>Please note that additional data gathered through Spy Data I applies to one and only one target and this target UNIT (not entire Clan nor an entire Tribe) is the only UNIT for which the additional data is report. Specifying a Target = 1789, means the additional data is provided for UNIT 1789, but Unit 1789e1 (even if in the same hex), would NOT be reported on. My intent is not to force you to add up the population of every unit with an entire tribe or clan, but rather to focus solely upon ONE, SINGLE UNIT.</p>
Summary	<i>Spies get more data</i>

Stonework

Name	Chisel
DL	*See Metalwork
Pre-Req	*See Metalwork
Recipe	*See Metalwork
Leads To	*See Metalwork
Description	*See Metalwork
Summary	<i>New Item - Chisel, increases output of quarrying and stonework</i>

Name	Island Fortress
DL	9
Pre-Req	Government Level 2 (Politics research) Castle (Politics research) Engineering 10 (Skill) Stonework 10 (Skill)
Recipe	<p>Island Fortress 10':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 600k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 3M, Relic 1, Watch Towers 18 <p>Upgrade to Island Fortress 15':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 900k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 4.5M, Relic 1 <p>Upgrade to Island Fortress 20':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 1200k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 6M, Relic 1 <p>Upgrade to Island Fortress 25':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 1500k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 7.5M, Relic 1 <p>Upgrade to Island Fortress 30':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People 1800k, Eng 10, Stn 10, Stone 9M, Relic 1 <p>Additionally, the Island Fortress requires at least a single Gatehouse.</p> <p>*Calculations: 10' is 0.5M per hexside, 15' is a further 0.75M per hexside, 20' is a further 1M per hexside, 25' is a further 1.25M per hexside and 30' is a further 1.5M per hexside.</p>
Description	<p>An Island Fortress may only be constructed in a single Hex that is surrounded on all sides by water, including Ocean, Lake or River. Additionally, the Hex must contain a Home City and Castle. Additional defenses may be built per standard wall rules (higher walls, crenellations, towers, gate houses, etc) but these must be built separately from such defenses held by the City itself. In addition, to get the same effect, the defenses must be built six times (one per Hex Side).</p> <p>Upon completion, the Island Fortress is completed. A wall of the appropriate size loops around the entire island.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Benefits:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Free Range Herding: A single Tribe or Unit in the Island Fortress has its Locals (Auxiliaries) set to 75% of the number needed to herd the current Herd held by that Unit or its Goods Tribe on Turn 1 of each year. This Unit may have no other Locals (Auxiliaries). Locals provide 75% of the herding requirements as payment for the protection the Island Fortress offers. 7. Clan gains 60 Gold and 20 ‘Lots’ of a Desired Commodity immediately and once per year from then on out. (A Lot is the number listed in the Commodities section of the Mandate). 8. Seeking: Effective Seeking Skill is +5 for units seeking inside the Island Fortress 9. Blockade: Units that are untraced with the Clan may not enter the territory inside the Island Fortress without assault or sieging the island itself as if it were a fortified village. 10. Combat: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. The Island Fortress’ first line of defense is on the beach forcing the attacking force to make an amphibious landing within range of the defending archers. +4 to Terrain Proficiency when defending the site. 8. Standard Fortification and Siege rules apply except that the City may perform all activities (such as farming, hunting, etc). 9. Siege Equipment: Only ship mounted Siege Equipment may be brought against the Island Fortress unless the siege Engine is brought onto land within range of archers. Personnel assigned to man siege equipment in such situations suffer triple potential casualties. 10. Siege Resilience: Only research level Siege equipment may have an effect against the Island Fortress. Additionally, siege equipment has only half the effect against the Island Fortress walls. 11. Local Militia: Any combat conducted in defense of the Island Fortress gains 20% additional Militia. 12. Outer Wall: The Island Fortress’ outer wall may be abandoned and defense setup in normal village/city walls. <p>Note: Multi-hex islands would require Island Fortress Expanded I research at DL2 and would allow an Island Fortress up to 7 hexes. Island Fortress Expanded II research at DL 2 (requires Expanded I) would allow an Island Fortress up to 19 hexes. Expanded III would allow up to 37 hexes. Expanded IV would allow up to 61 hexes. Finally, the largest Island Fortress would be Expanded V and would allow up to 91 hexes. Anything further falls under Great Wall research topic.</p> <p>The Island Fortress may be built for other Clans but that Clan must have a Home City and a Castle in that hex.</p>
--	---

Name	Marble Statue
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	12 People, Stn 6, Art 6 , Marble 200
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Marble Statues will serve as improvements to Palace etc. Stn6 and Art6 must be held by the Tribe with the research.</p> <p>Bonus: Upon completing this topic, contact the GM. A Marble mine hex will be placed near your Home Village / Home City / village of choice.</p> <p>Weight: 500 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Marble Statue, decorates Palaces and stuff</i>

Name	Scraper (Stone)
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Scraper: People 1, Stn2, Stone 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Coded</p> <p>Doubles rate for bark stripping.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Scraper, increases output of generating bark</i>

Name	Sewers
DL	8
Pre-Req	<p>Sanitation 6 (Group C skill)</p> <p>Eng 10 (Group C skill)</p> <p>Home City established</p> <p>University (Building)</p>
Recipe	Sewers: People 1250, Eng 9, San 6, Stn 8, Stones 5000, Logs 500
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Engineering / Stonework activity</p> <p>Sewer Requirements:</p> <p>3) Water Access: Note: Sewers may only be built at sites adjacent to water (River, Lake, Ocean) or Swamps.</p> <p>Benefits: Sewers serve all Tribes of one clan in the site.</p> <p>5) Siege Protection: Sanitation skill is increased by 4 during Sieges. This does not allow Specialists (that would require Sanitation 11 research).</p> <p>6) Population Boost: Improves Population growth (0.5%) similar to Hospital.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Notes:</p> <p>1) Sewers may not be built in Autosheet and must be built using the GM Comments and the Player must transfer the material to usage (1263) when building a Sewer.</p> <p>Sewers may be built for other Clans but they require the Sewers research to utilize.</p>
Summary	<i>New Building - Sewers, Increases population gain</i>

Name	Stone Fords
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	<p>Ford to River: Eng 3, Stn 4, People 500, Stone 2500</p> <p>River to Ford: Eng 6, Stn 8, People 2000, Stone 10000</p>
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Engineering / Stonework activity</p> <p>Fords to Rivers (Eng 3, Stn 4 if using Joint Project) [Removing ford and shoring up bank] 500 AM with Stone 2500 can convert a Ford into a River</p> <p>Rivers to Fords (Eng 6, Stn 8 if using Joint Project) [Building up the ground across river] 2000 AM, Stone 10000 can convert a River into a Ford</p> <p>Note: while both of these take effect at the end of the turn unless you are the builder, you should not assume they will be present during your MV Orders. For example, if your MV is processed before a Ford is built (by another Clan) no ford will be shown at the time of your MV and you will not be able to cross. In short, you should not make your MV depend upon the completion of a Ford in the turn.</p>
Summary	<i>Use stone to build or remove Fords</i>

Name	Stoneworking 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Stoneworking +1 (example from Stoneworking 10 to Stoneworking 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Stoneworking specialists.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Stoneworking, Specialists</i>

Tactics

Name	Ambush
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Once completed, Ambush allows a unit that has access to Ambush to attempt to ambush any enemy unit(s) it has combat with.</p> <p>Benefits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Casualties: A successful Ambush allows the Ambusher one free missile round. Only the unit that has the successful Ambush gets to fire missiles. • Enemy Tactics Skill Reduced (Limited): For determining a successful Ambush, the enemy Unit's Tactics skill is reduced by 2 if the enemy does not also know the Ambush research. This only applies for the determination of an Ambush, not for the duration of the combat. <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ambush Success Check: Determining the success of an Ambush is based on the total Tactics skill of each Unit. The Unit with the higher Tactics skill has a chance to successfully perform the Ambush equal to: (Difference between Tactics Skills) * 10%. See below for Tactics skill value if in MotC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ <i>For example, Unit A has Ambush and Tactics 10. Unit B does not have Ambush and has Tactics 10. Unit B's Tactics is reduced by 2 to 8. The chance of Unit A successfully Ambushing Unit B is $(10-8) * 10 = 20\%$ chance.</i> ○ <i>For example, Unit A has Ambush and Tactics 10 and is attacking Unit B. Unit B has Ambush and Tactics 15. Unit B has the higher Tactics and would have a $(15-10) * 10\% = 50\%$ chance of Ambushing Unit A.</i> ○ <i>For example, Unit A and Unit B both have Ambush and Tactics 10. The chance of a successful Ambush is $(10-10) * 10\% = 0\%$ chance. No Ambush will occur or can occur.</i> • Meeting of the Clan Skill Value: Any Unit that is in MotC uses the averaged value for Tactics as per standard MotC skill value calculations. • Maximum Warriors: This Ambush round is limited to a maximum of 20% of warriors in Ambushing force firing missiles except in wide open terrain such as Prairie, Arid, Desert, etc. when the maximum drops to 10% of the Warriors in the Ambushing force. • Types of Combat: Ambushes cannot be attempted in Naval Combat nor can it be used in combat involving any fortifications. Raiders, Security, Suppression and Locate may not use Ambush.

	<p>How to conduct an Ambush:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Determine Unit A and Unit B's modified Tactics skill and presence of Ambush research. 2. If either Unit does not have Ambush, that Unit's Tactics skill is reduced by 2. (Enemy Tactics Skill Reduced). 3. Determine the Unit that will be Ambushing and the Chance of Success (Ambush Success Check) 4. Determine if the Ambush is successful: Roll 1d100 and compare against chance of success. If roll is <= Chance of success, the Unit has a successful Ambush. 5. Determine the number of Warriors and the weapons / ammo being used (Maximum Warriors) 6. Run the Ambush missile phase per normal missile phase rules. 7. Apply casualties and remove from Combat 8. Run combat as normal starting with the standard Missile Phase.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost - Introduces new Phase in combat as a Ranged attack pre-Ranged</i>

Name	Battlefield Tactics
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Offensive Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Battlefield Tactics Points: The unit with Battlefield Tactics will take its Tactics skill level and compare it against its target's Tactics skill level. If its Tactics skill level is higher, every skill level higher is 1 point of Offensive Bonus against that target. ○ Extra Potential Casualties: Increase the Potential Casualties the unit is causing against the target by a percentage equal to the points of Offensive Bonus. If there are 4 points of Offensive bonus, the attack will cause 4% more Potential Casualties. (100 Potential Casualties would become 104 Potential Casualties). Potential Casualties are rounded up to the nearest whole number. • Defensive Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Battlefield Tactics Points: The unit with Battlefield Tactics will take its Tactics skill level and compare it against an incoming attack. If its Tactics skill level is higher, every skill level higher is 1 point of Defensive Bonus against that target's attack. ○ Reduced Potential Casualties: Decrease the Potential Casualties the unit is taking from the target by a percentage equal to the points of Defensive Bonus. If there are 4 points of Defensive Bonus, the attack will cause 4% less Potential Casualties. (100 Potential Casualties being suffered would

	<p>become 96 Potential Casualties). Potential Casualties are rounded up to the nearest whole number.</p> <p>Requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Units with Battlefield Tactics only gain an advantage if the unit's Tactics skill level is greater than the target's Tactics skill level. Otherwise, no advantage is gained. <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Battlefield Tactics is separate from Fortifications and is its own modifier. For example, if you have Palisade and Moat, which give a casualty reduction of 40%, then 100 incoming Potential Casualties would be reduced by 40% from the Fortifications down to 60 potential casualties and then Battlefield Tactics with 4 points of defensive bonus would reduce that by 4%. $60 \text{ PC} * 0.96 = 58 \text{ Potential Casualties}$.
Summary	<i>Combat Boost: Compare Tactics and increase damage caused, reduce damage taken.</i>

Name	Tactical Systems
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Once a tribe has completely researched Tactical Systems, it or one of its units, gains an advantage in battle whenever its tactics skill is higher than that of its opponent. The difference, if positive, between the tactics skill of the possessor of Tactical Systems is added to the possessor's Leadership Skill when determining the results of a battle.</p> <p>Counters: Tactical Systems cannot be used against an opponent who also possesses this research topic.</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Boost - Tactics vs Tactics, the winner gets a boost to Ldr skill.</i>

Name	Tactics 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus:

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Tactics +1 (example from Tactics 10 to Tactics 11) <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Specialists: You may not train Tactics Specialists.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Tactics</i>

Name	Wagon Laager
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A circle or wall of wagons used by Defenders (only) in the Field</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Eastern Europeans and Turks started out with ordinary upturned wagons tied or chained together. In subsequent wars they turned this into an art form and had specific wagons made for the purpose with firing steps, slits etc. Their very badly trained infantry and peasant levies held firm behind these “walls” until way into the 18th Century, when enough mobile artillery made them obsolete. Historically the army would seem to line up in the traditional manner, cover would then be taken up in a matter of minutes. In the context of the game, on a first encounter the opposition will be unaware and submit normal combat orders. Later on ...they will have to guess! <p>Not in mountains, Forests or Jungle.</p> <p>1 wagon must be available per 10 Warriors. The effect is to increase TP by +4 when the unit has an order to “defend”.</p>
Summary	<i>Circle the wagons and get a Terrain Proficiency bonus when defending.</i>

Name	War Games
DL	7
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	180 (or more) Warriors may Engage in War Games 3 times per year, that is, once

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

n	every 4 months (requires 1 turn). Each Warrior must carry a weapon, a missile weapon and at least 2 pieces of metal armour. Losses of warriors = 20 minus Com Skill (the player should list the losses). They may do this from the Tribe or via an Element. Successful completion of the War Games results in a Terrain Proficiency for the hex in question.
Summary	<i>Send your Warriors out to die in the wilderness and gain Terrain Proficiency. Do it again</i>

Tanning

Name	Rawhide Cast
DL	4
Pre-Req	<u>Tanning 11 (Tanning research)</u>
Recipe	1 Rawhide Cast: People 1, Skin 2
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Tanning Specialists have learned how to process a hide without tanning it. This “rawhide” is wrapped around bone fractures and sets a bone as it dries and tightens</p> <p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Healing: Rawhide Casts may be used to assist in treating the wounded after combat. This research grants +3 to Healing skill. Players must inform the GM at the time of combat. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maximum Healing Items: 1 Healing Item may be given per Wounded combatant. • A Wounded Warrior may be treated with a Rawhide Cast in addition to any one other healing item. • Rawhide Cast will not affect Battlefield Medicine, only end of Turn healing. • Only 1 Rawhide Cast may be used per wounded Warrior per combat. • The Rawhide Cast must be discarded after use.
Summary	<i>New Item – Rawhide Cast - Used aid healing the wounded after combat.</i>

Name	Tanning 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	<u>Rawhide Cast (Tanning research)</u>
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Tanning +1 (example from Tan 10 to Tan 11) • Specialists: This Tribe may begin to train Tanning based specialists <p>Requirements: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Restrictions: N/A •
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase - Tanning, Specialists</i>

Torture

Name	Dungeon
DL	*See Engineering
Pre-Req	*See Engineering
Recipe	*See Engineering
Leads To	*See Engineering
Description	*See Engineering
Summary	<i>New Building - Dungeon, Its a place you put people to get a skill level boost to Torture</i>

Name	Thumb Screws
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Thumb Screws: People 1, Mtl4, Iron 1, Coal 2
Leads To	N/A
Description	Torture allows one question per discrete group (not per individual scout) captured (for example, capturing 2 different Scouting groups would allow 2 different questions to be asked). Using Thumb Screws allows an additional question to be asked of each group (for example, capturing 2 different Scouting groups would allow 4 different questions to be asked).
Summary	<i>Get more information out of your forced guests.</i>

Name	Torture 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Torture +1 (example from Torture 10 to Torture 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Torture specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Specialists: There are few benefits to having specialists in this skill at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Torture, Specialists</i>

Name	Treachery 1, 2, 3,...
DL	1,2,3...
Pre-Req	<u>Dungeons (Engineering)</u>
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	<u>The Rack (Torture research)</u>
Description	<p>Under more sustained and sophisticated torture a client will prefer to name “sympathisers” in the local area rather than pain and death.</p> <p>Treachery 1 DL1. You may convert up to 5 Warriors into Torturers (once per year). An Element of Torturers (1) plus at least 50 Warriors mounted with Whips and 100 Shackles) capture a likely suspect from the local population, interrogate him/her allowing the detention of 100 identified suspects indefinitely (that is, as Slaves). Allowable once per year. The Element must operate (move to) at least 12 hexes from its Home City/Meeting House and cannot operate in any “Special” hex belonging to the Clan or in any politically controlled hexes belonging to allies (including Truced players). A special Element beyond Adm requirements may be created for the purpose.</p> <p><u>Progression (under development)</u></p> <p>Treachery 2 DL2. Same only 2 torturers, 200 warriors and 200 detainees. Prerequisite Dungeon and Treachery 1. Allowable once per year.</p> <p>Treachery 3 DL3. Same only 3 torturers, 300 warriors and 300 detainees. Prerequisite Dungeon and Treachery 1 & 2. Allowable once per year.</p> <p><i>Treachery 4 DL4. Same only 4 torturers etc and requires companion research of the <u>Rack</u>.</i></p> <p><i>Treachery 5 DL5. Same only 5 torturers etc and requires companion research of <u>Thumb Screws</u>.</i></p> <p><i>Treachery 6 DL6. Same only 6 torturers etc and requires companion research of <u>Water Torture</u>.</i></p> <p><i>The Inquisition (DL8 maybe) - a group of torturers can... Probably requiring Treachery 3, Rel10 maybe?</i></p>
Summary	<i>New Element that goes out and finds some Voluntold labor to come back with them.</i>

Name	The Rack
DL	5
Pre-Req	Treachery 3 (Torture research)
Recipe	1 The Rack: People 6, Wdw 5, Iron 20, Logs 10, Silver 200
Leads To	N/A
Description	Assists in developing treacherous attitudes amongst the Locals. Weight: 200 lb
Summary	<i>New Item - The Rack, increases Torture output</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Triball

Name	Inactive Players
DL	5
Pre-Req	Member in a Triball Guild
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Inactives may perform up to one-half of the Triball activities for a Triball Guild or normal Triball silver generation during Fair.</p> <p>Older players are still crowd favorites and their knowledge and skills are invaluable. Just because they may no longer charge across a battlefield against barbarians does not mean they can't beat people with sticks from horseback.</p>
Summary	<i>You don't need your best Warriors playing a ball game, use the useless people</i>

Name	Large Teams
DL	5
Pre-Req	<u>Triball Guild <Triball research></u> Guild Master of Triball Guild
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Large Teams allows all members of a Triball Guild to assign twice as many Warriors, Horses and Clubs as normal (1,600 Warriors, Horses and Clubs) to determine Gold Generation.
Summary	<i>When running a Triball Guild event during fair, your guild mates can all use more players</i>

Name	Off Season
DL	3
Pre-Req	Triball Guild <Triball research> Guild Master of Triball Guild
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	Triball Guild – Off Season allows members of a Triball Guild to be assign Warriors to Triball during specific non-Fair months. This works similar to the Triball Guild rules above. The specific Months that the Triball Guild may be utilized outside of Fair Months are Months 1 and 7. The cost per Gold is increased from 250 to 1,000 for the Triball Guild in these Off Season months.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Allows Triball Guild to operate four times a year instead of two.</i>
---------	--

Name	Triball Arena
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	Triball Arena: People 3k, Eng8 and Triball 10, Stone 15k Triball Arena: People 3k, Eng 10 and Triball 8, Stone 15k
Leads To	N/A
Description	During each fair the owner of a Triball arena gets a 50% bonus to the silver that they get from Triball. Think of the bonus as sales from concessions, etc. A Triball arena can be built for another Clan.
Summary	<i>New Building - Triball Arena, increases the payment for Triball events.</i>

Name	Triball 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Triball +1 (example from Triball 10 to Triball 11) Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specialists: There are no Triball Specialists allowed via this research topic.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Triball</i>

Name	Triball Club
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Triball Club: People 1, Wd 4, Log 1, Brass 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	If members of a Triball activity are armed with Triball Clubs, then the amount of silver they generate (for Silver during fair, or for determining Gold generation) is doubled. If only part of the assigned Warriors are armed with Triball Clubs, then apply a ratioed

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>bonus.</p> <p><i>For Example: At Triball 10, 800 Warriors, Horses and armed with 800 Clubs, would normally generate 19,000 Silver / 250 = 76 Gold. If they were all armed with Triball Clubs, they would generate (19,000 * 2) = 38,000 / 250 = 152 gold.</i></p> <p><i>For Example: At Triball 10, 800 Warriors, Horses and only 400 Clubs and 400 Triball Clubs, they would generate (19000 * 1.5) = 28,500 / 250 = 114 Gold.</i></p> <p>Weight: 5lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Triball Club, doubles the silver/gold generation for Triball events.</i>

Name	Triball Coaches
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Triball Coaches research allows a Tribe that is performing a Triball activity to increase the amount of Silver / Gold generated by 20%. This increase is cumulative, but not multiplicative, the bonus is added to other bonuses.</p> <p><i>For example, with Triball Clubs and Triball Coaches, 800 Warriors with Horses and Triball Staffs would generate 19,000 * 2.2 = 41,800 Silver / 250 = 167 Gold.</i></p>
Summary	<i>Increases the amount of silver / gold gained during Triball events</i>

Name	Triball Franchise
DL	2
Pre-Req	Triball Guild (Triball research) Guild Master of Triball Guild
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Triball Franchise allows all members of a Triball Guild to benefit from sponsorship.</p> <p>For each member of the Guild on turn 1 of each game year, ALL members of the guild receive 5 gold. For computational purposes, the total membership in the Guild is determined at the time the proceeding turn 12 TribeNews is published.</p> <p>Guild Master: This is in addition to the Gold earned by the Guild Master from Triball Guild.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Summary	<i>Annual Bonus: Members of Guild gain Gold</i>
Name	Triball Guild
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Minor League Arena: People 1.5k, Eng 6, Tri 6, Stone 7.5k
Leads To	Large Teams (Triball research)
Description	<p>Description: The effect of a Triball Guild, also known as a Minor League, is to allow Triball to generate to Gold instead of Silver and is structured identical to a Guild.</p> <p>Formation and Governance: Anyone who completes the research may choose to become a Guild Master by starting a Guild (done by informing the GM by email). Guilds are always public: the formation of new ones will be published in TribeNews and currently active ones will be listed on public TN portals. Membership of any Guild is limited to 10 Clans in total, including the Guild Master. A Clan may be a member of only one Guild of each Type (Traders Guild 20, Bargemens Guild, etc). A Clan may only be a member of one Exclusive Guild, such as Exotic Weavers Guild, though Triball Guild is not an exclusive Guild.</p> <p>Membership is by invitation from the Guild Master to anyone they choose, cc'd to the GM: a clear acceptance to the offer must be sent to the Guild Master, cc'd to the GM. Players may seek membership once the formal invitation is issued. The Guild Master is not obliged to accept any particular application for membership. It is incumbent on the Guild Master to maintain the list of the membership in their Guild. Players may leave a Guild at any time by notifying the Guild Master by email, cc'd to the GM. Benefits to the departing player lapse effective from the date of the resignation email. Players may be voted out of the Guild via 60% of membership in favour (the Guild Master counts as two members with two votes).</p> <p>Any Guild may choose to write a Constitution, which must be agreed with the GM. Any such document is always public knowledge and must be made available on public TN portals. It is the Guild Master's responsibility to ensure that this happens.</p> <p>Should a Guild Master lose the capacity to run a Guild, a deputy can be appointed by the GM from amongst remaining Guild members. This deputy may continue to run the Guild as previously run but must immediately undertake any skill development and research necessary to support it. If no-one is able to act as deputy the Guild is dissolved and all benefits are lost</p> <p>Operation and Benefits: A Triball Guild allows Guild Members to gain the ability to assign Warriors to the Triball activity during Fair to generate Gold. This is independent of the normal</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>Triball Activity. To participate in this activity, the Tribe must have access to a Minor League Arena. This Minor League fair activity may be performed during every Fair.</p> <p>A Clan may assign a maximum of 800 Warriors, 800 Horses and 800 Clubs to this special Triball Minor League. Use the standard Fair calculator for Silver generation for Triball activities. The amount of Gold that is generated by participating in this Triball Guild during Fair is the amount of Silver divided by 250, rounded down.</p> <p><i>For Example: At Triball 10, with 800 Warriors, 800 Horses and 800 Clubs, the calculator shows it would normally generate 19,000 silver. Instead it generates $19,000 / 250 = 76$ Gold.</i></p> <p>Guild Master: For each member of the Guild, the Guild Master receives 5 Gold annually (from locals), received on turn 1 of each game year. For computational purposes, the total membership in the Guild is determined at the time the proceeding turn 12 TribeNews is published.</p>
Summary	<i>New Guild - Triball, use Warriors to gain Gold during fair</i>

Name	Triball Specialists
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To	N/A
Description	A Triball specialist is a warrior that has trained extensively to play triball. During fair months they cannot do anything else. They must play triball. During the other months they may guard or do warrior only acts or they may herd triball ponies. They are counted as 2 warriors for purposes of figuring silver gained at the fair. You can have a maximum of 800 Triball specialists participate in the fair.
Summary	<i>Allows training of Triball Specialists, double the output of silver/gold.</i>

Waxworks

Name	Fake Royal Seal
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Fake Royal Seal: People 10, Waxwork 10, Gold 10, Silver 1000, Wax 5, Parchment 5
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>A unit attacking or defending with a Fake Royal Seal may attempt to divert 10% of the combatants (of all types) in the first enemy force it fights. If this enemy force is a MOTC, 10% of the MOTC's combatants may be diverted. The diverted combatants are not lost. They remain part of the enemy force – they simply do not fight in this one battle. For example, if the enemy force contains Combatants=1,000, 330 of these can fight (33% rule). The Fake Royal Seal diverts 10% of these 330, leaving only Combatants=297 to fight in the actual battle. The number of combatants diverted rounds up.</p> <p>This diversion attempt is successful if and only if a successful spying attempt is made against the enemy force. When the enemy force is a MOTC the spying attempt is made vs. the unit leading the enemy MOTC. When the attacker is trying to use a Fake Royal Seal, it is the attacker's responsibility to order the spying mission simultaneously with his(her) attack. A defender will be given a chance (when they submit combat orders) to perform the required spying mission. Peter will adjudicate this defensive spying mission immediately prior to the combat. If successful, the attacker's force will be reduced by 10%. These spying missions are adjudicated using the same rules and skills as any other spying mission. There's nothing different about them other than the effect – a diversion of 10% of the combatants when and if the spying mission succeeds.</p> <p>Please note that the target of a Fake Royal Seal does not know about the diversion (successful or not) when he(she) submits combat orders. If successful, the victim is told that 10% of his(her) forces were diverted by a Fake Royal Seal and thus were not present during the battle. If unsuccessful, the target captures the spies who were attempting to use the Fake Royal Seal. The seal itself is lost, but the target is told that a Fake Royal Seal diversion was attempted.</p> <p>Note that a unit may fight two separate battles in a single turn (Mandate 10.3). In such cases, a Fake Royal Seal affects only one enemy force fought. The clan employing the Fake Royal Seal may specify which enemy force is targeted, first or second. Even if a clan possesses more than one Fake Royal Seal, only one seal may be employed during a single turn. Also note that a force may never under any circumstances have more than 10% of its combatants diverted from a battle.</p> <p>Proper use of Fake Royal Seal is <u>completely</u> in the hands of the player using it. If</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>attacking, a simultaneous SPYing attempt against the target of the attack MUST BE ordered by the attacking player and this SPYing attempt must explicitly state that it is using a Fake Royal Seal. If Defending, the defending player orders the SPYing attempt at the same time as he/she submits his/her combat orders. Again, this SPYing attempt must explicitly state that it is using a Fake Royal Seal. The onus is on the player to employ a Fake Royal Seal in the exact manner described above. Failure to do so means no diversion will occur.</p> <p>Weight: 0.05 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>Bluff your enemies with some wax and gold to reduce the size of their force</i>

Name	Waxworks 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Waxworks +1 (example from Waxworks 10 to Waxworks 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Waxworks specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is currently no benefit for this skill to be greater than 10 at this time.
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Waxworks, Specialists</i>

Weapons

Name	Crossbow
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Crossbow: People 4, Wpn8, Iron 5, Coal 40, String 1, Silver 30 1 Crossbow: People 4, Wpn8, Bronze 5, Coal 30, String 1, Silver 30
Leads To	N/A
Description	Crossbows are heavy arbalests; they may not be made in desert or arid terrain. Weights 6 lbs with normal missile range. Weight: 6 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Crossbow, armour penetrating ranged weapon.</i>

Name	Katana
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Katana: People 3, Iron 5, Coal 40
Leads To	N/A
Description	The folding process makes the Katana sharper than normal sword. Katana is equivalent to a Steel Sword (and may be shown as this in your Report). Weight: 5 lbs https://www.quora.com/What-was-the-superior-sword-the-European-longsword-or-Katana
Summary	<i>New Item - Katana, its a steel sword made of iron. It penetrates armour better.</i>

Name	Repeating Arbalest
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 R. Arbalest: People 4, Wpn9, Iron 2, Coal 25, String 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	An upgraded version of the Arbalest, the Repeating Arbalest provides additional firepower at the cost of additional quarrel use. The R. Arbalest uses up 20 quarrels in a combat but in exchange it produces about one third more casualties than a normal Arbalest.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Weighs: 2lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - R. Arbalest, it does more damage than an Arbalest but eats ammo.</i>

Name	Scimitar
DL	8
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Scimitar: People 3, Steel 5, Coke 20, Gold 2, Silver 20, Ivory 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	Curved Sword with a nice Ivory hilt used by Cavalry. <u>A maximum of 30 people in the Clan per turn</u> may be assigned to the making.
Summary	<i>New Item - Scimitar, Upgraded Sword for Cavalry.</i>

Name	Ulfbehrt Sword
DL	9
Pre-Req	N/a
Recipe	1 Ulfbehrt Sword: People 4, Steel 5, Coke 30, Gold 2, Silver 40
Leads To	N/A
Description	Top of the shelf sword used only by Infantry. <u>A maximum of 40 people in the Clan per turn</u> may be assigned to the making. http://weaponsman.com/?p=11630
Summary	<i>New Item - Ulfbehrt, Upgraded Sword for Infantry</i>

Name	Weapons 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Weapons +1 (example from Weapons 10 to Weapons 11) ♦ Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Weapons specialists. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Weapons, Specialists</i>

Weaving

Name	Basket
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Basket: People 1, Wv4, Bark 5, Gut 5
Leads To	N/A
Description	A basket can double the productivity of farmers harvesting any/all crops. That is, increases the number of effective workers by 100%. May be combined with any other harvesting implement allowed for the type of crop being harvested (e.g. scythe, machete but not Harvest Bag); however the effect is linear, not cumulative (e.g. a farmer with both a scythe and a Basket will harvest 9 acres of grain, not 12). Thus a farmer with Scythe and Basket is shown as 3 equivalent Farmers. A Tobacco Farmer with Basket and Machete would be shown as 5 equivalent workers (not 8). It is incumbent on the player to show equivalent workers in Orders.
Summary	<i>New Item - Basket, doubles productivity of farmers when harvesting.</i>

Name	Cheesecloth
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Cheesecloth: People 1, Wv 10, Cotton 5
Leads To	<u>Summer Shirt (Weaving research)</u>
Description	<p>Weaving Activity (only) Coded</p> <p>Cheesecloth is a loosely woven, carded cotton cloth that enables infusion and filtering. In Distilling, Cheesecloth provides easier handing of the Mash and makes filtering easier. This cheesecloth is grade #40 (40 threads per inch). Research using higher grade Cheesecloth (more threads per inch) to assist with other types of activity may be proposed if this Cheesecloth research topic is a pre-requisite.</p> <p>2 People using 1 Cheesecloth each do the work of 3 (+0.5 AM each) when performing Distilling activities.</p> <p>Weight: 5 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item – Cheesecloth, increases productivity of Distilling activities.</i>

Name	Epic Tapestry
DL	6

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Epic Tapestry: People 20 , Cotton 5k, Silver 500, Gold 50, Diamonds 5
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>0.04 General Morale to owning Clan, -0.05 Morale if lost/destroyed. Bonus 0.06 Military Morale if in combat.</p> <p>Weight: 25 lbs</p> <p>Proposed by Max Nieuwenhuizen</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Epic Tapestry, increases morale unless lost then decreases morale.</i>

Name	Exotic Weaving																				
DL	4																				
Pre-Req	Art 6																				
Recipe	N/A																				
Leads To	N/A																				
Description	<p>Exotic Weaving is a Village Activity (only one Tribe per Clan). Exotic Weavers may create Carpets, Rugs and Tapestries, incorporating techniques and legends unique to the region, for example, Cyberian Carpet. Each Clan can select one unique item.</p> <p><u>When sold at Fair</u>, the items are nothing special and sell for the same price as normal Rugs, Carpets, and Tapestries (with the same limits as per a Fair). <u>Fair Trade Multipliers do not apply</u>. However, if sold at an Exotic Trading Post (found at some trading Towns and NPC International cities – there will usually be 3 or 4 of these and the player needs to ask the GM for their location), these Rugs, Carpets, and Tapestries bring twice the normal price (in Silver) or may be sold for Diamonds. If sold for Diamonds, the twice normal price in Silver is divided by 300, rounding down, to get the amount of Diamonds.</p> <p>If using <u>Silk instead of Cotton</u> these prices are tripled.</p> <p>There are Exotic Trading Posts that buy Exotic Woven items on other Continents.</p> <table><tr><th>ITEM</th><th>SKILL</th><th>PEOPLE</th><th>COTTON/ SILK</th><th>SILVER</th></tr><tr><td>Carpet</td><td>6</td><td>12</td><td>50</td><td>10/20</td></tr><tr><td>Rug</td><td>4</td><td>6</td><td>20</td><td>20/40</td></tr><tr><td>Tapestry</td><td>8</td><td>25</td><td>100</td><td>25/50</td></tr></table> <p>Once <u>three</u> Tribes have completed Exotic Weaving they will be considered to be members of the Exotic Weavers Guild (an exclusive Guild). At this point the Guild must elect a Guild leader who must place a paper Element in Shanghai (without a</p>	ITEM	SKILL	PEOPLE	COTTON/ SILK	SILVER	Carpet	6	12	50	10/20	Rug	4	6	20	20/40	Tapestry	8	25	100	25/50
ITEM	SKILL	PEOPLE	COTTON/ SILK	SILVER																	
Carpet	6	12	50	10/20																	
Rug	4	6	20	20/40																	
Tapestry	8	25	100	25/50																	

	Guild leader the Guild will collapse but may be re-established any time a leader comes forward). This Element may trade as a Shanghai Element but may only deal in exotically woven goods. Should further Tribes develop the research membership in the Guild will be determined by Auction (Gold) once per year for the year. A Clan may not belong to more than one exclusive Guild.
Summary	<i>Access to new weaving recipes and possible formation of an Exclusive guild.</i>

Name	Loom
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Loom: People 5, Logs 10, Ropes 10, Parchment 100, Silver 1000, Iron 50 1 Loom: People 5, Logs 10, Ropes 10, Parchment 100, Silver 1000, Bronze 50 1 Loom: People 5, Logs 10, Ropes 10, Parchment 100, Silver 1000, Brass 50
Leads To	N/A
Description	Workers using a Loom can produce Brocade which may be sold for Gold (and other valuable commodities) at NPC towns (not at Fair). 2 people using a Loom can turn 100 Silk and 1000 Cotton into 100 Brocade (which will sell for around 50 Gold). It is unlikely that any one town will have such demand but the buying of 20-40 Brocade will be usual. Only 2 people per Tribe with Sew10 may produce Brocade each month. Weight: 50 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item - Loom, increases output of Brocade making</i>

Name	Summer Pants
DL	3
Pre-Req	<u>Cheesecloth (Weaving research)</u>
Recipe	1 Summer Pants: People 1, Wv 5, Cheesecloth 4
Leads To	N/A
Description	Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Summer Month Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each worker with a Summer Pants during a Summer month does the work of 1.25 Workers (+0.25 AM each) when performing Activities. Requirements: N/A Restrictions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Summer Months only: Workers only get a bonus to their effective output during Summer months only. This is considered Months 4 (Firstfair), 5 (Midsummer), and 6 (Summerend). There is no bonus gained during months 1,2,3, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Military / Scouting: No bonus is gained from this item during Military or Scouting activities. It has no effect on Armour Value or Army Factor or any other avenue of Combat. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Game Edition: • Classing TN: This bonus must be manually added by the player as additional effective workers. • TN2020: This bonus will be automatically calculated when the clothing is assigned as part of the activity. Clothing will be considered as a semi-consumable item once TN2020 is implemented which means it will have a chance of wearing out when used. • Workers from any Tribe/Unit, even without Summer Pants research, may benefit from the Summer Pants. • Workers from other Clans, even without Summer Pants research, may benefit from the Summer Pants. • A Cheesecloth Summer Pants is a pair of casual, loose fitting pants that makes summer heat and humidity more comfortable. This cheesecloth is grade #50 (50 threads per inch). It is definitely not a high end luxury item but for workers in the heat, it certainly feels that way. • Weight: 1 lb • Example: 100 Workers with 100 Summer Pants would do the work of 125 standard workers. • Example: 100 Workers with 100 Summer Pants and 100 Summer Shirts would do the work of 150 standard workers.
Summary	<i>New Item – Summer Pants, increases productivity of a worker during Summer months.</i>

Name	Summer Shirt
DL	3
Pre-Req	<u>Cheesecloth (Weaving research)</u>
Recipe	1 Summer Shirt: People 1, Wv 5, Cheesecloth 4
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Summer Month Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Each worker with a Summer Shirt during a Summer month does the work of 1.25 Workers (+0.25 AM each) when performing Activities. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Summer Months only: Workers only get a bonus to their effective output during Summer months only. This is considered Months 4 (Firstfair), 5

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>(Midsummer), and 6 (Summerend). There is no bonus gained during months 1,2,3, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 or 12.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Military / Scouting: No bonus is gained from this item during Military or Scouting activities. It has no effect on Armour Value or Army Factor or any other avenue of Combat. <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Game Edition: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Classing TN: This bonus must be manually added by the player as additional effective workers. • TN2020: This bonus will be automatically calculated when the clothing is assigned as part of the activity. Clothing will be considered as a semi-consumable item once TN2020 is implemented which means it will have a chance of wearing out when used. • Workers from any Tribe/Unit, even without Summer Shirt research, may benefit from the Summer Shirt. • Workers from other Clans, even without Summer Shirt research, may benefit from the Summer Shirt. • A Cheesecloth Summer Shirt is a casual, loose fitting shirt that makes summer heat and humidity more comfortable. This cheesecloth is grade #50 (50 threads per inch). It is definitely not a high end luxury item but for workers in the heat, it certainly feels that way. • Weight: 1 lb • Example: 100 Workers with 100 Summer Shirts would do the work of 125 standard workers. • Example: 100 Workers with 100 Summer Pants and 100 Summer Shirts would do the work of 150 standard workers.
Summary	<i>New Item – Summer Shirt, increases productivity of a worker during Summer months.</i>

Name	Weaving 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Weaving +1 (example from Weaving 10 to Weaving 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Weaving specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Notes: N/A
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Weaving, Specialists</i>

Whaling

Name	Whaling 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Whaling +1 (example from Whaling 10 to Whaling 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Whaling specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Whaling, Specialists</i>

Name	Whaler														
DL	6														
Pre-Req	N/A														
Recipe	1 Whaler: People 160, ShB9, Wdw8, Mtl8, Logs 160, Brass 40, Coal, 200, Sheath 150, Silver 3000, Leather 40, Cloth 20, Rope 50, Oars, Cauldrons 2, Longboats 6 minimum (11 maximum), Oars 6 per longboat, Spear/spetum 3 per longboat minimum														
Leads To	N/A														
Description	Increases size of catch (but not the chances). Allows processing of whales at sea based on 2 cauldrons and the peeling, flensing and blubbering skills of the tribe crewing the vessel.														
	ShipB	Wd	Mtl	Logs	Brass	Coal	Sheath	Silver	Leather	Cloth	Rope	O/P Cauldron Longboat			
	9	8	5	160	40	200	150	3000	40	20	50	Oars 30/Cauld 2/LB 6+			
	Sail Movement							Row Movement							
	Vessel Type	MP	Nav	Sea	Sail	Crew	MP	Nav	Sea	Row	Crew	MEF	Sail	Hull	Max People
	Whaler	25	3	2	4	10+7	15	.5	.5	2	20+7	4	16	16	60
	Defense Points: 16														
	Cargo: 40,000														
Weight: 20,000															

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>A Whaler can process two whales in a turn for flensing/peeling and for blubberwork concurrently.</p> <p>A “Whaler” is a specialized vessel that sends out whaleboats (substitute longboats here) with 6 Warriors with ropes. They ride along until the leviathan is exhausted and dies (a “Nantucket sleigh ride”).</p> <p>A Whaler requires cauldrons (try-pots/tryworks) to render the oil from the whale blubber that the flenser cut into thin strips from the larger chunks peeled from the side of the whale.</p>
Summary	<i>New Ship - Whaler</i>

Woodwork

Name	Armoured Howdah
DL	6
Pre-Req	Howdah (Woodwork research) Armour 10 (Group A skill)
Recipe	1 Armoured Howdah: People 60, Arm 10, Wd 6, Log 20, Steel 500, Coal 2,500, Gold 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity (only)</p> <p>An upgrade to the simple Howdah, the Armoured Howdah provides additional protection. Wood from logs are more carefully selected and the steel shell is added to key areas of the Howdah.</p> <p>A 'force' fully equipped with Armoured Howdahs gains a 20% Fortification Value against all incoming attacks. If only a portion of the force is equipped with Howdahs, the FV is scaled proportionately.</p> <p>Additionally, a 'force' fully equipped with Armoured Howdahs gains a +2 to Archery skill. If only a portion of the force is equipped with Howdahs, the Archery skill bonus is scaled proportionately.</p> <p>Note: A force in Combat 2.0 is considered a type of military unit assigned to a specific combat assignment. So "Warriors as Ranged" is a force vs "Guards as Ranged" being a different force. "Warriors as Cavalry" is a third force, etc. It allows you to setup your troops a lot better.</p> <p>Weight: 1,000 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item – Armoured Howdah, increases fortification value and archery skill</i>

Name	Barge Poles
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Barge Pole: People 4, Wd 6, Mtl 4, Logs 1, Iron 10, Bones 10,
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Barge Poles are highly decorative but functional poles used by barge-hands (Barges) to move through swamp as if it were water.</p> <p><u>A Barge with one Barge Pole per Crewmember</u> may treat a Swamp hex as Lake</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>and Swamp hex sides as River for the purposes of barge movement (ferrying) and Special Barge Movement. Each hex of Swamp counts as 2 lake hexes for movement costs and each Swamp hexside counts as 2 river hexsides.</p> <p>Barge Poles have no effect on non-barge ship movement.</p> <p>Weight: 20 lbs each</p> <p><i>The bone decorated poles help to ward off the evil spirits that congregate around the swamps while the barges traverse the fetid waters.</i></p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Barge Poles, allows special barge travel along swamp hexsides.</i>

Name	Bunk
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Bunk: People 2, Log 2, Iron 1, Coal 5
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity (only)</p> <p>Three non-Clan members may share 2 bunks inside a Lodgings and Barracks by sleeping and working in shifts. While not ideal, it is a way for people to live in confining space without needing additional buildings.</p> <p>Allows the creation of Bunks. Every <u>two</u> Bunks allows 1 additional space to be available in a Lodging and Barracks. There is a maximum number of bunks equal to the base amount of Lodging and Barracks space available.</p> <p>For instance, 10 Lodgings can normally hold $10 \times 20 = 200$ extra people. 200 Bunks would allow these 10 Lodgings to hold $200/2 = +100$ people for a total of 300 people in 10 Lodgings.</p> <p>Weight: 50 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item – Bunk, increase space for Lodgings and Barracks.</i>

Name	Hand Plane
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Hand Plane: People 2, Wd 3, Iron 3, Coal 15
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity (only)</p> <p>Coded</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>A wood and metal hand plane used for shaping wood. A worker with a Hand Plane increases Shipbuilding and Woodwork output by 50%. (1 Worker counts as 1.5 Workers)</p> <p>Weight: 50 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Hand Plane, increases productivity of Shipbuilding and Woodwork</i>

Name	Hookah
DL	6
Pre-Req	Smoking Pipes (Apothecary research) OR Smoking Pipes (Woodwork research)
Recipe	1 Hookah: People 1, Glasswork 8, Bottle 1, Leather 4, Tar 1
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting Recipe: This research allows the Tribe to craft Hookahs as a Woodworking activity. • Tobacco Smoking: Hookahs allow a Tribe to smoke 67% less Tobacco when using Smoke Tobacco. 5k would become 1,650 Tobacco using 50 Hookahs and 15k would become 4,950 Tobacco using 150 Hookahs. • Hashish Smoking: Hookahs allow a Tribe to smoke 34% less Hashish when using Smoke Hashish. Instead of Smoking 100 Hashish using 100 Pipes, the Tribe would Smoke 66 Hashish using 100 Hookahs. The bonus is based off of the standard amount of Hashish not the reduced amount. • Opium Smoking: Tribes with Hookah research, and not other Tribes/Clans, may use Hookahs to smoke Opium. This enables the ability to “Smoke Opium”. Smoking Opium requires a Fair Slot separate from Smoking Tobacco and Smoking Hashish. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Smoking Opium: This requires 1 Hookah per Opium smoked. Smoking Opium allows the Tribe to gain Slaves as if Opium were a Desired Commodity. Normal Fair limits, multipliers, etc apply. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hookah Use: A Tribe may only use the required number of Hookahs to gain the bonus. Any additional pipes are not used. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>General Morale Increase, Commodity Use, Reduces use of Tobacco and Hashish.</i>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Name	Howdah
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Howdah: People 10, Wd 6, Log 20, Rope 2
Leads To	<u>Armoured Howdah (Woodworking research)</u>
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity (only)</p> <p>This is a simple wooden "castle" carried by elephants. Manned by 4 warriors (one acts as a driver though still fights as normal). Any "ranged" troop type may use a Howdah. Heavy Weapon based warriors may not ride Howdah's.</p> <p>A 'force' fully equipped with Howdahs gains a 15% Fortification Value against all incoming attacks. If only a portion of the force is equipped with Howdahs, the FV is scaled proportionately.</p> <p>Additionally, a 'force' fully equipped with Howdahs gains a +2 to Archery skill. If only a portion of the force is equipped with Howdahs, the Archery skill bonus is scaled proportionally.</p> <p>Note: A force in Combat 2.0 is considered a type of military unit assigned to a specific combat assignment. So "Warriors as Ranged" is a force vs "Guards as Ranged" being a different force. "Warriors as Cavalry" is a third force, etc. It allows you to setup your troops a lot better.</p> <p>Weight: 500 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item – Howdah, Elephant in combat? Increase fortification value and archery skill</i>

Name	Mash Paddle
DL	3
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Mash Paddle: People 1, Wd 10, Log 2
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity (only) Coded</p> <p>A Mash Paddle is a long handled paddle used to stir the contents of deep stills, making Distilling less Labour intensive. 2 People using 2 Mash Paddle each do the work of 3 (+0.5 AM each) when performing Distilling activities.</p>

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	Weight: 5 lbs
Summary	<i>New Item – Mash Paddle, increases productivity of Distilling activities.</i>

Name	Mining Ladder
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	People 15, Wd3, Mtl3, Log 4, Iron 25, Coal 150
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>(Also Under Mining, Metalwork and Mining)</p> <p>A Mining Ladder provides a Bonus to Mining output equal to +100% to ten (10) miners and a Bonus to Digging output (Clay, canals, sand, moats, etc) equal to +100% to ten (10) diggers. This is cumulative with other implements (Picks, Shovels, Ore Carts, Seam Wedges, etc). This bonus is additive, not compounded.</p> <p>Example:</p> <p>5 Miners with 1 Mining Ladder would count as 10 Miners</p> <p>10 Miners with 1 Mining Ladder would count as 20 Miners</p> <p>15 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders would count as 30 Miners</p> <p>20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders would count as 40 Miners</p> <p>20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders and 20 Picks would count as 60 Miners</p> <p>20 Miners with 2 Mining Ladders, 2 Ore Carts and 20 Picks would count as 80 Miners</p> <p>These wood and metal ladders and ramps are used to for more advanced vertical mining and to facilitate the movement of personnel and ore up mine shafts when they occur due to following veins. These would not be standard wood ladders or ramps but would have iron reinforcement to handle the added weight of the ore and wagons. We have called it Mining Ladders research to shorten the name but it would really be both ladders and ramps.</p> <p>1 Mining Ladder weighs 50 lbs.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Mining Ladder, increases productivity of Mining for 10 miners</i>

Name	Roman Crane (Also under Engineering)
DL	6
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Roman Crane: People 6, Eng8, Wdw10, Logs 20, Iron 40, Rope 10
Leads To	N/A
Description	Description: Wood crane comprised of a modest size boom, a base plate, and a large diameter barrel shaped “wheel” on its side built around and attached to a centre axle (like a hamster wheel). One or more people walk inside the wheel providing

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

	<p>mechanical power to drive the winch and thereby raising or lowering loads. Benefit: Increase worker productivity by 50% on Engineering projects and Shipbuilding so 2 workers do the work of 3. Each crane enables up to 20 workers to gain benefit. The Crane applies to raw workers that is, before other items such as Wheelbarrows. Player must show equivalent workers in their orders. Cranes are inventory item and transportable once constructed and thus may be used by Clans without the research.</p> <p>Weight: 300 Proposed by Brian Whitesell</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Roman Crane, Increases productivity of Engineering and Shipbuilding.</i>

Name	Scaffolding
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Scaffold: People 2, Wdw 6, Logs 3
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity</p> <p>A worker with a scaffold does the work of 1.5 effective workers for Shipbuilding or Engineering work. Every worker requires their own scaffold.</p> <p>Examples: 1 Worker, 1 Scaffold = 1 Effective worker 2 Workers, 2 Scaffolds = 3 Effective workers 100 workers, 100 scaffolds = 150 Effective workers</p> <p>The Scaffolding, once made, is transportable. At this stage of coding players will need to show this. For example, if you are using 20 workers with Scaffolding you would show them as 30. Scaffolds are inventory item and transportable once constructed and thus may be used by Clans without the research.</p> <p>Weight: 50 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Scaffolding, increases productivity of Engineering and Shipbuilding.</i>

Name	Smoking Pipes
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Pipe: 1 Person, Wd 8, Log 1
Leads To:	Hookah (Apothecary research) Hookah (Woodwork research) Opium Den (Apothecary research) Opium Den (Economics research)

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Crafting Recipe: This research allows the Tribe to craft Pipes as a Woodworking activity. • Pipe Bonus: 1 Pipe replaces 1 Parchment and reduces Tobacco use from 100 per Parchment to 50 per Pipe. (2.5k + 50 Pipes and 7.5k + 150 pipes). • Hashish: Tribes with Pipe research, and not other Tribes/Clans, may use Pipes to smoke Hashish. This enables the ability to “Smoke Hashish”. Smoking Hashish requires a Fair Slot separate from Smoking Tobacco. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Smoking Hashish: This requires 100 Hashish and 100 Pipes. Smoking Hashish provides a General Morale increase of +0.01. If 250 Hashish and 250 Pipes are used, then the General Morale increase is +0.02 instead of 0.01. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hashish: Only 1 Tribe may smoke hashish per fair. • Pipe Use: A Tribe may only use the required number of Pipes to gain the bonus. Any additional pipes are not used. <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>New Item – Smoking Pipes, Reduced Tobacco use, Smoke Hashish for Happniess</i>

Name	Trellis
DL	2
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Trellis (Acre): People 1, Eng 6, Wdw 2, Logs 1, Cotton 1
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity</p> <p>Requires Farm 6 to use Trellis to reduce AM for grape harvesting</p> <p>A structure to support vines and hold them in optimal position to encourage growth and enable easier harvesting of the grapes.</p> <p>The trellis can be installed on a vineyard (during or after planting) and then is permanently associated with that acreage. Trellis can be built for another clan if the unit is permitted into their village hex, but once built cannot be moved.</p> <p>The effect of a trellis is reducing the work required harvesting grapes to ¼ of normal. In other words, 1 person can harvest up to 4 acres of grapes which have trellis installed.</p>

	<p>Combines linearly with other research (so treat as +3 workers not x4, if in conjunction with other research).</p> <p>Players need to track the trellised acres and show effective workers adjusted for trellis in their orders, for instance show 100 workers harvesting 400 trellised acres as 400 effective workers.</p> <p>Weight: While the Trellis is stored as an item, it is meant to be a stationary installation. It has a hefty weight and is not meant to be moved.</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Trellis, increases productivity of harvesting grapes, x4</i>

Name	Wain
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Wain: People 15, Wdw4, Logs 15
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity</p> <p>Holds 5000 lbs (2500 when scouting). Has same restrictions as Wagons. 4 Animals to Pull.</p> <p>Weight: 600 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Wain, It is a bigger wagon that requires more animals to pull.</i>

Name	Wheelbarrow
DL	4
Pre-Req	N/A
Recipe	1 Wheelbarrow: People 2, Wdw5, Logs 2
Leads To	N/A
Description	<p>Woodwork Activity (only) Coded</p> <p>A worker with a wheelbarrow increases Mining, Engineering output by 50%. Doubles Quarrying output. Weight: 50 lbs</p>
Summary	<i>New Item - Wheelbarrow, Increases productivity of Mining,Engineering,Quarrying</i>

Name	Woodwork 11
DL	5
Pre-Req	N/A

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Recipe	N/A
Leads To:	N/A
Description	<p>Bonus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skill Level Bonus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ Woodwork +1 (example from Woodwork 10 to Woodwork 11) • Specialists: The Tribe may begin to train Woodwork specialists. <p>Requirements: N/A</p> <p>Restrictions: N/A</p> <p>Notes: N/A</p>
Summary	<i>Skill Level Increase – Woodwork, Specialists</i>

Notes

Topics with multiple DL's (and others that relate DL level to the recipient) cannot be changed once commenced. For example, if you have commenced a Topic and picked the 'Affects Tribe Version' and are DL3 of 7 for the Tribe, you cannot then decide to change this to DL3 of 9 Clan wide version of that topic. Clan wide must be commenced as a separate project. However, Tribe wide is not a prerequisite for Clan wide so you can begin your research by going straight for Clan wide or Religion wide.

Capped Topics

[See Tribe News](#)

Scrolls/Relics

These will be required for some topics. A Scroll is more likely to be required for items that use materials, a Relic for items that do not. Scrolls and Relics are found around the hexes, but they are rare.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Seaborne Trade Math

Attribute	Trade Route	SBT	BoT	Entrepot	Fast Fleets	Trusted Maps	Type of Math
Jetty Distance (Hexes)	N/A	20	x2	x2	=	=	Multiplicative
Speed (MV)	40	60	x2	=	x2 (SBT Only)	x1.5 (SBT Only)	Additive
Max Distance (MV)	120	360	Unlimited (SBT Only) 240 - (TR Only)	=	=	=	Set

Compounding Seaborne Trade Route Math

Attr	SBT	SBT+BOT	SBT+BOT+ENT	SBT+FF	SBT+TM	SBT+BOT+FF	SBT+BOT+ENT+FF	SBT+BOT+ENT+TM	SBT+BOT+FF+TM	SBT+FF+TM	SBT+BOT+FF+TM	SBT+BOT+ENT+FF+TM
Jetty	20	40	80	40	40	40	80	40	80	20	40	80
Spd	60	120	60	120	90	180	180	150	150	150	210	210
Max	360	Unlim	Unlim	360	360	Unlim	Unlim	Unlim	Unlim	360	Unlim	Unlim

Legend:

ATTR: Attribute

Jetty: How many hexes until a Jetty must be part of the route.

Spd: How fast a fleet moves along the SBT

Max: Maximum distance of the SBT.

[SBT: Sea Borne Trade Route](#)

[BOT: Board of Trade](#)

[ENT: Entrepot](#)

FF: Fast Fleets

[TM: Trusted Maps](#) or [TM: Trusted Maps](#) (Ldr)

Restricted Topics

When introduced these will be available only to Clans that have started the game more recently and/or be specific to Continents.

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Orders for Research Attempts

Showing Research Topics that are yet to be started in **Red** is a big help to me. Your Orders might look something like this (the serious researcher will eliminate text in grey altogether):

Tribe	Primary	Secondary	Research (with University)
0500			Politics: Government Level 3 (DL2 to DL3) Engineering: Stone Wall 25' (DL1 to DL2) Leadership: Leadership 11 (DL3 to DL4) Research: Attempting: Research Team Mining: Attempting: Mining Ladder Politics: Attempting: GL3
1500			Apiarism: Breed New Queens (DL4 to DL5) Refining: Attempting: Coke Forestry: Attempting: 6 Logs per Dancing: Attempting: Springs Arts Festival
2500			Quarrying: 7 stones per person (DL2 to DL3)
3500			Economics: Market Place (DL3 to DL4) Herding: Herding 11 (DL0 to DL1) Hunting: Attempting: Hunting 11 Music: Attempting: Springs Arts Festival

Research Topic Summary Section: This is a quick summary of each topic for quick review. The summaries are accurate only in so far as they tell the story of the research topic itself. Actual game information can be found in the research topic entry itself. The entry Description is the deciding factor as to the effect of the topic.

Global Research Rules	11
Skill 12,13,14... ..	11
Skill Level Increase – Skill	11
Submissions	12
Wonders.....	13
Administration	32
Administration 11	32
Skill Level Increase - Administration, Specialists	32
Advanced Smiths	32
Productivity Boost – Metalworking, Armour, Weaponsmithing	33
Agent.....	33
New unit type for Trade Town interaction	34
Alliance Castras	34
Combat Boost – Fortifications allowed for different clans in the same hex.	34
Bureaucracy 1, 2, 3....	34
Skill Level Increase - Administration	35
Extra Element	35
Extra Element with independent Scout Groups.	36

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

Extra Movement 4	36
<i>Bonus Movement to Tribe and Elements</i>	36
Extra Movement 6	36
<i>Bonus Movement to Tribe and Elements</i>	37
Greater Smiths	37
<i>Productivity Boost – Metalworking, Armour, Weaponsmithing</i>	38
Improved Smiths	38
<i>Productivity Boost – Metalworking, Armour, Weaponsmithing</i>	38
International Cultural Organization	39
<i>New Organization – Local Support Boost to Members and Desired Commodities to others</i>	40
Smiths	40
<i>Productivity Boost – Metalworking, Armour, Weaponsmithing</i>	41
Agriculture	42
Agriculture 11	42
<i>Skill Level Increase – Agriculture</i>	42
Agriculture IV, Agriculture V, Agriculture VI	42
<i>Skill Level Increase - Farming</i>	43
Alchemy	44
Alchemy 11	44
<i>Skill Level Increase - Alchemy, Specialists</i>	44
Blasting Jar	44
<i>New Item - Boost to Digging / Canal Building and Siege Cannon effectiveness</i>	45
Blasting Powder	45
<i>New Item - Upgrade to Blasting Jar</i>	46
Apiarism	47
Apiaries with Reusable Frames	47
<i>Seeking Boost - Double Hives</i>	47
Apiarism 11	47
<i>Skill Level Increase - Apiarism, Specialists</i>	47
Apiology I, Apiology II, Apiology III...	48
<i>Skill Level Increase - Apiarism</i>	48
Breed New Queens	48
<i>Yearly increase of Hives (+24)</i>	49
Pastry	49
<i>New Item - Pastries - Boosts Morale to Self / Others</i>	50
Propolis	50
<i>New Item - Propolis - Used to heal, double Herb effectiveness</i>	50
Staff of Life	50
<i>New Item – Staff of Life - Used to heal, 4x Herb effectiveness</i>	51
Apiology	52
Apiology 11	52
<i>Skill Level Increase – Apiology</i>	52
Apiology IV, Apiology V, Apiology VI...	52
<i>Skill Level Increase - Apiarism</i>	53

Apothecary	54
Apothecary 11	54
<i>Skill Level Increase – Apothecary, Specialists</i>	54
Hashish	54
<i>New Crop - Hashish, tradeable to International Cities</i>	55
Hookah	55
<i>General Morale Increase, Commodity Use, Reduces use of Tobacco and Hashish.</i>	56
Opium Den	56
<i>New Building – Opium Den, Gain Gold while your people find eternal bliss</i>	57
Salves	57
<i>New Item - Salves, Counts as 2 Salves</i>	57
Smoking Pipes	57
<i>New Item – Smoking Pipes, Reduced Tobacco use, Smoke Hashish for Happiness</i>	58
Archaeology	59
Archaeology 11	59
<i>Skill Level Increase – Archaeology, Specialists</i>	59
Exhibition	59
<i>Collect Unique Artefacts, Yearly gain of Morale, Actives and Auxiliaries</i>	61
Exhibition Curators	61
<i>Boosts Exhibition bonus</i>	62
Magnificent Exhibition	62
<i>Boosts Exhibition Bonus, Gain Silver, Coin or Gold</i>	63
Relic	63
<i>Yearly gain of Relic</i>	64
Relic 2	64
<i>Year gain of second relic</i>	64
Relic 3	64
<i>Year gain of third relic</i>	65
Second Site	65
<i>Gain second Ruin site and Archeology Garrison and Archeology Courier</i>	66
Second Site Relic 1, 2, 3	66
<i>Gain Relics from second Ruin site</i>	66
Tomb Robbers	66
<i>Steal from the dead and gain Commodities</i>	67
Architecture	68
Architecture 11	68
<i>Skill Level Increase – Architecture, Specialists</i>	68
Landscaped Gardens	68
<i>New Building – Landscaped Gardens, provides population gain each year.</i>	69
Archery	70
Archery 11	70
<i>Skill Level Increase – Archery</i>	70
Longbowman	70
<i>New Population Type - Longbowman, each Longbowman is expensive but kills a lot of people.</i>	71
Marksmen	71

<i>Combat Boost - 15% of Tribe Warriors get Bonus to Archery skill</i>	72
Toxophilite	72
<i>Combat Bonus: +0.10 Army Factor and -0.05 Army Factor Defense for all Troop Types assigned to Ranged combat assignment.</i>	72
Yoeman Archers	72
<i>Combat Boost - Some Actives in Tribe may be used as Archers</i>	73
Armour	74
Armour 11	74
<i>Skill Level Increase – Armour, Specialists</i>	74
Bascinet	74
<i>New Item - Bascinet - Better than Helmet</i>	75
Buckler	75
<i>New Item - Buckler – Ranged troop shield</i>	76
Chain Barding	76
<i>New Item - Chain Barding - Saves your horses</i>	77
Chain Dog Barding	77
<i>New Item - Chain Barding - Saves your horses</i>	77
Full Plate	77
<i>New Item - Full Plate, full body coverage, increased protection in combat for Cavalry</i>	78
Fluted Plate	78
<i>New Item - Fluted Plate, full body coverage, increased protection in combat for Infantry</i>	79
Greaves	79
<i>New Item - Greaves, leg coverage, increased protection over Trews</i>	80
Heavy Full Plate	80
<i>New Item – Heavy Full Plate, full body coverage, Increased cavalry protection.</i>	81
Heavy Fluted Plate	81
<i>New Item – Heavy Fluted Plate, full body coverage, Increased Infantry protection.</i>	82
Plate Barding	82
<i>New Item - Plate Barding, Save your horses, better than Chain</i>	83
Astronomy	84
Astral Navigation 1, Astral Navigation 2, Astral Navigation 3	84
<i>Skill Level Increase - Navigation</i>	84
Astrolabe	84
<i>New Item: Bonus to Navigation skill</i>	85
Astronomy 11	85
<i>Skill Level Increase – Astronomy, Specialists</i>	85
Solstice	85
<i>Celebration of the Solstice and Equinox to garner people to your Clan.</i>	86
Art	87
Art 11	87
<i>Skill Level Increase – Art, Specialists</i>	87
Great Work	87
<i>Sacrifice Cultural skill levels for Morale</i>	88
Heraldry	88
<i>New Item - Standard, forces ransoms from enemies to get your people back</i>	90

Spring Arts Festival Art	90
<i>Yearly activity to boost morale</i>	90
Inter Spring Arts Festival Art.....	91
<i>New Building – Amphitheatre, expands Festival to other Clans.</i>	91
Bronze Statue	91
<i>New Item - Bronze Statue, sell it at fair and select Trade Towns</i>	92
Marble Statue.....	92
<i>New Item - Marble Statue, useful for filling out Palaces, get new Mine</i>	92
Baking	93
Baking 11	93
<i>Skill Level Increase – Baking, Specialists</i>	93
	94
Cupcakes	94
<i>New Item - Cupcakes, increases effectiveness of Pacifiers</i>	94
Fine Bread	94
<i>Increases Bread Production per Person</i>	95
Waybread	95
<i>New Item - Waybread, Food that is lighter than Provs</i>	96
Yeast.....	96
<i>Increases Bread Production per Person</i>	96
Banking	97
Banking 11	97
<i>Skill Level Increase – Banking, Specialists</i>	97
Branded Coin	97
<i>New Item: Branded Coin, Bonus to Local Support rules</i>	98
Local Money Changer	98
<i>Convert Commodities to other Commodities</i>	99
Minting / Coin	99
<i>New Item - Coins, can be used at some special hexes and for some topics</i>	100
NPC Exchange	100
<i>Convert Coins to Commodities</i>	101
Brickmaking	102
Advanced Brickmaking	102
<i>Increase Stone production per person via Brickmaking</i>	102
Brickmaking 11	102
<i>Skill Level Increase - Brickmaking, allows specialists</i>	103
Brickmolds	103
<i>New Item - Brickmolds, +1 AM per person for Brickmaking</i>	103
Greater Brickmaking	103
<i>Increase Stone production per person via Brickmaking, Greater</i>	104
Improved Brickmaking	104
<i>Increase Stone production per person via Brickmaking, minor</i>	104
The Lighted Dome of Iron and Stone	104
<i>Mega-Project, communal bonuses for visitors</i>	106

Bureaucracy	107
Bureaucracy 11	107
<i>Skill Level Increase – Bureaucracy, Specialists</i>	107
Bureaucracy 4,5,6....	107
<i>Skill Level Increase - Administration</i>	108
Bush Lore	109
Bush Lore 11	109
<i>Skill Level Increase – Bush Lore, Specialists</i>	109
Bush Lore IV, V, VI	109
<i>Skill Level Increase - Seeking</i>	110
Captaincy	111
Admiralty	111
<i>Combat Boost - Applies Admiralty (New Skill) to Captaincy for Naval Battles</i>	111
Captaincy 11	111
<i>Skill Level Increase – Captaincy</i>	112
Naval Junior Officer	112
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Captaincy Modifier to Damage calculators and reduces Rout</i>	112
Naval Second in Command (NSIC)	112
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Captaincy Modifier to Damage calculators and reduces Rout</i>	113
Recruitment 1, Recruitment 2, Recruitment 3,	113
<i>Merc Limits increased by 500.</i>	113
Resilience I, Resilience II, Resilience III	113
<i>Combat Boost - If you rout, you have a chance not to rout but its pricey</i>	114
Rousing Speech	114
<i>Combat Boost - 5% less chance to run away due to a bad combat.</i>	114
Trusted Maps	114
<i>Increases fleet movement speed when using Sea Borne Trade Routes</i>	115
Naval College	115
<i>Combat Boost - Applies Admiralty to other skills in Naval Combat</i>	116
Combat	116
Assault Troops	116
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Combat Skill and Terrain Proficiency (Limited)</i>	116
Army	116
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Army Factor to 1.4. (+40% Damage), Defense to 0.80 (-20% incoming Damage)</i>	117
Close Order Infantry	117
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Combat Skill and effectiveness of Shields</i>	117
Combat 11	117
<i>Skill Level Increase – Combat</i>	117
Combat 12	117
<i>Skill Level Increase – Combat</i>	118
Conscription	118
<i>Combat Boost - Allows limited Actives to fight as Warriors.</i>	118
Home Guard	118
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Army Factor to 1.20 (+20% Damage), Defense to 0.90 (-10% incoming</i>	

damage).	119
Training	119
<i>Combat Boost - Long term training for Terrain Proficiency increase</i>	119
Veterans Class I	119
<i>Combat Boost - Allows limited Inactives to fight as Archers</i>	120
Cooking	121
Banquet	121
<i>Yearly expenditure of animal and alcohol for Morale increase.</i>	121
Cooking II	121
<i>Skill Level Increase – Cooking, Specialists</i>	121
Great Work	121
<i>Sacrifice Cultural Skill Levels for Morale increase</i>	122
Stew	122
<i>More efficient generation of food. Also see Baking...</i>	122
Courier	123
Barterer	123
<i>Increases reward for Import/Export and International City Trade Missions by 5%.</i>	123
Courier II	123
<i>Skill Level Increase – Courier, Specialists</i>	123
Negotiator	123
<i>Increases reward for Import/Export and International City Trade Missions by 5%.</i>	124
Large Orders	124
<i>Applies Clan's Fair Multiplier when Buy/Selling at Trading Towns.</i>	124
Dance	125
Circus Troupe	125
<i>Yearly event to gain Morale and Silver</i>	125
Dance II	125
<i>Skill Level Increase - Dancing, Allows specialists</i>	126
Great Work	126
<i>Sacrifice Cultural Skill Levels for Morale gain</i>	126
Spring Arts Festival	126
<i>Yearly event to raise Morale</i>	126
Inter Spring Arts Festival Dance	126
<i>New Building – Amphitheatre, expands Festival to other Clans.</i>	127
Design	128
Design II	128
<i>Skill Level Increase – Design, Specialists</i>	128
Medals	128
<i>New Item – Medals, provides Combat Morale benefit after battles.</i>	129
Diplomacy	130
Alliance MOTC	130
<i>Combat Boost - Allows Meeting of the Clan with Alliance Mates</i>	131
Corps Diplomatique	131
<i>Send Diplomats out to form relations to assist with Trade Route setup</i>	131

Diplomacy 11	131
<i>Skill Level Increase – Bush Lore, Specialists</i>	132
Expanded Horizons, Expanded Horizons II	132
<i>Gain another one/two Desired Commodities to buy Hirelings/Slaves</i>	132
Extra Tribe	132
<i>Gain an extra Tribe, though it must be immobile.</i>	133
Fair 3	133
<i>Your Clan may have a 3rd fair each year.</i>	133
Frontier Lands I, II, III	133
<i>Semi-lawed controlled hexes radiating out from a Home City.</i>	135
Political Route	135
<i>Different route to forming a Nation</i>	136
Distilling	137
Absinthe	137
<i>New Item - Absinthe, Sells at Fair</i>	137
Branded Ale (Wine, Brandy, etc)	137
<i>New Item - Alcohol of your naming, Sells at Fair for +50% base price</i>	137
Distillers' Guild	137
<i>Guild, Up to 10 people may join. Increases payout for specific alcohol</i>	139
Distilling 11	139
<i>Skill Level Increase – Distilling, Specialists</i>	139
Gin	139
<i>New Item - Gin, Sells at Fair</i>	140
Port Wine	140
<i>New Item - Port Wine, Sells at Fair</i>	140
Road House	140
<i>New Building - Roadhouse - Allows selling of alcohol each turn</i>	141
Tavern	141
<i>New Building - Increases Fair Multiplier for Alcohol only.</i>	141
Economics	142
Bargemens Guild	142
<i>Guild, 10 people may join, allows long distance river travel once per Fair</i>	144
Board of Trade	144
<i>Allows formation of many Trade Routes. Trade Routes allow rapid movement of goods/units</i>	146
Brothel	146
<i>New Building - Brothel, New Fair activity for silver</i>	146
Carnival	146
<i>Replaces one Fair with Carnivale and larger Fair Multiplier</i>	147
Economics 11	147
<i>Skill Level Increase – Economics, Specialists</i>	147
Entrepot	147
<i>Allows Trade Routes via Board of Trade to branch off or be placed in series</i>	148
Expanded Horizons, Expanded Horizons II	148
<i>Gain another one/two Desired Commodities to buy Hirelings/Slaves</i>	149
Goods Tribe Economic Zone	149
<i>Goods Tribes may be at distance 2 instead of 1.</i>	149

<Guild> Hall	149
<i>New Building - <Guild> Hall – Increases boost of a Guild for that member.</i>	150
Hire Security	150
<i>Tribe may hire extra security to protect against Spies/Assassins</i>	150
Market Place	150
<i>Fair - Increases the number of Fair Slots by +5</i>	151
Merchant Navy Guild.....	151
<i>Guild, 10 people may join, Once per fair allows long distance lake/ocean goods move.</i>	153
Opium Den	153
<i>New Building – Opium Den, Gain Gold while your people find eternal bliss</i>	154
Sea Borne Trade.....	154
<i>Trade Route formed across sea for rapid movement of units / goods.</i>	154
Second Caravan	155
<i>Guild Master upgrade to Traders Guild 20/25 to allow all members two transfers a fair</i>	155
Supply	155
<i>Combat Boost - Mercenaries may attack.</i>	155
Trade Camps	155
<i>Allows Trade Routes to end in a hex that doesn't have a Meeting House.</i>	156
Trade Element – Increased Movement.....	156
<i>Increases Trade Element (e9) movement by +4</i>	156
Trade Routes	156
<i>Allows long distance rapid transport of goods / units between two points.</i>	160
Traders Guild 20.....	160
<i>Guild, 10 members may join, allows one long distance transport of goods per fair</i>	163
Traders Guild 25.....	163
<i>Increases distance of transport for Traders Guild 20.</i>	163
Trusted Maps	163
<i>Speeds up naval movement along Sea Borne Trade Routes</i>	164
Toll Gate	164
<i>New Building - Toll Gate, Build two toll gates and get Gold/Coin yearly</i>	164
Wholesale Trading.....	164
<i>Increases Fair Multiplier by x2</i>	165
Engineering	166
Barbican	166
<i>Combat Boost - New Building - Barbican, Bonus to Archery when defending</i>	166
Bridge.....	166
<i>New Improvement – Bridge, spans a river or canal allowing movement.</i>	167
Canals	167
<i>Spend lots of work to create an artificial river hex side</i>	168
Colosseum.....	168
<i>Yearly slave fights to boost Morale</i>	169
Crenellations	169
<i>New Building: Crenellations, Combat Boost - +5% to Fortification value</i>	169
Demolitionists I, II, III	169
<i>Allows Workers to use multiple Blasting Jars/Powder; also decreases Fortifications</i>	170
Destroy Roads	170

<i>Assists Units in destroying and removing froads.</i>	170
Drawbridge	170
<i>Combat Boost - New Building - Drawbridge, Bonus to Archery when defending</i>	171
Dungeon	171
<i>New Building - Dungeon - Boost to Torture</i>	171
Engineering 11	171
<i>Skill Level Increase – Engineering, Specialists</i>	171
Expert Diggers	172
<i>Efficiency boost to Digging projects</i>	172
Fords	172
<i>Allows creation and removal of Fords across rivers / canals</i>	173
Fences	173
<i>Reduces number of herders required.</i>	173
Fen Drainage	173
<i>Turn Swamp hex into a Prairie hex</i>	174
Fortified Bridge	174
<i>New Improvement – Fortified Bridge, large upgrade to a standard bridge.</i>	176
Gate House	176
<i>Combat Boost - New Building - Gate House, Bonus to Archery when defending</i>	176
Great Canal	176
<i>Allows creation of Canals at a distance from the workers.</i>	177
Improved Fence Builders	177
<i>Increases the efficiency of building fences...</i>	177
Improved Stable Builders	177
<i>Increases the efficiency of building Stables</i>	178
Keep	179
<i>Combat Boost - New Building - Keep, allows protection at home or waystations</i>	180
Mining Ladder	180
<i>New Item - Mining Ladder, Boost to number of mining effective workers, serves 10</i>	181
Outpost	181
<i>New Building - Outpost, Outpost prevents overrun via Local and reports locating scouts</i>	181
Pass	181
<i>Allows creation and removal of Passes across mountain / volcano Hexsides</i>	182
Roads	182
<i>Build Roads to decrease MV cost when traveling</i>	185
Roman Crane	185
<i>New Item - Roman Crane, bonus to Engineering and Shipbuilding.</i>	186
Sappers / Sappers II	186
<i>Combat Boost - Decreases enemy fortification value by 5% / 10%</i>	186
Scaffolding	186
<i>New Item - Scaffolding, Increases worker efficiency by +0.5 AM per worker, serves 20</i>	187
Scout Post	187
<i>Units with a Scout Post get their own set of 8 Scout groups independent of the Tribe</i>	187
Sewers	187
<i>New Building - Sewers, Increases population gain.</i>	188
Siegecraft	188
<i>New Skill, Siege Craft, reduces casualties when defending.</i>	189

Spiked Moat	189
<i>New Building – Spiked Moat. Causes additional damage to attackers.</i>	189
Stables	189
<i>New Building - Stables, Reduces number of herders required</i>	190
Stone Wall 25'	190
<i>Build bigger walls against better bad guys. Increase fortification value.</i>	190
Stone Wall 30'	190
<i>Upgrade to 25' Stone Wall</i>	191
Superior Canals	191
<i>Allows creation of Canals adjacent to Mountain.</i>	191
Trellis	191
<i>New Building - Trellis, Increases effectiveness of workers for harvesting.</i>	192
Watchtower	192
<i>Increases Security and Suppressors effectiveness.</i>	192
Wire Fences	192
<i>Reduces number of herders required.</i>	193
Excavation	194
Excavation 11	194
<i>Skill Level Increase – Excavation, Specialists</i>	194
Expert Dig	194
<i>Allows a second Artefact to be dug up from ruins each turn</i>	194
Holy Artefact	194
<i>Yearly gain of a special artefact that majorly boosts morale.</i>	195
Tomb Robbers	196
<i>Steal from the dead and gain commodities.</i>	196
Farming	197
Farming 11	197
<i>Skill Level Increase – Farming, Specialists</i>	197
Agriculture I, Agriculture II, Agriculture III... ..	197
<i>Skill Level Increase – Farming</i>	198
Flax	198
<i>Improved method of farming Cotton</i>	198
Herb Plot	198
<i>Teaches you how to farm and harvest Herbs</i>	199
Inactive Workers	199
<i>Use worthless Inactives to do some farming</i>	200
Juniper	200
<i>Farm and Harvest Juniper tp make more alcohol</i>	200
Plantation	200
<i>New Building - Plantation, +0.5 AM per Farmer up to 100 Farmers, needs more tools</i>	201
Trellis	201
<i>New Item - Trellis, Greatly (+3 AM) assists with harvesting Grapes.</i>	202
Fire Control	203
Excubitoriums	203
<i>New Building – Excubitorium, slow increase of General Morale and gain Locals.</i>	203

Fire Brigade.....	203
<i>Increases the effectiveness of fire watchers over farming.</i>	204
Fire Control 11	204
<i>Skill Level Bonus – Fire Control, allows Specialists</i>	204
Inactive Fire Watchers	204
<i>Allows using the normally useless Inactives to do productive tasks.</i>	205
Roman Fire Pump	205
<i>New Item – Roman Fire Pump, increases effectiveness of fire control workers (+1AM)</i>	205
Fishing	206
Fishing 11.....	206
<i>Skill Level Increase – Fishing, Specialists</i>	206
Trawler	206
<i>New Ship, Trawler. Greater output when fishing</i>	207
Trawling Net.....	207
<i>New Item - Trawling Net, increases Fishing output</i>	207
Fletching	208
Bodkin Arrows	208
<i>New Arrow – Bodkin. Additional Armour Penetration for Ranged attacks from Bows.</i>	208
Fletching 11	208
<i>Skill Level Increase – Fletching, Specialists</i>	209
Longbow	209
<i>New Weapon – Longbow, more effective Bow</i>	209
Forestry	210
5 Logs / Person	210
<i>Get 5 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>	210
6 Logs / Person	210
<i>Get 6 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>	210
7 Logs / Person	210
<i>Get 7 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>	210
8 Logs / Person	210
<i>Get 8 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>	211
9 Logs / Person	211
<i>Get 9 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>	211
10 Logs / Person	211
<i>Get 10 Logs instead of 4 with Forestry</i>	211
Burner Improvements	211
<i>New Building - Burner Improvement, Increases (+0.5) output when Charcoal Making</i>	212
Forestry 11.....	212
<i>Skill Level Increase – Forestry, Specialists</i>	212
Log Driving	212
<i>Transport Logs along rivers and canals</i>	212
Managed Plantations.....	212
<i>Plant Trees in a treeless Hex and get Logs/Bark each turn.</i>	213
Improved Charcoal Making	213
<i>Your workers count extra when making Charcoal (+0.5 AM)</i>	213

Saw	213
<i>New Item - Saw, Increase Log output by x4</i>	214
Sawmill	214
<i>New Building - Sawmill, Increases output of Logs by x8</i>	214
Scraper	214
<i>New Item - Scraper, Increases output of gaining Bark by x2</i>	215
Furniture	216
Bunk	216
<i>New Item – Bunk, adds capacity to Lodgings and Barracks</i>	216
Furniture 11	216
<i>Skill Level Increase – Furniture, Specialists</i>	217
Furrier	218
Advanced Trap	218
<i>New Item, Advanced Trap, Hunter/Furrier can use for large boost (+1 AM)</i>	218
Furrier 11	218
<i>Skill Level Increase - Furrier, Specialists</i>	218
Improved Trap	218
<i>New Item, Improved Trap, Hunter/Furrier can use for multiple small boosts (Total +0.75)</i>	219
Winter Furs	219
<i>Ability to gain Winter Fur during Winter to sell for silver</i>	219
Winter Jacket	219
<i>New Item – Winter Jacket, increases productivity of a worker during Winter months.</i>	220
Winter Pants	220
<i>New Item – Winter Pants, increases productivity of a worker during Winter months.</i>	221
Winter Shirt	221
<i>New Item – Winter Shirt, increases productivity of a worker during Winter months.</i>	222
Garrison	223
Excubitoriums	223
<i>New Building – Excubitorium, slow increase of General Morale and gain Locals.</i>	223
Garrison 11	223
<i>Skill Level Increase – Garrison, Specialists</i>	224
<i>Assign Warriors to Sentry Duty and gain Terrain Proficiency during battles.</i>	224
Geology	225
Geology 11	225
<i>Skill Level Increase – Geology, Specialists</i>	225
Geology IV, Geology V, Geology VI	225
<i>Skill Level Increase - Mining</i>	226
Glasswork	227
Glasswork 11	227
<i>Skill Level Increase – Glasswork, Specialists</i>	228
Generalship	229
Combat Discipline	229
<i>New Skill – Combat Discipline, reduce casualties, increase Military Morale</i>	229
Combined Arms	230

<i>Combat Bonus: Increase to Army Factor based upon different troop types</i>	230
Circumvallation	230
<i>Build fortifications around your enemy's fortifications and trap them inside</i>	231
Field Marshall	231
<i>New Skill - Field Marshall, increases Leadership which increases Damage</i>	231
Generalship 11	231
<i>Skill Level Increase - Generalship, No specialists</i>	232
Generalship 12	232
<i>Skill Level Increase - Generalship, No specialists</i>	232
Healing	233
Barber Surgeons	233
<i>Assign people in Combat to shift "Dead" people into Inactives (minus some limbs)</i>	233
Battlefield Medicine	233
<i>Combat Boost - Gain the ability to perform Healing in between Ranged and Melee phase</i>	234
Battlefield Medics	234
<i>Combat Boost - Increases pre-Melee healing and allows some 'dead' people to be healed.</i>	235
Camp Medics	235
<i>Combat Boost - Allows one Unit to heal all friendly units</i>	235
Cleanliness	235
<i>Boosts population growth</i>	236
Healing 11	236
<i>Skill Level Increase – Healing, Specialists</i>	236
Hospital	236
<i>New Building - Hospital, Boosts population growth</i>	237
Medicine 1, Medicine 2	237
<i>Boosts population growth, Promotes healing</i>	237
Salves	237
<i>New Item - Salves, Counts as 2 Salves</i>	238
Seek Herbs	238
<i>Seeking Boost - Triples herbs found during seeking</i>	238
Heavy Weapons	239
Breaching Walls	239
<i>To be developed, it allows breaching of walls in sieges</i>	239
Heavy Weapons 11	239
<i>Skill Level Increase – Heavy Weapons</i>	239
Slave Crews	239
<i>Combat Boost - Slaves can soak damage instead of Warriors for Heavy Weapons crews.</i>	240
Slave Crews II	240
<i>Combat Boost - Slaves can be used for heavy weapons or artillery</i>	240
Herbing	241
Enhanced Herb Yield	241
<i>More herbs produced from Herb Plots each year</i>	241
Herbing 11	241
<i>Skill Level Increase – Herbing, Specialists</i>	241
Improved Herb Planting	241

More Herb Plots planted each spring month	242
Herding	243
Angora Goats	243
Goats give wool which is really Cotton	243
Animal Training	243
Animals trained for Fair events	244
Dairy Cattle	244
Allows access to Milking and Cheesemaking, new sources of Food	244
Expert Breeding	244
Skill Level Boost - Herding, instant +3 to Herd skill.	245
Fences	245
New Building - Fences, reduces herders required.	245
Military Dogs	245
Convert dogs into Guard / War dogs for combat.	246
Herding 11	247
Skill Level Boost - Herding, allows specialists	247
Herding 12	247
Skill Level Boost - Herding	247
Horse Herders	247
Reduces herders required for herding	248
Hunting Dogs	248
Increases output of hunting. Each dog counts as 2 hunters	248
Herding Dogs	248
Reduces herders required	249
Improved Fence Builders	249
Makes building fences a little bit less of a pain, but not enough of a reduction.	249
Improved Stable Builders	249
Makes building stables a little bit less of a pain.	250
Mounted Herders	250
Reduces herders required	250
Smart Herding	250
New Item - Crooks, Reduces herders required	251
Stables	251
New Building - Stables, Reduces herders required	252
Veterinarian Medicine	252
New Skill - Veterinarian Medicine. Increases Herd and Horsemanship skill.	252
Herding Process	252
Horsemanship	254
Close Formation (Close Order Cavalry)	254
Skill Level Boost - Horsemanship	254
Equestrianism	254
New Event - Equestrian, gain Morale, Horsemanship skill and Herding skill	254
Horsemanship 11	254
Skill Level Increase – Horsemanship	255
Knights	255
New Population Type - Knights, each Knight is expensive but kills a lot of people.	256

Squire.....	256
<i>Combat Bonus: +0.1 Army Factor and -0.05 Army Factor Defense for all Troop Types assigned to Cavalry combat assignment.</i>	256
Hunting.....	257
Expert Trackers.....	257
<i>Seeking Bonus, +10% yield (20% total). Hunting Bonus, +5% yield</i>	257
Hunting 11.....	257
<i>Skill Level Increase – Hunting, Specialists</i>	258
Hunting Dogs.....	258
<i>Allows converting dogs into hunting dogs to increase hunting output</i>	258
Mongol Hunt.....	258
<i>+20% output from Hunting</i>	258
Mongol Hunt 2.....	258
<i>+40% output from hunting</i>	259
Trackers.....	259
<i>Seeking Bonus, +10% yield</i>	259
Trappers.....	259
<i>Allows workers that are hunting to use more traps than normal.</i>	259
Varminting Crops.....	259
<i>Skill Level Increase – Farming, BioWar resistance</i>	260
Varminting Village.....	260
<i>Skill Level Increase – Sanitation, BioWar resistance</i>	260
Varminting Pasture.....	261
<i>Skill Level Increase – Herding, BioWar resistance</i>	261
Veteran Trackers.....	261
<i>Seeking Bonus, +10% yield (30% total). Hunting Bonus, +5% yield (10% total)</i>	262
Intelligence.....	263
Battlefield Intelligence.....	263
<i>Combat Boost - Advanced scouting provides boosts to Ldr and Horsemanship</i>	263
Field Intelligence.....	263
<i>Combat Boost - Advanced scouting provides boosts to Ldr and Horsemanship</i>	264
Hire Mercenary Guard.....	264
<i>Courier units may hire mercenaries as guards for silver</i>	264
Intelligence 11.....	264
<i>Skill Level Increase – Intelligence, Specialists</i>	265
Native Operative.....	265
<i>Gain a specialty tribe dedicated to learning skills and transferring them to other tribes</i>	266
Organized Intelligence Analysis (OIA).....	266
<i>Gain information about any other player clan.</i>	267
Secret Path I, II, III, IV.....	267
<i>Create a path for rapid movement between two points even across impassable terrain</i>	268
Leadership.....	269
Alliance MOTC.....	269
<i>Combat Boost - Alliance mates may form Meeting of The Clan together</i>	270
Battle Groups.....	270

<i>Combat Boost - Removes skill averaging when multiple units are in combat.</i>	270
Federal Community of Clans	270
<i>Combat Boost - Forms a territory that gives defensive bonuses</i>	272
Generalship	272
<i>Combat Boost - New Skill, Generalship, Increases effective Ldr skill</i>	272
Junior Officer.....	272
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Leadership Modifier to Damage calculators and reduces Rout</i>	273
Leadership 11	273
<i>Skill Level Increase – Leadership</i>	273
Recruitment.....	273
<i>Merc Limits increased by 500.</i>	273
Resilience I, Resilience II, Resilience III	273
<i>Combat Boost - If you rout, you have a chance not to rout but its pricey</i>	274
Rousing Speech	274
<i>Combat Boost - 5% less chance to run away due to a bad combat.</i>	275
Second in Command (SIC)	275
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Leadership Modifier to Damage calculators and reduces Rout</i>	275
Siege Marshall.....	275
<i>Combat Boost - Gain bonuses during Sieges</i>	276
Trusted Maps	276
<i>Increases fleet movement speed when using Sea Borne Trade Routes</i>	276
Leatherwork	277
Blacksmith Apron	277
<i>New Item – Boost to Refining and Metalwork</i>	277
Cavalry Saddle.....	277
<i>New Item - Boost to Combat/Horsemanship in Combat, reduced Horse casualties</i>	278
Harvest Bag.....	278
<i>New Item - Harvest Bag, increases efficiency of harvesting some crops by x2</i>	278
Leatherwork 11	279
<i>Skill Level Boost - Leatherwork, allows specialists</i>	279
Whip.....	279
<i>Increases number of slaves an Overseer may control.</i>	279
Literacy	280
Ghost Writer	280
<i>Allows other Tribes to increase their Literacy skill level for book writing.</i>	280
The Great Library	280
<i>Minor Wonder, Allows use of a collection of books inside the Library.</i>	282
Haiku	282
<i>Gain Morale, lots of it.</i>	282
Literacy 11	282
<i>Skill Level Increase – Literacy, Specialists</i>	283
Mercenary Training.....	283
<i>Allows Mercenaries to be trained to raise skill levels.</i>	284
Scroll	284
<i>Gain ability to create 5 scrolls.</i>	284
Sensai (Master)	284

<i>Skill Level Boost - Allows easier raising of combat related skills but at a cost</i>	286
Sensai Dan 1	286
<i>Skill Level Boost - Allows easier raising of combat related skills higher at a cost.</i>	286
Sensai Dan 2	286
<i>Skill Level Boost – Provides a Sensai with a second skill.</i>	286
Sensai Dan 3	286
<i>Skill Level Boost – Provides a Sensai with a third skill.</i>	287
Maintain Boats	288
Amphibious Warfare I	288
<i>25% more people may be carried on boats.</i>	288
Amphibious Warfare II	288
<i>50% more people may be carried on boats</i>	288
Maintain Boats II	288
<i>Skill Level Increase – Maintain Boats, Specialists</i>	289
Shipboard Animal Maintenance	289
<i>100% more animals may be carried on boats.</i>	289
Waxy Seal	289
<i>Naval Combat Boost: Reduces the number of ships lost in combat.</i>	290
Mariner	291
Disciplined Marines	291
<i>Naval Combat Boost – Increases Naval Combat Skill and effectiveness of Shields</i>	291
Fighting Seamen	291
<i>Naval Combat Boost - Allows limited Actives to fight as Warriors.</i>	291
Fleet	291
<i>Naval Combat Boost - Increases Fleet Factor to 1.4. (+40% Damage), Less Incoming Damage.</i>	292
Mariner II	292
<i>Skill Level Increase - Mariner, does NOT allow specialists</i>	292
Mariner III	292
<i>Skill Level Increase - Mariner, does NOT allow specialists</i>	293
Naval Coordination	293
<i>Naval Combat Boost - Increases Army Factor to 1.20 (+20% Damage), Defense to 0.90 (-10% incoming damage).</i>	293
Naval Veterans Class I	293
<i>Naval Combat Boost - Allows limited Inactives to fight using ranged weapons</i>	294
Professional Sailor	294
<i>Reduces the crew size needed on boats</i>	294
Metalwork	295
Advanced Trap	295
<i>New Item - Advanced Trap, increases hunting output</i>	295
Anvil	295
<i>New Item - Anvil, increases metalwork, armour and weaponmaking output</i>	295
Blade Shears	295
<i>New Item - Blade Shears, increases shearing sheep/angora goats output</i>	296
Bronze Statue	296
<i>New Item - Bronze Statue, Sell these at the Fair</i>	296

Chisel	296
<i>New Item - Chisel, increases Quarrying output</i>	297
Improved Trap	297
<i>New Item - Improved Trap, increases Hunting output</i>	297
Knife.....	297
<i>New Item - Knife, increases skinning, gutting, bonus and harvesting output</i>	297
Kegs.....	297
<i>New Item - Kegs, like Barrels but holds more and is lighter.</i>	298
Machete	298
<i>New Item - Machete, Increases efficiency of your tobacco harvesters.</i>	298
Metalwork 11	298
<i>Skill Level Increase – Metalwork, Specialists</i>	298
Mining Ladder	298
<i>New Item - Mining Ladder, increases output of up to 10 miners</i>	299
Saw	299
<i>New Item - Saw, Increases output of forestry action for Logs, x4</i>	299
Seam Wedges.....	299
<i>New Item - Seam Wedges, Increases output of a miner.</i>	300
Scraper (Metal).....	300
<i>New Item - Scraper, Increases output of forestry action for Bark, x2</i>	300
Smith Hammer.....	300
<i>New Item – Smith Hammer, increases Mtl, Armour and Weapon Activities</i>	301
Tongs.....	301
<i>New Item - Tongs, increases metalwork, armour and weaponmaking output</i>	301
Water Tank.....	301
<i>New Item - Water Tank, like a barrel but holds a lot more and is lighter comparatively</i>	302
Wire Mill	302
<i>New Item - Wire, used for other purposes</i>	302
Milking	303
<i>Skill Level Increase - Milking, allows Specialists</i>	303
Milling	304
Increased Output Milling 10%, 50%, 100%.....	304
<i>Increases efficiency of milling</i>	304
Milling 11	304
<i>Skill Level Increase – Milling, Specialists</i>	305
Oilmill	305
<i>New Building - Oilmill, Allows extraction of Oil from Cotton/Flax</i>	306
Sawmill	306
<i>New Building - Sawmill, increases output of forestry action to gain logs, x8</i>	306
Windmill	306
<i>New Building - Windmill, Turn grain into flour at an enhanced rate.</i>	307
Mining	308
Appropriate Mining Tool	308
<i>Allows the use of both a pick and a shovel when mining.</i>	308
Geology I, Geology II, Geology III.....	308

<i>Skill Level Increase – Mining, New Skill: Geology</i>	308
Hammer Mill	309
<i>New Item - Hammer Mill, increases output of 20 miners.</i>	309
Mining 11	309
<i>Skill Level Increase - Mining by +1, allows specialists</i>	309
Mining Ladder	310
<i>New Item - Mining Ladder, increases output of 10 miners.</i>	310
Ore Cart	310
<i>New Item - Ore Cart, increases output of 10 miners.</i>	311
Salt Panning (See Salting)	311
<i>Turns a Prairie Hex into a Prairie Hex with a salt mine.</i>	311
Seam Wedges	311
<i>New Item - Seam Wedges, increases output of a miner</i>	311
Mobilisation	312
Local Guard I, II, III, IV, V	312
<i>Allows increasing of Local Support Guards Terrain Proficiency</i>	312
Local Guard Training I, II, III	312
<i>Allows increasing of Local Support Guards Combat and Archery skills</i>	313
Mobilisation 11	313
<i>Skill Level Increase - Mobilisation, does not allow specialists</i>	313
Music	314
Bagpipes	314
<i>Combat Boost, New Item - Bagpipes, increases Combat Morale</i>	314
Great Work	314
<i>Convert Cultural skill points into morale.</i>	314
Military Band	314
<i>Combat Boost, Increases Combat Morale</i>	315
Music 11	315
<i>Skill Level Increase – Music, Specialists</i>	315
Music in the Field	315
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Ldr, Tact and Combat Morale</i>	316
Spring Arts Festival Music	316
<i>Host a Festival event during fair to raise Morale</i>	317
Inter Spring Arts Festival Music	317
<i>New Building – Amphitheatre, expands Festival to other Clans.</i>	317
Navigation	318
Astral Navigation 1, Astral Navigation 2, Astral Navigation 3	318
<i>Skill Level Increase - Navigation</i>	318
Heart of Oak	318
<i>Combat Boost - Naval, Increases damage done</i>	318
Navigation 11	318
<i>Skill Level Boost - Navigation, does not allow specialists</i>	319
Politics	320
Banqueting Hall	320
<i>New Building - Banqueting Hall, yearly increase of Morale and gaining of people.</i>	320

Boat People	320
<i>Yearly allows recruits from controlled water hexes</i>	320
Capital	320
<i>Designate a Capital, Increases the bonus of States and Nations</i>	322
Castle (Details may be modified)	322
<i>New Building - Castle, Increases Local Support, Trade Multiplier and Defense</i>	323
Daimyo	323
<i>Combat Boost - Morale bonus, Ldr bonus, Yearly gain of Inactvies, Militia at range</i>	324
Doomsday Book	324
<i>New Item - Doomsday Book, increases silver tithes from controlled hexes</i>	324
Emigration	324
<i>Holdover from previous game, doesn't do anything yet</i>	325
Feudal Security	325
<i>Reduces enemy raider efficiency</i>	326
Fortress	326
<i>Allows castles to be built anywhere</i>	326
Frontier Lands I, II, III	326
<i>Semi-lawed controlled hexes radiating out from a Home City.</i>	328
Government Level 1 (to 5 and beyond)	328
<i>Increases the number of Controlled Hexes of a Clan's State/Nation</i>	328
Great Wall	328
<i>Mega-Project, Seeking / Herding / Defense boost, gain Gold and Silk</i>	330
Ho Chi Minh Trail	330
<i>An emergency escape tunnel system to flea a siege that's going south.</i>	330
Import Mission	330
<i>Setup a trade mission from a PC City to your PC City</i>	331
Local Trade Routes	331
<i>Allows the creation of short range special transfer routes.</i>	332
Logistics 1	332
<i>New Skill - Logistics, allows Militia to defend in other controlled hexes</i>	332
Marshals	333
<i>Reduces number of Pacifiers needed for State</i>	333
Militia Training	333
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Militia's combat skills</i>	333
Mission	333
<i>New Building - Mission, Build away from City to gain people yearly</i>	334
Palace (may be modified)	334
<i>New Building - Palace, allows Daimyo research and counts as Local Support settlements</i>	334
Palace Renovation Gardens	334
<i>Increases State and Nation bonuses</i>	335
Political Route	335
<i>Different route to forming a Nation</i>	337
Politics 11	337
<i>Skill Level Increase – Politics, Specialists</i>	338
Posse	338
<i>Gain additional free people for Security assignment</i>	338
Sheriffs	338

<i>Reduces the number of Pacifiers required in State</i>	338
Treaty	338
<i>Creates a Treaty when Controlled Hexes overlap allowing formation of a Nation</i>	339
Pottery	340
Advanced Pottery	340
<i>Allows more efficient but expensive creation of pottery</i>	340
China	340
<i>Allows the creation of China, a Desired Commodity.</i>	340
Crown Molding	340
<i>New Item – Crown Molding, a sub-component for future prestigious buildings.</i>	341
Molding	341
<i>New Item –Molding, a sub-component for future prestigious buildings.</i>	341
Pottery 11	341
<i>Skill Level Increase - Pottery, Specialists</i>	342
Pottery 12	342
<i>Skill Level Increase – Pottery</i>	342
Terracotta Army	342
<i>Combat Boost - New Item - Terracotta Warriors, increases Combat skill in combat</i>	343
Quarrying	344
6 Stones / Person	344
<i>Quarrying provides 6 stones per person</i>	344
7 Stones / Person	344
<i>Quarrying provides 7 stones per person</i>	344
8 Stones / Person	344
<i>Quarrying provides 8 stones per person</i>	344
9 Stones / Person	344
<i>Quarrying provides 9 stones per person</i>	345
10 Stones / Person	345
<i>Quarrying provides 10 stones per person</i>	345
Extra Quarrying Tools	345
<i>Allows Quarriers to use a shovel in addition to a Mattock</i>	345
<i>Increases quarrying yields by a total of 50%</i>	346
<i>Allows normally useless Inactives to work as Quarriers</i>	346
Limestone	346
<i>Skill Level Increase - Administration, Specialists</i>	347
Masons	347
<i>Increases quarrying output by 10%</i>	347
Master Masons	347
<i>Increases quarrying out by a total of 25%</i>	347
Quarrying 11	347
<i>Skill Level Increase – Quarrying, Specialists</i>	348
Quarry Blocks	348
<i>Create Quarry Blocks instead of Stone.</i>	349
<i>New Item - Quarry Ladder, increases stone output for 10 quarriers</i>	349
Rangers	350

Ranger 11	350
<i>Skill Level Increase – Ranger</i>	350
Ranger IV, V, VI	350
<i>Skill Level Increase - Scouting</i>	351
Refining	352
Coke	352
<i>New Item - Coke, Allows creation of coke, more efficient Coal, allows Steel research</i>	352
Hammer Mill	352
<i>New Item - Hammer Mill, increases output of 20 miners or refiners</i>	353
Increased Output	353
<i>Increases efficiency of refiners.</i>	354
Paraffin Wax	354
<i>New resource (Paraffin Wax), new building (Paraffin Refinery), new activity (Refining / Paraffin Wax).</i>	355
Portland Cement	355
<i>New resource (Refined Sand), new activity (Refining / Refined Sand).</i>	355
Refined Sand	355
<i>New resource (Refined Sand), new activity (Refining / Refined Sand).</i>	356
Refining 11	356
<i>Skill Level Increase – Refining, Specialists</i>	356
Saltpetre Refining	356
<i>New Building - Saltpetre Refinery, turn Cattle poop into Saltpetre</i>	357
Steel	357
<i>Allows creation of steel weapons(cuts through armour) and armour (stops weapons)</i>	357
Research	358
Colleges	358
<i>New Building – College, Boost to DL 0 and Level 10 advancement.</i>	360
Golden Age	360
<i>Complete to get a one time boost to 3 skills and 2 research topics, expensive</i>	361
Head Librarian	361
<i>Boost to reading/writing books</i>	362
Improved Teachers I, II, III	362
<i>Skill Advancement Boost, higher skill levels allowed for Teachers.</i>	363
Librarian	363
<i>Boosts to reading / writing books</i>	363
Research 11	363
<i>Skill Level Increase – Research, Specialists</i>	364
Research Team	364
<i>Allows commencing advanced research topics before required topics completed</i>	364
Researcher	365
<i>Allows a scholar to research other skill topics and transfer those topics to another tribe</i>	365
Scholar	365
<i>Gain a specialty Tribe of 1 person that can learn skills and transfer them to other tribes</i>	366
War College	366
<i>Combat Boost - Apply Generalship to most other combat skills.</i>	366

Rowing	367
Rowing 11	367
Skill Level Increase – Rowing, Specialists	367
Two Hex Ferry	367
Ferries may operate over 2 hexes of water instead of just 1.	367
Sailing	368
Expert Sailors.....	368
Skill Level Boost - Seamanship and Navigation	368
Fast Fleets.....	368
Increases Fleet movement along Sea Borne Trade Routes	368
Heart of Oak	368
Combat Boost - Naval combat damage is increased	369
Raincatching	369
Ability to gather water during fleet operations without being on land.	370
Sailing 11.....	370
Skill Level Increase - Sailing, allows specialists	370
Two Hex Ferry	370
Ferries may cross two hexes of lake or ocean instead of 1	370
Salting	371
Salting 11	371
Skill Level Increase – Salting, Specialists	371
Salt Panning	371
Clan may turn a nearby Prairie hex into a Prairie hex with a salt mine	371
Sanitation	372
BioWar.....	372
Slowly reduce target siege victim's Sanitation rating forcing a surrender	372
Camp Sanitation	372
All units of the Clan share the same Sanitation as this Tribe	373
Cleanliness.....	373
Boosts population growth	373
Sanitation 11.....	373
Skill Level Increase – Sanitation, Specialists	374
Sewers	374
New Building - Sewers, Increases population gain	375
Siege Sanitation.....	375
Counters BioWar	375
Scouting	376
Expanded Scouting.....	376
Allows 16 Scouting parties in tribe instead of 8.	376
Extra Movement 1	376
Allows scouts to move farther	376
Extra Movement 2	376
Allows scouts to move even farther	376
Ranger 1, 2, 3.....	377

<i>Skill Level Increase – Scouting, New Skill: Ranger (Group C)</i>	377
Scout Post	377
<i>New Building - Scout Post, Allows Units at a Scout Post to have their own 8 Scout Groups</i>	378
Scout Veterans	378
<i>Skill Level Increase - Scouting</i>	378
Scouting 11	378
<i>Skill Level Increase – Scouting, Specialists</i>	379
Site Survey I	379
<i>Combat Boost - Fortification Bonus increased by 10% for all Clan villages.</i>	379
Site Survey II	379
<i>Combat Boost - Morale boost / Terrain Prof when defending Home City</i>	380
Seamanship	381
Heart of Oak	381
<i>Combat Boost - Increases Naval Combat damage</i>	381
Seamanship 11	381
<i>Skill Level Boost - Seamanship, does not allow specialists</i>	381
Seeking	382
Bush Lore 1, 2, 3....	382
<i>Skill Level Increase – Seeking, New Skill: Bush Lore (Group C)</i>	382
Elephants	382
<i>Yearly allows seeking of Elephants</i>	383
Exotic Seekers	383
<i>Seeking Boost - Gain some quantity of 4 exotic items. Work with GM to determine.</i>	383
Exotic Seekers II, III	383
<i>Seeking Boost - Gain more exotic items.</i>	384
Experienced Seekers	384
<i>Seeking Boost - Gain twice what you received last year, this year, if you seek same place</i>	384
Seek Herbs	384
<i>Seeking Boost - Allows seeking of more herbs</i>	384
Seek Population	384
<i>When you seek and gain Actives, you also gain some Inactives.... At least they breed.</i>	384
Seeking 11	384
<i>Skill Level Increase - Seeking, Specialists</i>	385
Security	386
Bodyguards	386
<i>Protects against Assassination.</i>	386
Fast Response Security I	386
<i>Get an automatic Security detail when declaring defense</i>	386
Fast Response Security II	387
<i>Get more security detail when declaring defense</i>	387
Fast Response Suppressors	387
<i>Some of your Suppressors can assist in combat.</i>	387
Security 11	387
<i>Skill Level Increase - Security, Specialists</i>	388
Security Patrol	388

Security Boost, Your security forces count double and are a bit more skilled.	388
Sewing	390
Brocade.....	390
New Item - Brocade, Sell it at fair...for gold.	390
Command Tent.....	390
New Item – Command Tent – Temporary Ldr and Tac skill increase in Combat.	391
Medicine Tent.....	391
Combat Boost - New Item - Medical Tent, Bonus to Healing and Barber Surgeons	391
Sewing 11	391
Skill Level Increase – Sewing, Specialists	392
Shipbuilding	393
Barge Poles.....	393
New Item - Barge Poles, Allows special barge movement through swamp hexsides	393
Felucca Class I, Felucca Class II.....	393
New Ship - Felucca, they're like Longships but faster and sleeker	394
Felucca Class III, Felucca Class IV.....	394
New Ships – Felucca Class III and Class IV, they're like even faster and sleeker	395
Frigate.....	395
New Ship – Frigate, Master of the Sea	395
Shipbreaking I, II, III.....	395
Allows reducing ships back down to their components.	396
Shipbuilding 11	396
Skill Level Increase – Shipbuilding, Specialists	397
Trawler	397
New Ship - Trawler, trawlers increase the effective fishers.	397
Whaler	397
New Ship - Whaler	398
Shipwright	399
Drydock	399
New Building - Drydock, allows more efficient shipbuilders	399
Increased Productivity I.....	399
33% increase in shipbuilding effectiveness	399
Increased Productivity II	399
100% increase in shipbuilding effectiveness	400
Increased Productivity III.....	400
300% increase in shipbuilding effectiveness	400
Shipwright 11	400
Skill Level Increase - Shipwright, Specialists	400
Siegecraft	401
Earthworks.....	401
Combat Bonus: Reduced casualties for your besieging assigned troops.	401
Fill Moat-Ditch.....	401
Pre-Combat Activity – Fill in moats/ditches in exchange for taking ranged damage	402
Siegecraft 11	402
Skill Level Increase – Siegecraft, Specialists	402

Sweep the Walls	403
<i>Pre-Combat Activity – Ranged Combat phase only.</i>	403
Siege Equipment	404
Catapult	404
<i>New Item - Catapult, high power siege equipment</i>	404
Siege Equipment 11	404
<i>Skill Level Increase – Siege Equipment, Specialists</i>	404
Trebuchet.....	405
<i>New Item, Trebuchet, high power siege equipment</i>	405
Siege Cannon.....	405
<i>New Item - Siege Cannon, highly advanced siege equipment</i>	406
Skinning	407
Skinning 11	407
<i>Skill Level Increase – Skinning, Specialists</i>	407
Slaughter House.....	407
<i>New Building - Slaughter House, Every Skin/Bone/Gut person counts as 4 people.</i>	407
Slavery	408
Armiger	408
<i>Combat Bonus: +0.1 Army Factor and -0.05 Army Factor Defense for all Troop Types assigned to Infantry combat assignment.</i>	408
Mamluk	408
<i>Combat Boost - Mamluks are ex-slaves who become exceptional fighters, expensive</i>	409
Slavery 11	409
<i>Skill Level Increase – Slavery, Specialists</i>	410
Overwork.....	410
<i>Extra work out of the captives provided you have a whip</i>	410
Press Gang.....	410
<i>Your scouts go out looking for voluntolds who become your forced labor crews.</i>	410
Slave Draft.....	410
<i>Combat Boost – Extra defenders in the way of indentured shields for your walls.</i>	411
Spying	412
Avoid Security	412
<i>Helps your spies avoid the target's security forces.</i>	412
Cross Training.....	412
<i>Skill Level Boost - Your Spies and Security force both get increased based on the other</i>	413
Identify Home City	413
<i>You can figure out if the village in the hex is a Home City</i>	413
Identify Militia	413
<i>You can figure out how large the Home City's militia is without a spying action.</i>	413
Infiltration	413
<i>Reduce enemy's fortification value by paying off a guard.</i>	414
Kidnap	414
<i>Reduce enemy's fortification value by paying off a guard.</i>	415
OIA Defence (Organized Intelligence Analysis in Defence).....	415
<i>Reduced chance of enemy's spy actions against a Tribal target.</i>	415

Spy Catchers	415
<i>Reduced chance of enemy's spy actions against a Tribal target.</i>	416
Spying 11.....	416
<i>Skill Level Increase - Spying, allows specialists</i>	416
Spy Data I.....	416
<i>Spies get more data</i>	417
Stonework	418
Chisel	418
<i>New Item - Chisel, increases output of quarrying and stonework</i>	418
Marble Statue.....	419
<i>New Item - Marble Statue, decorates Palaces and stuff</i>	420
Scraper (Stone)	420
<i>New Item - Scraper, increases output of generating bark</i>	420
Sewers	420
<i>New Building - Sewers, Increases population gain</i>	421
Stone Fords	421
<i>Use stone to build or remove Fords</i>	421
Stoneworking 11.....	421
<i>Skill Level Increase – Stoneworking, Specialists</i>	422
Tactics	423
Ambush.....	423
<i>Combat Boost - Introduces new Phase in combat as a Ranged attack pre-Ranged</i>	424
Battlefield Tactics.....	424
<i>Combat Boost: Compare Tactics and increase damage caused, reduce damage taken.</i>	425
Tactical Systems.....	425
<i>Skill Level Boost - Tactics vs Tactics, the winner gets a boost to Ldr skill.</i>	425
Tactics 11	425
<i>Skill Level Increase – Tactics</i>	426
Wagon Laager.....	426
<i>Circle the wagons and get a Terrain Proficiency bonus when defending.</i>	426
War Games.....	426
<i>Send your Warriors out to die in the wilderness and gain Terrain Proficiency. Do it again</i>	427
Tanning	428
Rawhide Cast	428
<i>New Item – Rawhide Cast - Used aid healing the wounded after combat.</i>	428
Tanning 11	428
<i>Skill Level Increase - Tanning, Specialists</i>	429
Torture	430
Dungeon.....	430
<i>New Building - Dungeon, Its a place you put people to get a skill level boost to Torture</i>	430
Thumb Screws.....	430
<i>Get more information out of your forced guests.</i>	430
Torture 11	430
<i>Skill Level Increase – Torture, Specialists</i>	431
Treachery 1, 2, 3,.....	431

<i>New Element that goes out and finds some Voluntold labor to come back with them.</i>	431
The Rack	432
<i>New Item - The Rack, increases Torture output</i>	432
Triball	433
Inactive Players	433
<i>You don't need your best Warriors playing a ball game, use the useless people</i>	433
Large Teams	433
<i>When running a Triball Guild event during fair, your guild mates can all use more players</i>	433
Off Season	433
<i>Allows Triball Guild to operate four times a year instead of two.</i>	434
Triball Arena	434
<i>New Building - Triball Arena, increases the payment for Triball events.</i>	434
Triball 11	434
<i>Skill Level Increase – Triball</i>	434
Triball Club	434
<i>New Item - Triball Club, doubles the silver/gold generation for Triball events.</i>	435
Triball Coaches	435
<i>Increases the amount of silver / gold gained during Triball events</i>	435
Triball Franchise	435
<i>Annual Bonus: Members of Guild gain Gold</i>	436
Triball Guild	436
<i>New Guild - Triball, use Warriors to gain Gold during fair</i>	437
Triball Specialists	437
<i>Allows training of Triball Specialists, double the output of silver/gold.</i>	437
Waxworks	438
Fake Royal Seal	438
<i>Bluff your enemies with some wax and gold to reduce the size of their force</i>	439
Waxworks 11	439
<i>Skill Level Increase – Waxworks, Specialists</i>	439
Weapons	440
Crossbow	440
<i>New Item - Crossbow, armour penetrating ranged weapon.</i>	440
Katana	440
<i>New Item - Katana, its a steel sword made of iron. It penetrates armour better.</i>	440
Repeating Arbalest	440
<i>New Item - R. Arbalest, it does more damage than an Arnbalest but eats ammo.</i>	441
Scimitar	441
<i>New Item - Scimitar, Upgraded Sword for Cavalry.</i>	441
Ulfbehrt Sword	441
<i>New Item - Ulfbehrt, Upgraded Sword for Infantry</i>	441
Weapons 11	441
<i>Skill Level Increase – Weapons, Specialists</i>	442
Weaving	443
Basket	443
<i>New Item - Basket, doubles productivity of farmers when harvesting.</i>	443

Cheesecloth.....	443
<i>New Item – Cheesecloth, increases productivity of Distilling activities.</i>	443
Epic Tapestry	443
<i>New Item - Epic Tapestry, increases morale unless lost then decreases morale.</i>	444
Exotic Weaving	444
<i>Access to new weaving recipes and possible formation of an Exclusive guild.</i>	445
Loom	445
<i>New Item - Loom, increases output of Brocade making</i>	445
Summer Pants.....	445
<i>New Item – Summer Pants, increases productivity of a worker during Summer months.</i>	446
Summer Shirt.....	446
<i>New Item – Summer Shirt, increases productivity of a worker during Summer months.</i>	447
Weaving 11	447
<i>Skill Level Increase – Weaving, Specialists</i>	448
Whaling.....	449
Whaling 11.....	449
<i>Skill Level Increase – Whaling, Specialists</i>	449
Whaler	449
<i>New Ship - Whaler</i>	450
Woodwork.....	451
Armoured Howdah.....	451
<i>New Item – Armoured Howdah, increases fortification value and archery skill</i>	451
Barge Poles	451
<i>New Item - Barge Poles, allows special barge travel along swamp hexsides.</i>	452
Bunk.....	452
<i>New Item – Bunk, increase space for Lodgings and Barracks.</i>	452
Hand Plane	452
<i>New Item - Hand Plane, increases productivity of Shipbuilding and Woodwork</i>	453
Hookah.....	453
<i>General Morale Increase, Commodity Use, Reduces use of Tobacco and Hashish.</i>	453
Howdah.....	454
<i>New Item – Howdah, Elephant in combat? Increase fortification value and archery skill</i>	454
Mash Paddle.....	454
<i>New Item – Mash Paddle, increases productivity of Distilling activities.</i>	455
Mining Ladder	455
<i>New Item - Mining Ladder, increases productivity of Mining for 10 miners</i>	455
Roman Crane (Also under Engineering).....	455
<i>New Item - Roman Crane, Increases productivity of Engineering and Shipbuilding.</i>	456
Scaffolding.....	456
<i>New Item - Scaffolding, increases productivity of Engineering and Shipbuilding.</i>	456
Smoking Pipes.....	456
<i>New Item – Smoking Pipes, Reduced Tobacco use, Smoke Hashish for Happniess</i>	457
Trellis	457
<i>New Item - Trellis, increases productivity of harvesting grapes, x4</i>	458
Wain	458
<i>New Item - Wain, It is a bigger wagon that requires more animals to pull.</i>	458

Wheelbarrow.....458
 New Item - Wheelbarrow, Increases productivity of Mining,Engineering,Quarrying 458

Woodwork 11458
 Skill Level Increase – Woodwork, Specialists 459

Change History:

7/17/20	<p><u>Alchemy 11: Added to Alchemy</u> <u>Cheesecloth</u>: Added to weaving <u>Excubitoriums</u>: Added to Fire Control <u>Excubitoriums</u>: Added to Garrison <u>Fire Brigade</u>: Added to Fire Control <u>Fire Control 11</u>: Added to Fire Control <u>Improved Stable Builders</u>: Added to Herding <u>Inactive Fire Watchers</u>: Added to Fire Control <u>Mash Padded</u>: Added to Woodwork <u>Roman Fire Pump</u>: Added to Fire Control</p>	<p><u>Breeding New Queens</u>: Revised quantity <u>Brickmaking 11</u>: Rewrote for clarity, NGE <u>Canals</u>: Added destruction rules <u>Carnival</u>: Rewrote for clarity, NGE <u>Conscription</u>: Added offensive restrictions <u>Cupcakes</u>: Added stacking clarification, NGE <u>Fences</u>: Updated Bonus application <u>Fluted Plate</u>: Revised recipe format, NGE <u>Full Plate</u>: Revised recipe format, NGE <u>Generalship 11</u>: Revised description, NGE <u>Generalship 12</u>: Revised description, NGE <u>Golden Age</u>: Updated format, NGE <u>Greaves</u>: Revised recipe format, NGE <u>Haiku</u>: Added repeatability. <u>Hand Plane</u>: Added recipe <u>Herding 11</u>: Updated Bonus application <u>Herding Dogs</u>: Updated Bonus application <u>Horse Herders</u>: Updated Bonus application <u>Improved Charcoal Making</u>: Updated description for clarity, NGE <u>Improved Stable Builders</u>: Removed Pre-Req <u>Marble Statue</u>: Added note about new Mine <u>Mining 11</u>: Added note about specialists <u>Mission</u>: Added Recipe <u>Mongol Hunts</u>: Code auto-calculates now <u>Mongol Hunts2</u>: Code auto-calculates now <u>Mounted Herders</u>: Updated Bonus application <u>Plate Barding</u>: Revised recipe format, NGE <u>Roads</u>: Added more info on destruction <u>Siege Cannon</u>: Corrected Pre-Req to Jar <u>Site Survey</u>: Revised settlement bonus <u>Smart Herding</u>: Updated Bonus application <u>Stables</u>: Updated Bonus application <u>Wholesale Trading</u>: Rewrote for clarity, NGE <u>Wire Fences</u>: Updated Bonus application Change History: Back revision of Change history to 2 column format. NGE Leads To: Added a new Leads To entry. This shows what research topics require this research topic. NGE <u>New Research Topics</u>: Added section about</p>
---------	--	--

[Return to Table of Contents](#)

		<p>new research topics created by players.</p> <p>No Game Effect: Commenced using NGE in Rev history.</p> <p>PreReq Entry: Commenced adding hyperlinks for Prerequisites, NGE</p> <p><u>Research Topic Historical Changes:</u> Shifted past changes to the end.</p> <p><u>Sea Borne Trade Math:</u> Added the math table at end of document.</p> <p><u>Summary Index:</u> Added a summary for each research topic entry. This all populates a new index at the end of the document for quick review.</p>
06/17/20	<p><u>Destroy Roads:</u> Added to Engineering.</p> <p><u>Hand Plane:</u> Added to Woodworking</p> <p><u>Mercenary Training:</u> Added to Literacy</p> <p><u>Roads:</u> Added to Engineering</p>	<p>Bagpipes: Added weight</p> <p>Basket: Added weight</p> <p>Blade Shears: Added weight</p> <p>Brickmold: Added weight</p> <p>Brocade: Added weight, updated Pre-Reqs</p> <p>Cupcake: Added weight</p> <p>Epic Tapestry: Added weight</p> <p>Fake Royal Seal: Added weight</p> <p>Flax: Added weight</p> <p>Holy Artefact: Added weight</p> <p>Juniper: Added weight</p> <p>Katana: Added weight</p> <p>Loom: Added weight</p> <p>Machete: Added weight</p> <p>Marble Statue: Added weight</p> <p>Medicine Tent: Added weight</p> <p>Pastry: Updated bonus application</p> <p>Saw: Added weight</p> <p>Scimitar: Added weight</p> <p>Sensai: Updated notes regarding Mercenaries</p> <p>Sewers: Removed Sewers from Economics and put into Engineering where it belongs</p> <p>Steel: Added weight</p> <p>Stew: Added weight</p> <p>Tongs: Added weight</p> <p>Trade Route: Updated information about Waystations.</p> <p>Triball Club: Added weight</p> <p>Ulfberht: Added weight</p>
5/10/2020	<p>Animal Training: Added to Herding</p> <p>Anvil: Added to Metalworking</p>	<p>Blasting Jar: Updated information about Siege Cannons, Added weight</p>

	Apiology I, Apiology II, Apiology III: Added to Apiarism Athanor: Added to Alchemy Blasting Powder: Added to Alchemy Circus Troupe: Added to Dance Demolitionists I, II, III: Added to Engineering Distillers' Guild: Added to Distilling Equestrianism: Added to Horsemanship Exhibition: Added to Archaeology Exhibition Curators: Added to Archaeology Gin: Added Gin to Distilling Great Canal: Added to Engineering Greater Masons: Added to Quarrying. Inactive Quarriers: Added to Quarrying Juniper: Added Juniper to Farming Local Money Changer: Added to Banking Magnificent Exhibition: Added to Archaeology Milking 11: Added to Milking Quarry Ladder: Added to Quarrying Relic 3: Added to Archaeology Resilience I, II, III: Added to Leadership Rousing Speech: Added to Leadership Sailing 11: Added to Sailing Second Site: Added to Archaeology Second Site Relic 1,2,3: Added to Archaeology Sentry Duty: Added to Garrisons Sewers: Added to Engineering, Stonework and Sanitation Site Survey II: Added to Scouting Stone Fords: Added to stone work Tongs: Added to Metalworking	Carnivale: Clarified Fair replacement Hammer Mill: Added note about Item vs Building Improved Stable Builders: Corrected research name Seam Wedges: Added weight, updated Mining entry to mirror Metalwork entry Siege Cannon: Updated ammo requirements
February 9th, 2020	Goods Tribe Economic Zone: Added to Economics Improved Stable Builders: Added to Engineering Oilmill: Added to Milling Quarry Blocks: Added to Quarrying	Astral Navigation: Updated display of DL and Pre-Reqs for Astronomy/Navigation Windmill: Updated restriction for quantity per hex
January 9th, 2020	Angora Goats: Added to Herding Blade Shears: Added to Metalworking Brickmolds: Added to Brickmaking Exotic Seekers II: Added to Seeking Exotic Seekers III: Added to Seeking	Bargemen's Guild: Changed wagon requirement to barge requirement Librarian: Added clarification text. Merchant Navy Guild: Revised text about exclusive guilds.

	<p>Greater Brickmaking: Added to Brickmaking</p> <p>Improved Fence Builders: Added to Engineering</p> <p>Local Guard I, II, III: Added to Mobilization</p> <p>Local Guard Training I, II, III: Added to Mobilization</p> <p>Saw Mill: Added to Milling and Forestry</p> <p>The Lighted Dome of Iron and Stone: Added to Brickmaking</p>	<p>Veterans Class I: Added note about limitations</p> <p>Water Tank: Updated description</p>
December 2 nd , 2019	<p>Ambush: Added Ambush to Tactics</p> <p>Barber Surgeons: Added Barber Surgeons to Healing</p> <p>Battlefield Medicine: Added Battlefield Medicine to Healing</p> <p>Battlefield Medics: Added Battlefield Medics to Healing</p> <p>Camp Medics: Added Camp Medics to Healing</p> <p>Drydock: Added Drydock to Shipwright</p> <p>Medical Tent: Added Medical Tent to Sewing</p> <p>Music in the Field: Added Music in the Field to Music</p> <p>Slave Crews II: Added Slave Crews II to Heavy Weapons</p>	<p>Architecture: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>Army: Added updated pre-req. statement</p> <p>Assault Troops: Corrected spelling of specialized</p> <p>Blasting Jar: Updated text to mention Blasting Jars vs BP</p> <p>Board of Trade: Changed way to track movement along Trade Routes.</p> <p>Canal: Modified requirement for Wagons and Animals.</p> <p>Castle: Clarified requirement to start castle research</p> <p>Drawbridge: Revised recipe to add number of people required</p> <p>Elephants: Added text about calculating output from Seeking.</p> <p>Extra Tribe: Added Note about informing GM once completed</p> <p>Feudal Security: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>Fortress: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>Golden Age: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>Heraldry: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>Keep: Updated Keep to cover additional utility.</p> <p>Local Trade Routes: Removed silver cost for transfers and rewrote for clarity.</p> <p>Managed Plantations: Updated transfers from yearly to monthly</p> <p>Native Operator: Added Note about</p>

		<p>informing GM once completed</p> <p>Naval College: Corrected spelling of ensures</p> <p>Pastry: Added Skill Requirement and Notes. Removed excess comma</p> <p>Propolis: Corrected typo</p> <p>Research: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>Research Team: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>Sappers: Updated Sappers with the missing information regarding values</p> <p>Scholar: Added Note about informing GM once completed</p> <p>Scimitar: Updated recipe to match database / steel entry</p> <p>Sea Borne Trade Route: Reinforcement Note from GM to Sea Borne Trade Route.</p> <p>Sensei: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>Sensei Don: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>Slave Crews: Clarified limit to slaves available in combat</p> <p>Steel: Modified description to list out items and clarified Sword cost.</p> <p>Toll Gate: Added the calculated people requirements to build a Toll Gate.</p> <p>Trade Camps: Revised to clarify additional unit types that may be utilized.</p> <p>Trade Routes: **Trade Routes have been majorly revamped in creation and utilization**</p> <p>Training: Corrected spelling of description text</p> <p>Trellis: Added a weight section. They are not meant to be mobile.</p> <p>Veterinarian Medicine: Verbiage has been added that the Scroll required is lost.</p> <p>All Pre-Reqs: Added a clarification word to most topics that require completed research to indicate that the requirement was a research topic that the tribe must have prior to commencing the new research.</p>
July 8 th , 2019	<p>Expanded Horizons: Added to Diplomacy and Economics.</p> <p>Expanded Horizons II: Added to Diplomacy</p>	<p>Castle: Updated description text to allow Miming while utilizing Castle. Villages may no longer mine during a siege either.</p>

	<p>and Economics</p> <p>Federal Community of Clans: Added FCC to Leadership</p> <p>Relic 2: Added Relic 2 to Archaeology.</p> <p>Scout Posts: Added Scout Posts under Garrison and Scouting</p> <p>Siege Marshall: Added Siege Marshall to Leadership</p> <p>Trusted Maps: Added Trusted Maps under Leadership</p>	<p>Fast Fleets: Updated description to correct doubling example.</p> <p>Junior Officer: Updated benefit to remove fringe cases where Junior Officer had no actual effect on combat.</p> <p>Professional Sailor: Removed requirement of Expert Sailors</p> <p>Trawler: Updated text about effect of Trawler.</p> <p>Trellis: Updated weight of Trellis.</p> <p>War College: Removed reference to Military Orders and notifying GM (code autocalculates)</p>
May 6 th , 2019	<p>Agent: Added Agent to Administration.</p> <p>BioWar: Added BioWar to Sanitation</p> <p>Bureaucracy: Added Bureaucracy to Administration</p> <p>Inactive Players: Added Inactive Players to Triball</p> <p>Large Teams: Added Large Teams to Triball</p> <p>Machete: Added weight</p> <p>Merchant Navy Guild: Added Merchant Navy Guild to Economics</p> <p>Off Season: Added Off Season to Triball</p> <p>Second Caravan: Added Second Caravan to Economics</p> <p>Seek Population: Added Seek Population to Seeking</p> <p>Siege Sanitation: Added Siege Sanitation to Sanitation</p> <p>Triball Club: Added Triball Club to Triball</p> <p>Triball Guild: Added Triball Guild to Triball.</p> <p>Trusted Maps: Added Trusted Maps to Economics.</p>	<p>Basket: Added weight</p> <p>Barterer: Fixed name from Barter to Barterer in entry.</p> <p>Charring Specialists: Changed name to Improved Charcoal Making under Forestry to avoid misunderstandings between specialists via Skill Level 11 and this topic effect.</p> <p>Entrepot: Cleaned up verbiage and added example</p> <p>Fast Fleet: Added restriction to cumulative bonuses</p> <p>Horsebows: Removed topic due to change in rules allowing use if they are in inventory.</p> <p>Roman Crane: Changed DL for Roman Crane from DL 7 to DL 6 for Woodwork topic. Updated entries to add Weight.</p> <p>Sea Borne Trade Route: Added Note from GM to Sea Borne Trade Route.</p> <p>Zealots: Removed from Politics.</p> <p>Note: The January 13th, 2019 revision does not appear to have been sent out by the GM. Review the January 13th, 2019 revision list below for the rest of the changes.</p>
January 13 th , 2019	<p>Barterer: Added Barterer to Courier</p> <p>Cupcakes: Added Cupcakes to Baking</p> <p>Trade Camps: Added Trade Camps to Economics</p> <p>Felucca Class I: Added Upgrade topic</p> <p>Felucca Class II to Shipbuilding</p> <p>Heart of Oak: Added Heart of Oak topic to</p>	<p>Castle: Added bonus specified in Mandate section 3.13</p> <p>Field Marshall: Updated bonus to Generalship.</p> <p>Generalship: Updated bonus to Leadership.</p> <p>Holy Artefact: Removed Religion 10</p>

	Navigation, Sailing and Seamanship Large Orders: Added Large Orders to Couriers Negotiator: Added Negotiator to Courier NPC Exchange: Added NPC Exchange to Banking Way Bread: Waybread added to Baking	Requirement Minting: Fixed Typo in Description Palace: Added bonus specified in Mandate section 3.13 Religion: Removed entire Religion section Revision Change History: Corrected Import Mission entry in August 12th, 2018 entry Saltpetre Refining: Revised Recipe display Smart Herding: Revised Smart Herding Horse benefit due to code consolidation Yeast: Added note that it is only effective when using Flour.
August 12th, 2018	Bargemen's Guild: Added Bargemen's Guild to Economics Circumvallation: Added Circumvallation to Generalship Expanded Scouting: Added Expanded Scouting to Scouting Field Intelligence: Added Field Intelligence to Intelligence. Head Librarian: Added Head Librarian to Research. Hire Mercenary Guard: Added Hire Mercenary Guard to Intelligence Import Mission: Added Import Mission to Politics Librarian: Added Librarian to Research Log Driving: Added Log Driving to Forestry Native Operative: Added Native Operative to Intelligence Siegecraft: Added Siegecraft to Engineering Two Hex Ferry: Added Two-Hex Ferry to Rowing and Sailing	Blasting Jar: Updated requirements, fixed recipe format, added information as to where Saltpetre comes from. Board of Trade: Rewrote to be clearer about bonuses, requirements and costs Castle: Added text about not being able to build for another Clan and adding limit of one castle per Clan. Fords: Added a missing letter Scholar: Added text about repeatability of Scholar research. Sea Borne Trade: Updated based upon Game Master request Trade Route: Added information about map assistance. Clarified use of Trade route by Trade Element to not be viewed as offering another Element beyond the e9. Traders Guild: Revised note regarding Guild membership.
May 4th, 2018	Alliance MOTC: Added Alliance MOTC research topic to Diplomacy and Leadership Barge Poles: Added Barge Poles research topic to Shipbuilding and Woodwork Burner Improvement: Added Burner Improvement research topic to Forestry Hammer Mill: Added Hammer Mill research topic to Mining and Refining Mamluk: Added Mamluk research topic to Slavery Knights: Added Knights research topic to Horsemanship	5 Logs/Person: Confirmed Pre-Requisites are previous levels, not on original document. Added Text from Master Coder 6 Logs/Person: Confirmed Pre-Requisites are previous levels, not on original document. Added Text from Master Coder 7 Logs/Person: Confirmed Pre-Requisites are previous levels, not on original document. Added Text from Master Coder 8 Logs/Person: Confirmed Pre-Requisites are previous levels, not on original document. Added Text from Master Coder

<p>Plantation: Added Plantation research topic to Farming</p> <p>Repeating Arbalest: Added Repeating Arbalest research topic to Weapons</p> <p>Spy 11: Added Spy 11 research topic to Spy</p>	<p>6 Stones/Person: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>7 Stones/Person: Confirmed Pre-Requisites are previous levels, not on original document. Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>8 Stones/Person: Confirmed Pre-Requisites are previous levels, not on original document. Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>9 Stones/Person: Confirmed Pre-Requisites are previous levels, not on original document. Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Absinthe: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Apiaries with Reusable Frames: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Appropriate Mining Tool: Added Text from Master Coder. Followup clarification needed</p> <p>Astral Navigation 1: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Barbican: Added note that Barbicans built for other Clans may be used by other clans.</p> <p>Bascinet: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Basket: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Board of Trade: Fixed the numerical example to reflect actual BoT rules</p> <p>Branded Alcohol: Added clarification that each alcohol is a separate research topic</p> <p>Branded Alcohol: Added clarification that branded alcohol may be traded</p> <p>Breed New Queens: Updated benefit. Added Text from Master Coder.</p> <p>Bronze Statue: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Brothel: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Bush Lore: Fixed Bush Lore 3 bonus</p> <p>Capital: Modified ability 3</p> <p>Catapult: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Chain Barding: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Colosseum: Added text that it may be built for and used by other Tribes / Clans.</p> <p>Crossbow: Added Text from Master Coder</p> <p>Dairy Cattle: Added Dairy Cattle research topic</p> <p>Drawbridge: Added note about use of Drawbridges by other Clans. Master Coder.</p> <p>Dungeon: Added text that it may be built for</p>
--	---

and used by other Tribes / Clans.
Extra Movement 4: Added Text from Master
Coder
Extra Movement 6: Added Text from Master
Coder
Fences: Added Text from Master Coder
Flax: Added Text from Master Coder
Full Plate: Added Text from Master Coder
Gate House: Added text that it may be built
for and used by other Tribes / Clans.
Greaves: Added Text from Master Coder
Hashish: Added Text from Master Coder
Herb Plots: Added Text from Master Coder
Herding Dogs: Added Text from Master
Coder
Hospital: Added Text from Master
Coder
Horse Herders: Added Text from Master
Coder
Katana: Added Text from Master Coder
Keep: Added Text from Master Coder
Managed Plantations: Added notes about
multiple plantations and clarified restriction
Marble Statue: Added Text from Master
Coder
Market Place: Added Text from Master
Coder
Minting/Coin: Added Text from Master
Coder
Mongol Hunt: Added Text from Master
Coder
Mongol Hunt 2: Added Text from Master
Coder
Mounted Herders: Added Text from Master
Coder
Ore Cart: Added Text from Master Coder
Outpost: Added text that it may be built for
and used by other Tribes only.
Pastries: Added Text from Master Coder
Plate Barding: Added Text from Master
Coder
Port Wine: Added text that it may be sold at
fair (already on fair sheet), Master Coder
Propolis: Added Text from Master Coder
Salves: Added Recipe. Added Text from
Master Coder
Scaffolding: Updated the verbiage to be

		<p>clearer. Added Text from Master Coder Scimitar: Added Text from Master Coder Seam Wedges: Added Text from Master Coder Smart Herding: Added Text from Master Coder Stables: Added Elephant restriction. Added Text from Master Coder Stew: Removed references to Chef and Master Chef (not currently in game) Stonewall 25': Added text that it may be built for and used by other Tribes / Clans. Added Text from Master Coder Stonewall 30': Added text that it may be built for and used by other Tribes / Clans. Trappers: Added Text from Master Coder. Followup revision for next edition. Trawler: Fixed a discrepancy between Recipe and description, fixed a name. Added Text from Master Coder Trawling Net: Added second Recipe. Added Text from Master Coder Ulfbehrt Sword: Updated Recipe to add Skill, Added Text from Master Coder Watchtower: Added text that it may be built for and used by other Tribes / Clans. Whaler: Fixed a discrepancy between Recipe and description. Added Text from Master Coder Wire Fences: Added Text from Master Coder Wire Mill: Fixed Metalwork abbreviation</p> <p>Notes: Added note from Master Coder about Topics in Database. Bottom Notes: Removed reference to Fanatic Warriors and updated verbiage. Orders for Research Attempts: Replaced Religion skill based examples</p>
April 8 th , 2018	<p>Fake Royal Seal: Added Fake Royal Seal under Waxworks Mining Ladder: Added Mining Ladder research topic under Mining, Woodwork Pastry: Added Pastry research topic to Apiary</p>	<p>Absinthe: Added text about details coming. Agriculture: Clarified text for description and bonuses Army: Added text related recipe for Barracks Barbican: Updated Recipe, added note about</p>

<p>Researcher: Added Researcher research topic under Research</p> <p>Scholar: Added Scholar research topic under Research</p> <p>Trawler: Added Trawler research topic under Fishing and Shipbuilding</p> <p>Trellis: Added Trellis research topic under Engineering, Farming and Woodworking</p>	<p>bonus and added text that it may be built and used by other Tribes / Clans</p> <p>Blasting Jar: Clarified text related to bonus, usage, Sulphur</p> <p>Bronze Statue: Updated text related to recipe skill levels</p> <p>Bush Lore: Clarified text for description and bonuses</p> <p>Canal: Added text about eligible bodies of water to start a canal from</p> <p>Close Order Infantry: Added text related to actual bonus from research topic</p> <p>Combat 11: Added text about Combat Specialists</p> <p>Cooking: Updated Cook limitations.</p> <p>Corps Diplomatie: Added text related to Trade Routes/Depots and Goods Tribes</p> <p>Drawbridge: Added text that it may be built for, used by other Tribes / Clans and Recipe</p> <p>Exotic Seekers: Added text about applicability of Rich Seeking hexes</p> <p>Fast Fleets: Added Fast Fleets research topic under Sailing</p> <p>Geology: Clarified text for description and bonuses</p> <p>Harvest Bag: Added weight</p> <p>Herb Plot: Clarified text about use and description of research topic.</p> <p>Marble Statue: Updated text related to recipe skill levels</p> <p>Overwork: Updated example numbers</p> <p>Port Wine: Added text about further details coming</p> <p>Religion: Removed all research topics from Religion skill. Religion removed from game</p> <p>Scaffolding: Clarified that scaffolds are inventory items and can be traded/used by Clans</p> <p>Stone Wall 30': Added pre-req of Stone Wall 25'</p> <p>Toll Gate: Updated Recipe, benefit from building and restriction for building.</p>
---	--

□ The preceding text is copyright owned.
Copyright © 1996-2018 Peter Rzechorzek.
All rights reserved.